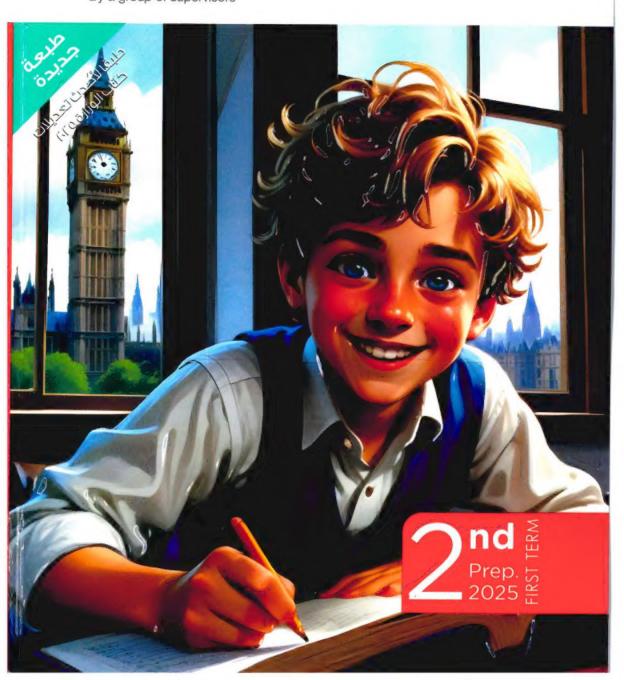




GUIDE

By a group of supervisors



Specifications for Second Year Preparatory English Examination 2024 - 2025 د مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٥ /

Marks : 24 2024 / 2025 Time : Two hours

A Listening (4 Marks)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30 - 35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark each)

B Language Functions

(2.5 Marks)

Complete the following dialogue:

(2.5 Marks)

A dialogue of **TEN** (10) exchanges with **FIVE** (5) deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.

(Half a mark each)

C Reading Comprehension (4.5 Marks)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

(4.5 Marks)

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE** (125) words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are required to answer **THREE** (3) multiple-choice questions with **FOUR** (4) options each (Half a mark each) and **THREE** (3) open-ended questions (**One mark each**).

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

• Giving the main idea (1 question)

• Extracting information (2 questions)

• Understanding reference (1 question)

• Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)

Critical thinking skill
 (1 question)

D Vocabulary & Structure (7 Marks)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

(5 Marks)

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 vocabulary & 3 structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the FOUR (4) options given. (Half a mark each)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (2 Marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs ... etc. related to what students have studied.

(Half a mark each)

E Writing (6 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on ...: (6 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on ...:

(6 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE** (85) to **NINETY-FIVE** (95) words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the e-mail. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas. One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

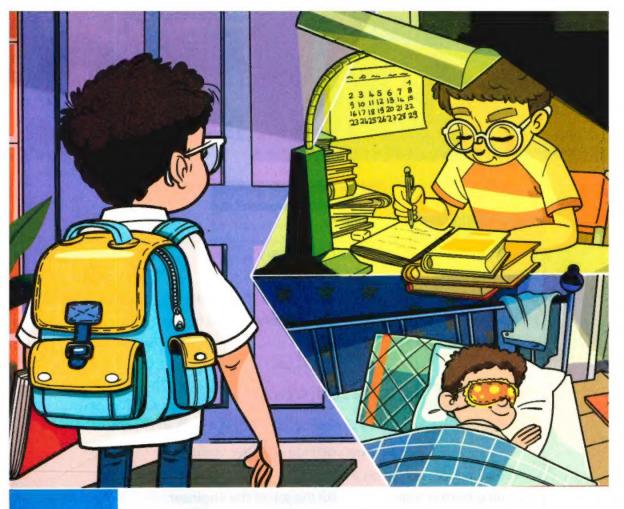
توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٥/٢٠٢٤

Months	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year Two (SB+WB)	
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2	
November	Unit 3 + Review A + Unit 4	
December	Unit 5 + Unit 6	
January 2025	Review B + General Revision	

Contents

eople	Unit	1	Coming home
ting b	Unit	2	How are you feeling?
Module 1: Meeting people	Unit	3	Great jobs
Module	Review A		
laces	Unit	4	Into the past
Module 2: Different places	Unit	5	Helping you, helping me
2: Diffe	Unit	6	Different environments
Module	Revie	w B	
			Monthly assessments





Coming home

SB pages 2:11

WB pages 72:78

Unit Objectives:

· Reading:

A text about daily routines; a blog about routines; a website article about children in India; The Railway Children

· Writing:

A text message; an email to a penfriend

· Listening:

A description of a bedroom

· Speaking:

Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture

· Language:

Present simple questions

· Life Skills:

Self-management

· Values:

Coexistence values

· Issues:

Citizenship

SB pages 2:5 WB pages 72 & 73



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

routine (n)	روتین (عمل متکرر)	way (n)	طريق
daily (adj), (adv)	یومی - بشکل یومی	sofa (n)	كنبة [أريكة]
activity (n)	نشاط	block of flats (n)	عمارة سكنية
text (ed) (v) , (n) - على هاتفه المحمول]	يرسل رسالة نصية (لشخ رسالة نصية	interview (ed) (v), (n) - مقابلة شخصية	یحاور (شخص) - حوار

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

interview - activity - routine - sofa

- 1. Four people can sit on this
- 2. Ali is having a/an for the job of the engineer.
- 3. Going to school is a daily for me.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

best friend	أفضل صديق	person (n)	شخص
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن / يتوقع	lesson (n)	درس/حصة
school day (n)		weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
prefer (red) (v)		the same of the sa	العمل الدراسي / الواجب المدر
baker's = bakery (n)	مخبز	partner (n)	شريك
cook (ed) (v), (n)	يطبخ - طباخ	country (n)	دولة / بلد

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

blog (n)	مدونة (على الأنترنت)	computer games (n)	ألعاب الحاسوب
everyone (pron)	کل واحد / شخص	fun (n)	متعة

school subjects (n)	مواد دراسية	interests (n)	اهتمامات
break (n)	راحة / فسحة	somewhere (adv)	مکان ما
topic (n)	موضوع	sleeping (n)	النوم
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غبر المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P	
read	يقرأ	read	read	
come	بأتى	came	come	
leave	بغادر/يرحل	left	left	
spend	يقضى (وقت)		spent	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

block of flats	a tall building with more than one floor w people to live in	vith flats for عمارة سكنية
interview	a formal meeting in which someone asks about yourself and your life	you questions مقابلة شخصية
routine	your usual way of doing things, especially them in a fixed order at the same time	y when you do روتین (عمل متکرر)

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

	breakfast / lunch / dinner پتناول وجبة (الإفطار / الغداء/ العشاء)	read	on the sofa بقرأ وهو جالس على الأريكة
have	a routine دیه نظام یومی ثابت coffee شمروب قهوه fun	play	chess بلعب لعبة الشطرنج computer games يلعب ألعاب الحاسوب
text	friends يرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائه على الهاتف المحمول	take	the bus يستقل الأتوبيس
get	up يستيقظ to school يصل للمدرسة	spend	time يقضى وقتًا money بنفق مالاً

UNIT ONE

	activities	يؤدى أنشطة		
do	homework يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلى the same things يقوم بنفس الأشياء		breakfast dinner	تُعدوجبة الأفطار
	exercise	يتدرب	dinner	تعدوجبة العشاء
	sports	يمارس الرياضة		

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and	Antonyn	ns	سادات	مترادفات ومتذ
للمة Word	الك	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
late	متأخر	_	early	مبكر
the same as	مطابق	identical	ical different to / from o	
leave	يغادر	move – exit	stay	ىقىم - يىقى
start	يبدأ	begin	finish	ينهى
important	هام	necessary – vital	unimportant	غيرهام

Prefixes & Suffixes قاطع بادثة وناهية				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples		
-ly	يكون الصفة والظرف من الاسم	daily	یومی / یومیًا	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

0	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	or	d	
---	--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	----	---	----	---	--

 Ahmed and Alac are	ı are exactly the	same. This means	s that they
a. different	b. identical	c. important	d. lazy
2. Adel didn't come	to work early. H	le came	
a. later	b. lately	c. late	d. latter
3. It's necessary to	clean your teeth	every day. This m	neans it's
a. unimportant	b. important	c. happy	d. terrible
4. The antonym of	"begin" is "		
a. finish	b. state	c. study	d. start
5. I go to school ev	ery day. This me	ans I go to school	***********
a. daily	b. monthly	c. yearly	d. weekly

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 routine - habit - custom

- * routine روتین یومی (عمل متکرر)
 - My daily routine is the same every school day.

(SB page 2) عادة (شخصية)

- * habit Skipping breakfast is a bad habit.
- عُرْفُ عادة (مجتمعية) * custom
 - It's the custom for bride to wear a white dress in wedding.
- للحظ أن كلمة (home) بعد هذه الأفعال (come get leave) لا يأتي قبلها جرف جر
 - What time do students come home from school in that country? (SB page 2)
 - They get home late.

(SB page 3)

My dad leaves home before we get up.

(SB page 4)

3 on - in - by

- يستخدم قبل أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ * on
 - On Saturdays, I always get up at 11 o'clock.

(SB page 3)

- I was born on 7th December, 2000.
- يستخدم قبل وسائل المواصلات
- I go to school **by bus** with my friend, Dina.

(SB page 2)

- يستخدم قبل بعض فترات اليوم
 - In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa, watch TV and (SB page 2) text my friends.

4 help تساعد

- * help + Jocao + (to + inf.) / (inf.)
 - I often help mum make dinner.
 - = I often help mum to make dinner.

(SB page 2)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expre	ssions	Prepositions		
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	study hard for	يذاكر بجد لأجل	
listen to music	يستمع إلى الموسيقي	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	
on her way to		on holiday	في إجازة	
on the right		come home from	يأتي إلى المنزل من	
That's why	لهذا السبب	helpwith	يساعدفي	



Lesson [1] SB page 2

Lesson [2] SB page 4

- 1. Mariam's daily routine(1) is the same every school day!
- 2. She always gets up at 6:30 in the morning.
- Mum makes her breakfast.
- 4. She goes to school by bus with her friends.
- They sometimes listen to music.
- Mariam's parents work at the hospital.
- 7. They get home⁽²⁾ late.
- 8. She often helps to make dinner.
- 9. In the evening, she does her homework, reads on the sofa⁽³⁾, watches TV and texts her friends⁽⁴⁾.
- After that, she goes to bed.

- 1. Today's interview⁽⁵⁾ is with my best friend Sherifa and her family.
- 2. There are five people in Sherifa's family.
- Sherifa usually gets up at 6:30.
- 4. She helps her mum make breakfast.
- 5. Her father starts work early.
- 6. He doesn't have breakfast with them. He eats when he gets to work.
- 8. Sherifa walks to school with her brothers.
- 9. Sherifa likes studying and her favourite(6) subject is English.
- 10. In the evening, Sherifa listens to (7) music.
- 11. She sometimes plays **chess**⁽⁸⁾.



* Your daily life * Your daily routine * Helping at home

* An interview with your friend

تلويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * A typical day







on Lesson 1 SB page 2

I'm Mariam. My daily routine is the same every school day! I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. Mu mum always **makes my breakfast**(1). I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music⁽²⁾. My parents work at the hospital. They get home (3) late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa⁽⁴⁾, watch TV and text my friends (5). Then I go to bed (6)!

Answer the following questions:

Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. How does Mariam go to school? - She goes to school by bus.

Practise 2. Does Mariam do the same thing every school day?.....





- (۱) تعد / تصنع إفطاري
- (2) يستمع إلى الموسيقي
 - (3) يصل المترل
- (4) يقرأ جالسا على الأربكة
- (5) أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائي (على الصائف)
 - (6) يذهب للنوم

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Mariam doesn't get up at 7 am. She gets up at 6.30. Mariam doesn't make breakfast. Her mum always makes it. Her parents don't work at a school. They work at a hospital. They don't get home early. They get home late.

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

My best friend's family

Hi everyone, Today's interview is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of (1) us. Sherifa's on the right (2)! How many people are in your family, Sherifa? There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.



(1) صورة لـ (2) على اليمين

UNIT ONE

When do you get up?

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early, so he **leaves home**⁽³⁾ before we get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he **gets to work**⁽⁴⁾. I walk to school with my brothers.

Do you like to study?

(3) يغادر المنزل (4) يصل إلى العمل

Yes, I do. My favourite subject is English.

(4) يخص إلى احسر (5) يلعب شطرنج

What do you do in the evening?

I listen to music every day. My dad and I sometimes **play chess**⁽⁵⁾. My brothers always watch TV and my mum usually reads.



1. Many people in the city live in a

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Marig people i	if the engine in a		
a. house	b. black	c. block	d. chest
2. Come and sit of	on this comfortabl	e : fou	ır people can sit on it.
a. armchair	 b. cupboard 	c. sofa	d. chair
3. I always	my friends. I d	don't phone the	m.
a. text	b. mix	c. fix	d. try
4. Hassan has a/	antoda	y with the mane	ager for the new job.
a. routine		c. interview	
SB , WB & Previous E	xams		
5. [3] My mum o	ılways m	ny breakfast.	
a. makes	b. gives	c. does	d. deletes
6. We She doesn	t like football. She	tenn	is.
a. buys	b. spends	c. prefers	d. goes
7. Drawing and v	writing short storie	es are my favou	rite
a. sports	b. subjects	c. interests	d. messages
		(Qalyoubia - West Shubra 2024)
8. Can you	my mother fo	r me because m	y phone isn't working?
		(Ale	xandria - El - Montazah 2023)
a. text	b. send	c. speak	d. talk
9. " " is	the opposite of th	e word "end".	
 Continue 	b. Get	c. Spend	d. Begin
			(Beheira - Shoubrakheit 2023)

10. My daily is the same every school	ol day. (Favoum - Itsa 2022)
a. root b. routine c. sofa	d. carpet
El-Moasser Exercises	
11. Al Akhbar is a newspaper. We ca	ın buy it every day.
a. weekly b. yearly c. mon	thly d. daily
12 much time with my family is my	best hobby.
a. Guessing b. Spending c. Texti	ing d. Helping
▶ Definitions	
13is the fixed and usual way of do	ing things.
a. Protein b. Weekend c. Rout	
14. A/Anis a formal meeting in which	ch someone asks you
questions about yourself and your life.	
a. activity b. interview c. revie	ew d. view
Language Notes, Expressions & Preposition	ions
15. He couldn't finish his workhe lo	oks worried.
a. By b. That's why c. Beca	iuse d. When
16. What sports does he like to regu	llarly بانتظام ?
a. make b. give c. do	d. put
2. Speaking	مهارة التحدث
1. Discussing daily routine.	ا. مناقشة الروتين اليومي
Questions	Answers
1. Do you have the same routine -Yes, I do	
every day of the week?	,.
١. هل لديك نفس الروتين كل يوم في الأسبوع ؟	- نعم لدي نفس الروتين.
	s make breakfast.
۲. ما الذي تفعله عندما تستيقظ ؟ P?	- أنا دائمًا أعد وجبة الإفطار.
way to school?	isten to music.
٣. ماذا تفعل غالبًا وأنت في طريقك إلى المدرسة ؟	- استمع غالبًا إلى الموسيقي.
	y text my friends. - عادة ما أرسل رسائل نصية لأصدقائم هواتفهم المحمولة.
weekend? and we	mes I go to my friend's flat play computer games. أحيانًا أذهب إلى شقة صديقي، ونلعب ألعا،

> 2. Talking about the family.

٢. الحديث عن العائلة

Questions



Answers



- 1. Do you have any brothers or ١. هل لديك أي أخوة أو أخوات ؟ ? sisters
- 2. How many people are there in your family?
 - ٢. كم عدد الأشخاص في عائلتك ؟
- Yes, I do. I have two brothers. - نعم، لدى أخوين.
- There are 5 people: me, my dad, my mum and two brothers.
 - هناك خمسة أشخاص : أنا وأبي وأمي وأخوين.

Language

Remember



Usage الاستخدام

- ا. تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :
- ex. I always do my homework before I have my dinner.
 - ٢. تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be):
- ex. Mu cousins sometimes text me.
 - We are never late for school.
- ٣. تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار في بداية الجملة :
- ex. Sometimes, we go to the club on Sundays.



```
• لاحظ أن :
                 ◄ حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى بـ (doesn't) مع المفرد الغائب.
ex. - He doesn't play football every Thursday.
                      ♦ (never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.
ex. - The bus never stops near my house.
                                                      (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :
                   (A) Yes / No question:
                            Do I/we/you/they/
                                      فاعل جمع
                          ex. - Do you speak English?
  Interrogative
                                                 * No, I don't.
                               * Yes, I do.
       صغ_ة
      الاستفصام
                                     he / she / it /
                                                      inf.
                                    المصدر 🕇 فاعل مفرد غائب
                          ex. - Does she cook well?
                                * Yes, she does. * No, she doesn't.
                        • لاحظ أن: حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):
                                             (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :
                   (B) Wh-question:
                                   I / we / you / they
       Question word
                           do
                          does *
                                        he/she/it
        كلمة الاستفهام
                                        - Where does she go?
 ex. - What do you study?
 3. Making questions الكوون الاستانات
                                  أُولًا : اللَّسِئِلَةُ التَّى يَجُابِ عليها بِـ Yes أَو No :
1. Yes / No questions:
 "V. to Be" (am - is - are - was - were)
 "V. to Have" (have - has - had)
                                                     verb
                                        subject
                                                     ..... + الفعل
                                         الفاعل
 "V, to Do" (do - does - did)
 الخ .Will, Can .... etc
ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهي الضمير
                                                        والفعل المساعد فقط
                                                           - No, I don t.
ex. - Do you have any brothers or sisters? - Yes, I do.
    - Does Mariam do the same routine every school day?
                                         * No. she doesn't.
     * Yes, she does.
```

```
• لاحظ أن : يمكن استخدام الله الله الله الكاكفعل رئيسي في السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.
ex. - Are you happy about the result of the match?
    * Yes, I am.
                                         * No. I am not.
2. Wh-questions:
                                     ثانيًا : الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام :
                      v. to be
                      v. to have
                                               subject
  Question word
                                                            verb
                                                            ? ..... + الفعل
   كلمة الاستفهام
                                                الفاعل
                      v. to do
                      will, can .... etc. الخ
كلمان الاستفهام Question words
Whose ...?
                            ?... How many ...?
                                                                  كم للعدد...؟
When ...?
                               !... How high ...?
                                                                كم للإرتفاع ...؟
What ...?
                                                                  كم للعمق...؟
                           ?...اغلم – لم How deep ...?
Who ...?
                        ?... How wide ...?
                                                            كم للعرض/الاتساع...؟
Whom ...?
                  ?... How far ...?
                                                                 كم للبعد...؟
Why ...?
                              ?... How tall ...?
                                                                  كم للطول...؟
Where ...?
                              ?... How heavy ...?
                                                                 كم للوزن...؟
Which ...?
                             ?... How long ...?
                                                              كم للمدة/للطول...؟
How ...?
                              ?... How old ...?
                                                                 كم للعمر . . . ؟
How much ...?
                    ?... How fast ...? كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟
                                                                 كم للسرعة...؟
How often ...?
                             ? Who ... with کے مرة ... ؟
                                                                    مع من...؟
                    • لاحظ الآتي : - عندما لا يوجد فعل مساعد في الجملة نستخدم :
    يou أنحول على المضارع البسيط بدون (s) do I, we وذا كان الفعل في المضارع البسيط بدون (s)
your المضارع البسيط وينتهي بـ (5) الفعل في المضارع البسيط وينتهي بـ (5)
                                                   I am عول are you
                        (ies) J (es) J
 were you → did I was → were you
```

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

B, WB & Previous Exams			
1. 😘 On Saturdays, I al	ways	. up at 11 o'clock.	
a. gets b. ge	et	c. getting	d. am getting
2 Mariam often	TV in be	ed.	
a. watch b. w	atches	c. watching	d. is watching
3. [W] I mu ho	mework befo	re I have my dinr	ier.
a. usually do b. d	o usually	c. usually does	d. does usually
4. W B you live	in a block of	flats, or somewh	ere else ?
a. Does b. A	re	c. Do	d. Have
5. The sun in t	he east.	1	(Fayoum – Itsa 2024)
5. The sun in t a. rise b. ri	ses	c. rose	d. is rising
6. He a sports	car.	1	Cairo - West Cairo 2023)
a don't drive b. d	rives never	c. never drives	d. aren't driving
7. How often do you	dinner	? - Once a week.	(Cairo - New Cairo 2022)
a. made b. n	nakes	c. making	d. make
El-Moasser Exercises			
8:ready for th	ne exam ? - Ye	s, I am.	
a. Are we b. D	o you	c. Are they	d. Are you
9. She speaks	English well.	She needs more p	oractice
a. don't b. d	loesn't	c. never	d. didn't
10. How do you	go to school	? - Five times a w	veek.
a. many b. n	nuch	c. often	d. long
. Complete the sentence	s with the cor	rect form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
SB , WB & Previous Exams			
1. SB My dad and I	(plaus	ometimes) chess	. (Beni Suef - Beba 2022)
2. WB Hamdi	(not drink) co	offee for breakfast	t.
, 3, (Never) tell		(h	Rehira - Damanhour 2024)
4. WB What(
5. Ali never (c	come) late to	chool	(Ismailia 2023)
	ome) late to s	criooi.	1 1000000000000000000000000000000000000
El-Moasser Exercises			- D. Jane
6. A:	does Youssef	go to school ! - B	: by bus.
7. How often	(Waleed visit) his uncle?	
8 (Salma pla	ıy) tennis ? - N	o, she doesn't.	

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraph

80 Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & E-mails

Step1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدي اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
 1. What time do you usually ? bainingI usually get up at 6.30 a.mI live with my family.		Write a paragraph on : "Your daily routine"
 ع. Do you ما کا کا که ایستمع إلی الموسیقی - Yes. I like listening to music.	Dina: (4) Mona: How often do you listen to music? Dina: (5) (Albadary - Assuit 2024)	
 1. Who is your غرب الفصل صديق - Aziz is my best friend. 2. What does he do in his عبر الفراغ عبر - He likes to do sport. 3. Does he live in a	Hamza Hamza Amir Hamza Amir Hamza	"Your best friend"
 or somewhere else ? عمارة سكنية - He lives in a house.	Amir: He likes to do sport in his free time. Hamza: Does he live in a block of flats or somewhere else? Amir: (5)	

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

OUnderstand OApply OCreate

1	Complete the followin	g dialogue :
		والأصام والمارين

Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am Mona. My **daily** routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6:30 in the morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my breakfast. We always have breakfast together. I go to school by bus with my friend Maha. I like music very much and we sometimes listen to **it**. My parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard and they get home late, so I often help to make dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

5. How does Mona go to school?

6. Do you think that Mona enjoys her daily routine?

3	Choose the cor	rrect answer fron	na,b,cord:	
•	1. On Saturday,	I usually	time with my cou	usins.
	a. cook	b. knock	c. spend	d. stay
				(Cairo - New Cairo 2024)
•		ad a/an		
	a. subject	b. email		•
•	3 my	friends every even		
	a. Doing		c. Reading	
•		you do to		
	a. make	b. have	c. try	d. cry
•		ost important		
	a. village	-	c. country	
•				able than the chair.
	a. sofa	b. door	c. table	d. map
•	a. break	ve have our sandw b. class		
			c. timetable	
,	8. They usually	their hom		_
	a. does	b. do	c. are doing	Damietta - El-Roda 2024) d. doing
(usually work or	-	d. doing
	a. don't		c. haven't	d doesn't
		Sherifa and her do		
	g. did	b. does	c. doing	d. do
A	Complete the cor		3	
* 1				word(s) in brackets:
		(rain) in summ		(Sharkia - Hehia 2024)
		(Does) you like to s		
		(Where) often do y		
			3	Beheira Hosh Issa 2023)
5	Write a paragra	oh of about NINE	TY (90) words on	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
•	"W	hat do you usuall	y do on holidays?	7
				* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
			,	(Giza - Al-Haram 2024)



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attractive (adj)	جذاب / فاتن	ةشخص]profile (n)	الملفالشخصي[لمحةعنحيا
large (adj)	كبير (الحجم)	feed (v)	يطعم
terrible (adj)	مفزع - رهيب - فظيع		يشارك / يتقاسم
poor (adj)	_	tap (n)	صنبور المياه (حنفية)
railway line (n)	خط سكك حديدية	typical (adj)	نمطی / بموذجی
prison (n)		village (n)	فرية



تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية Pop Quiz

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

tap - prison - profile - typical - attractive

- 1. Yesterday, it was a day in my life.
- 2. Thieves are taken to
- 3. The new house was very
- 4. Don't forgot to turn off the

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

article (n)	مقال	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
text message (n)	رسالة نصية	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
research (n)	بحث [علمی]	life - lives (n)	حياة - حيوات
clear (adj)	واضح	garden (n)	حديقة (خاصة)
picnic (n)		goats (n)	ماعز
watermelon (n)	بطيخ	borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير
knife (n)	سكين	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

adventures (n)	مغامرات	beginning (n)	بداية
train (ed) (v), (n)	بندرب - قطار	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
together (adv)	مغا	road (n)	طريق
move (d) (v)	ينتقل – ينقل	ending (n)	نهاية
change (d) (v), (n)		describe (d) (v)	ريصف

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Prese	المضارع nt	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
forget	يتسى	forgot	forgotten
bring	يحضر/يجلب	brought	brought
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

prison	rison a place where people go when they do sor	
railway line		سجن خط سکك حدیدیة
poor	not having enough money to live well	فقير
attractive	beautiful / nice to look at	جذاب
large	big	كبير (الحجم)
terrible	very bad	كبير (الحجم) مفزع / رهيب
feed	give food to a person, group or animal	بطعم
tap	something you turn on or off to get water	صنبور میاه (حنفیة)

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات				
المرادف Synonym الكلمة			المضاد Antonym	
attractive	جذاب	beautiful	ugly قبیح	
large	كبير [الحجم]	big	صفير (الحجم) small	
near	قريب	close	far from بعیدًاعن	
outside	خارج	outdoor	inside / indoor داخل	
terrible	فظيع – رهيب	bad	good جيد	

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادثة وناهية				
Prefix / Suffix	أمثلة Examples			
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	attractive	جذاب	
-ful	1-211 1 . VII 1 - 24 All 1550	beautiful	جميل	
-iui	تكوَّن الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	careful	حريص	
-ing	تكُّون الاسم من الفعل	beginning	بدائة	



General Notes on Reading & Listening

2 suggest

* suggest + (inf. + ing)

يقترح

I suggest going to the beach.

(SB page 7)

* suggest that + فاعل + inf. الفصدر

يقترح أن

I suggest that she go to the beach.

4 little

* little (adj)

تستخدم بمعنى صغير السن أو الحجم

- I lived in America when I was little.
 - I saw a little girl in the street.
- * little (adj)

تستخدم بمعنى قليل ويأتي بعدها اسم لا يعد

She has got a little milk in her glass.

(SB page 8)

- هذه الصفة المركبة تستخدم كصفة قبل اللسم بمعنى ذا / ذات الست سنوات six year old
 - * My six year old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me. (SB page 7)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions				
do something wrong	يفعل شئ ما خطأ	at the beginning of	فى بداية	
at the end of	فى نهاية	at last	أخيرا	
take away from	يأخذ بعيدًا عن	come home	يأتي للمنزل	
		sitions		
careful with	حریص بشأن	ask for	يطلب	
move from to	ينتقل من إلى	around the world	حول العالم	
full of	ملیء بـ	in many ways	بعدة طرق	
share with	يتشارك - يتقاسم مع	find out about	بكتشف عن	



Lesson (3) SB page 6

- I. Shahana is from India.
- 2. She lives in a village(1) with her family.
- 3. She shares⁽²⁾ a room with her sister.
- 4. Mum gets water from the tap(3).
- 5. The tap is at the end of the street.
- 6. They all have breakfast.
- 7. They have bread with a cup of tea.
- 8. When she gets home from school, she feeds(4) the chickens.
- 9. She helps her mum make dinner.
- 10. After dinner, she does her homework.
- 11. She sometimes helps her brother and sister,
- 12. Finally, she goes to bed.

Lesson (4) SB page 8

- 1. The Railway (5) Children is a story by E. Nesbit.
- 2. Roberta and her family live in London in the 1900s.
- 4. On a **terrible**?) day, two men take her father away from home. 3. They have a big attractive home with a large garden.
 - 5. Roberta moves from the city with her mother, brother and sister.
- 6. They move to a small house near a railway line.
- The family are poor⁽⁸⁾ and life is very different for them now.
- 8. The children have lots of adventures(9) near the railway line. 9. A kind old man who travels on the train becomes their friend.
 - 10. The old man helps them and finds their father who is in prison (10).
- 11. Finally, their father comes home.
- 12. They become happy to be together (11) again.



تنويه :) الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Living a hard life * A short story of a poor family

* Your friend's daily life

* Helping others







on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Lives around the World

Tell us about your life!

- · What are your hobbies and interests?
- · What is a typical day in your life?
- · What job do you want to do one day?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India. I live in a village with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I **share a room with**⁽¹⁾ my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside tap **at the end** of (2) street where we live. My mum **gets water** from (3) the tap every morning. Then we all

have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. **I feed the chickens**⁽⁴⁾, then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then **I go to bed**⁽⁵⁾.

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

Extracting information			ومات	استخراج المعل
Learn 1. Shahana helps h			er mother mak	ie .
a. II	unch	b. dinner	c. breakfast	d. supper
Practise	2. There	are	people in Shah	ands family
a, fo	our	b. five	c. three	d. six

(1) پتشارك في حجرة مع

(2) في نهاية (3) يحصل على الماء من

(4) يطعم الدجاج

(5) يذهب للفراش

on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Yunis : Grandma, have you got

a watermelon(1)?

Grandma: Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis : Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma: Yes, of course. We need a knife(2)

to cut(3) it!

Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it?

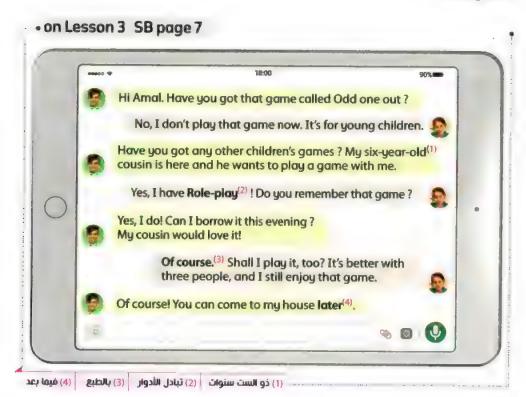
Grandma: Thank you, Yunis, but be careful⁽⁴⁾ with the knife!

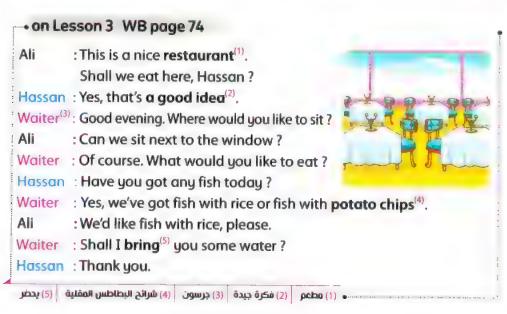




(2) سکین (3) یقطع

رد) بست (4) حریص





on Lesson 4 SB page 8

The Railway Children by E. Nesbit

It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, **live with**⁽¹⁾ their parents in London. They have a big, attractive home with a large garden. One terrible day, two men take their father **away from**⁽²⁾ home. The children do not know where he is going or why.

The children **move from**⁽³⁾ the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line. The family are poor and life is very **different for**⁽⁴⁾ them. The children have lots of adventures near the railway line. A kind old man, who travels on **the train**⁽⁵⁾ every day, becomes their friend.

The old man helps the family **in many ways**⁽⁶⁾. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison for something he did not do. Finally, their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again **at last**⁽⁷⁾.







Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تَخْمِينَ مَعْنَى مَفْرِدَةَ لَغُويَةَ فَى النَصِ Learn 1. The word " in the first paragraph means very bad.

a. attractive b. terrible c. large d. close

Practise 2. The word "near" in the second paragraph is the apposite of

a close b. ualy c. far from d. beautiful

رد) پعیش مع (1) پعیش مع

(2) ياخذ بعيدًا عن

(3) ينتقل من (4) مختلف بالنسية لـ

(5) يسافر على متن قطار

(6) بعدة طرق

(7) أخيرًا

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

Choose

the correct

answer from

a. b. c or d

1. I can't eat this meal. It's so

a. typical b. delicious

b. delicious c. terrible

d. careful

2 This family do	not have much mo	neu so theu are	
a. rich	b. tall	c. poor	d. fat
3 Our new house	e is in the country r	near a railwau	
a. line		c. number	
4. I live in a citu b			in the country.
a. village	b. island	c. playground	d. court
5. I do the same	things at the same	time every day in	my day.
a. terrible	b. attractive	c. intelligent	d. typical
SB , WB & Previous E	xams		
6. SB She helps	her mother	the chickens on	the farm.
	b. change		
7. We Shall I help	p you you	ır books ? - No, than	ks.
	b. try		
8. The police too	k three people to	because th	ney stole the car.
·		(G.	harbia - East Mahala 2024)
a. school	b. cinema	c. prison	d. hospital
9. I like your dres	s. It's	(Qalvubia - Tukh 20,	23 - Damietta - Zarka 2024)
a. attractive		c. bad	d. terrible
	same room with n		
a. dive	b. deliver		
		(Multidisciplin	ary - Gharhia - Santa 2021)
El-Moasser Exercises	•		
11. Can you	the man who	stole your bag?	
_	b. describe		d. feed
	any countries to he		
a. adventures	b. gardens	c. roads	d. trains
Definitions			
13. A is:	something you turr	on or off to get w	ater.
a. tape		-	d. cab
14. The	is the metal road th	nat a train travels o	on.
	b. railway line		d. tap
Language Notes	, Expressions & P	Prepositions	
15. Dad suggested	d to the b	each in summer.	
a. go	b. to go	c. going	d. goes
16. It's polite to so	ıy sorry when you		_
a. have	b. help	c. make	d. do



مهارة التحدث

► Asking and answering questions about moving to a new house : توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد :

Questions



Answers



- 1. How did you feel when you moved to a new house? Why?
- كيف شعرت عندما انتقلت إلى منزل جديد ؟ ولماذا ؟
- 2. How did you feel when things changed? Was it easy or difficult at first?
- ل. كيف شعرت عندما تغيرت الأمور ؟ هل كان
 الأمر سهلًا أم صعبًا في البداية ؟

I felt happy and excited because the new house was comfortable.

- شعرت بالسعادة والحماس لأن المنزل الجديد مريح.

I folt strange To fast it was

I felt strange. In fact it was difficult at first when I left my old friends.

شعرت بالغربة. ففي الواقع كان الأمر صعبًا في
 البداية عندما تركت أصدقائي القدامي.



مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips:

نصائح للكتابة :

Use short and clear sentences in text messages.

استخدم جمل قصيرة وواضحة في الرسائل النصية.

منزلك الجديد Your new house

- 1. We have just moved to our new house.
- لقد انتقلنا مؤخرًا إلى منزلنا الجديد.
- 2. It is a big, attractive home with a large garden. إنه منزل كبير وجذاب ذو حديقة فسيحة
- 3. It consists of three floors and a large basement.
 - يتكون من ثلاث طوابق علوية وطابق أرضى فسيح.
- 4. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. يعيش أجدادي معنا في الطابق الأول.
- 5. My father made a large room for reading books.
 - قام والدي بتشييد غرفة فسيحة لقراءة الكتب.
- 6. It has a lot of books in all fields.
- يوجد بالغرفة العديد من الكتب في كل المجالات.



Asking questions with Have / Has got ... / Can ... ? & Shall ... ?

1. Have / Has got ... ?

Has (he/she/it / اسم مفرد) → got?

ex. - Has your father got a blue car?

- * Yes, he has. or * Yes, he has got a blue car.
- * No, he hasn't. or *No, he hasn't got a blue car.

Have (I / we / you / they / اسـم جمع) → got ?

ex. - Have you got any cousins?

- * Yes, I have, or * Yes, I have got five cousins.
- * No, I haven't. or * No, I haven't got any cousins.

2. Can ... ?

Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No question

a Can + subject الناعل + inf. ?

ex. - Can you climb a tree?

* Yes, I can.

* No, I can't.

Wh-question

السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام

السؤال بـ(هل)

- b Question word + الفاعل + can + subject كلمة الاستفهام + inf. ?
 - ex. A: What can you do. Ahmed?

B: I can lift these heavy bags.

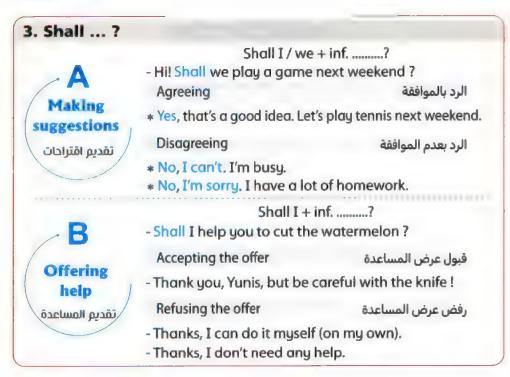
Asking for something طلب شیئًا ما

 $Can + (I / you) + inf. \dots$?

ex. - Can I have ice cream, please?

* No, you can't. Ice cream is not good for you.

UNIT ONE



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1 she	got a blue pen?		(Damietta - Al-Roda 2024)
a. Does	b. Is	c. Has	d. Have
2. 58 Have you	a wate	rmelon, Grandma	?
a. get	b. gets	c. got	d. getting
	(Alexand	dria - Al Agmai 2023 / Sh	arkia - Menia El-Qamh 2024)
3. WB	I have a glass of	water, please?	
a. Can	b. Have	c. Did	d. Had
4. SB	you got that gar	ne called "Odd one	Out"?
a. Do	b. Can	c. Have	d. Did
5. WB Shall I	you some	water?	
a. brought	b. bring	c. bringing	d. brings
6. SS Of course	! You can	to my house lat	er.
a. comes	b. came	c. coming	d. come

El-Moasser Exercises

- 7.we eat here, Hassan? Yes, that's a good idea.
 - a. Shall
- b. Were
- c. Are
- d. Have
- 8. Has he got an umbrella? No, he
 - a. can't
- b. hasn't
- c. doesn't have d. doesn't
- 9. you help him with his homework?
 - a. Have
- b. Can
- c. Does
- d. Are
- 10. Can you answer this question? No, I
 - b. can't g. mustn't
- c. shouldn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB. WB & Previous Exams

1. Can you (driving) the car?

- (Minia Samalui 2024)
- 2. (Do) we go to the park tomorrow? No. I'm not very keen on that. . (Giza - Al Warrag 2024)
- 3. WB Can we sit next to the window? No, you (not can).

(Menofia - Al-Shohadaa 2022)

- 4. SB Shall I (helps) you to cut it?
- (Gharbia West Mahall 2022)

Fi-Moasser Exercises

- 5. (Have) your father got a computer?
- 6. (I shall) get you a drink?
- 7. . . . (Did) Abdullah play chess ? Yes, he can.
- 8. What (you have) got in your bag?

El Moasser

Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواحب المنزلي

• تمكنك من اتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع)

والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوجدات



Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

		80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mail
Step 3 Writing Fig. 4 Actions 1 Step 3 Writing	Write a paragraph on : "Your house"	"A children's story"
Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Thouse ? Bilal asks Hakim about his house. Bilal : Where is your house ? Hakim: (1) edroom? Bilal : Do you like your house ? Hakim: (2) a big Hakim: (3) Hakim: Because it is large and attractive. Bilal : (4) In brother. In brother. Hakim: (5) Hakim: (5)	Yara and Nihal are talking about children's stories. Yara: What books do you like to read? Nihal: (1) Yara: (2) Nihal: Yes, I read the Railway Children Story. Yara: (3) Nihal: The story is about three children who like the trains. Yara: What happened in the story? Nihal: (4) Vara: I like adventures! Can I borrow it? Nihal: (5)
Vocabulary اختبر اتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Read and complete: 1. Why do you like your house? - Because it is large and - Colour have a big bedroom? - Yes,I a big bedroom? - Yes,I a big bedroom? 3. Is there a in your house? - Yes, there is.	1. What books do you like to read? - I like to read children's 2. What is the story about? - It is about three children who like 3. What happened in the story? - They had a lot of

Your house

A Children's story

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

• Understand

Apply

O Create

-	•	lete the following dialogue : s Tamer about his new house.
	All tells	
	Ali	: I moved to a new house, Tamer.
	Tamer	: A new house! (1)?
	Ali	: It's in Alexandria by the sea.
	Tamer	: Fantastic! When did you move there ?
	Ali	: (2)
	Tamer	: (3)?
	Ali	: Yes, it's a large house with a garden full of flowers.
	Tamer	: Do you like flowers ?
	Ali	: (4)
		And you?
	Tamer	• (5)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Dina. I live with my family in a nice house with a **beautiful** garden. It is in a small village. I share a room with my sister. We all get up early. My father works on a farm. He grows vegetables and fruits. My brother sometimes helps him. I like to water the plants and flowers in the garden. I get water from an outside tap. My sister is ten years old. **She** usually feeds the chickens and collects eggs. I always help my mum with the housework. I do homework after dinner. In the evening, we usually watch TV together. We always go to bed early to get up early.

(Cairo - El-Mostaqbal 2024)

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What is the passage about?

1. The underline	ed word " beautiful " me	ans	
a. ugly	b. weak	c. attractive	d. bad
2. The underline	ed word "She" refers to		
a. Dina	b. her sister	c. her mother	d her aunt
3. They keep	in the garder).	
a. goats	b. cows	c. sheep	d. chickens
Answer the fo	llowing questions:		

	5. What is Dina's father's job ?				
	6. Do you think Di	na is helpful ? W	hy?		
3	Choose the correct				
•	1. Ayman			(Ismaili 2024)	
	a. shares	-	•	d. spends	
		-	c. borrow	(Cairo - Ain Shams 2023)	
	a.buy	b. lend			
•	3. Camping in the c		c.line		
				_	
•	4. How did you feel	b. moved	c. carried	d told	
				d. told	
	5. Thieves are alwa a. prison			d.factory	
	6. They bought a			-	
Ī	a.tiny		c.bad	d.funny	
1	u. ang	bildige		Gharbia — East Tanta 2022)	
	7. This food is bad.	It tastes	•	alybia - West Shobra 2024)	
	a. delicious				
	8. Has Ahmed				
	a.get	b. gets		d.got	
<u>.</u>	9. Has Habiba got		_		
Ť	a. didn't	b. doesn't		d.hasn't	
	10. W3 Shall we	to the bed	ch tomorrow?		
1	a. went	b.go	c. going	d.goes	
A	Complete the sente	nces with the co	rrect form of the	word(s) in brackets:	
7	1. (Can) y	ve ao shoppina	tomorrow? - Yes,	that's a good idea.	
1	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	3 11 3	(Sh	arkia – East Zagazig 2024)	
ı	2 (I can)	ask you some q	uestions, pl <mark>ease</mark>	? (Favoum – Abshwy 2022)	
	3. Signal Hi! Shall we			veekend?	
	4. WB Have you	(get) any	cousins?		
5	Write a paragraph	of about NINET	TY (90) words on	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	
•			our new house"		
				,,	
				aira - West Nasr City 2024	



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

armchair (n)	کرسی بمسند	lamp (n)	مصباح [لمبة]
basin (n)		mirror (n)	مرآة
carpet (n)	سجادة	wardrobe (n)	دولاب ملابس
curtains (n)	ستائر	bookshelf (n)	رف للكتب
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	cushions (n)	وسائد / مخدات
nature reserves (n)	-	practise (d) (v)	يمارس

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:
 - nature reserves carpet practise wardrobe mirror
 - 1. Pupils should ... English outside school.
 - 2. My sister has many dresses in her
 - 3. We should protect to help the environment.
 - 4. There was a beautiful on the floor.

Lesson 5 SB page 9 WB page 76

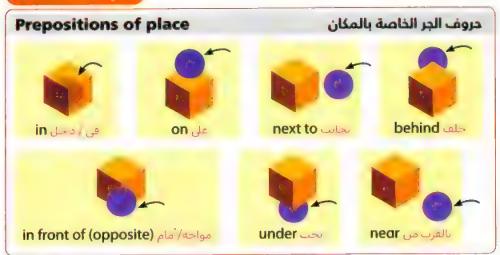
match (ed) (v)	يتلائم/ يتماشي/ينسجم مع	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
floor (n)		sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
cupboard (n)	دولاب	belong (ed) (v)	بخص - ينتمي

Lesson 6 SB page 10 WB page 77

penfriend (n)		absent (adj)	عائب - غير موجود			
downstairs (n)	الطابق السفلى	Cambridge	مدينة كامبريدج [انجلترا]			
nationality (n)	جنسية	Oxford	مدينة أوكسفورد [انجلترا]			
language (n)	لغة	Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا			

UNIT ONE

Remember



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P.
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
write	يكتب	wrote	written
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

lamp	مصباح [لمبة] something that gives light
basin	 you can wash your face in this a bowl for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc.
curtains	they are next to your windows and you close them at night سنائر
wardrobe	It is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes دولاب ملابس
chest of drawers	 It has drawers where you can put your clothes خزانة ذات ادراج a piece of furniture with drawers (boxes with handles on them) to put things in
mirror	a piece of special glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you
carpets	سجاد these are on the floor
armchair	a large comfortable chair with parts to put your arms on کرسی بمسند

Vocabulary Study

فات ومتضادات				
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
open	بفتح	unlock	close / lock	بغلق
downstairs	الطابق السفلي	-	upstairs	الطابق العلوي
nearby	بالقرب من	close	far away	بعيدًا - على بعد

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
-ity	يكون الاسم من الصفة	nationality جنسية
-able	تكوِّن الصفة من الاسم	ا comfortable



•	Ch	oose	the	correct	answer	from a	, b.	cord	
---	----	------	-----	---------	--------	--------	------	------	--

- 1. "Open" and "......" have the same meaning.
 - a. lock b. close
- c. unlock d. use
- 2. To turn the adjective "national" into a noun, we add "..........".
 - a. -tion
- b. -al c. -ity
- d.-ment

d, the stars

- 3. To change the verb "comfort" into an adjective, we add to suffix ".............".
 a. -able b. -ive c. -ful d. -ness
- 4. I can't go..... . My leg hurts, I'll use the lift المصعد.
 - a. uptown b. upstairs c. the stairs

General Notes on Reading & Listening

11 wardrobe / cupboard

* wardrobe

دولاب (خاص بالملابس)

- Put your clothes in the wardrobe.
- * cupboard * cupboard
 - Go and see how much sugar we have in the cupboard in the kitchen.

 (SB page 8)
- للحظ استخدام حرف الجر on مع الكلمات التالية : on television on the radio on computer
 - Ell I watch videos on my computer.

(SB page 9)

UNIT ONE

3 would ('d) love / like to + inf.

بود أن

• - WB I would love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fuyoum.

(WB page 77)

>- I would like to help you with your English.

4 furniture (n)

الأثاث (اسم لا يعد) (يعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد)

• - SB Wooden furniture is not usually very expensive.

.58 page 91

اسم / for + (inf. + ing) + مفعول Thank + مفعول

يشكر ل

- 533 Thank you for being my penfriend.

>- 533 Thank you for your email.

SB page 11;

6 reserve (v) / (n)

يحجز (مكان - تذكرة) / محمية

- Can I reserve (book) a ticket to Alex., please?

>- There is a natural reserve near El Fayoum.

'SB page 10

7 penfriend - keypal

* penfriend (BrE)

صديق مراسلة

▶ - I've a British **penfriend** to practise my English.

* keypal (AmE)

صديق الإنترنت

- Emad is my **keypal**. We chat only online.

SB page 11

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expre	essions	Prepositions		
a breakfast break	فترة استراحة لوجبة الإفطار	hear from	يتلقى أخباراً من	
get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه	look out of	ينظرمن	
a short walk from	تمشية قصيرة من	tell about	يخبر (شخص) عن	
Nice to meet you	سررت بلقائك	on the front	في المقدمة	
Best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	belong to	يخص/ينتمي إلى	

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson (5) SB page 9

A boy describes(1) his room.

- 1. My room is small, but it's attractive.
- 2. I have a lamp⁽²⁾ on the **bookshelf**⁽³⁾. 3. I have a wardrobe⁽⁴⁾ with a mirror on the front.
- 4. The colour of the curtains⁽⁵⁾ matches the carpet.

A girl describes her room.

- 1. My bed is under the window and there are cushions⁽⁶⁾ on it.
- I sleep with the curtains open to look out of the window.
 I like to sit and read in the big armchair.
 - 4. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers.

ep some ciotines in the chest of diamers

Lesson (6) SB page 10

- 1. Judy is writing an email to her penfriend(7) Rebecca.
- 2. She tells her that she is from Al Fayoum in Egypt.
 - Al Fayoum is a large city with beautiful nature reserves⁽⁸⁾ nearby.
- 4. Judy lives with her parents in a flat.
- 5. On Saturdays, Judy usually gets up early and helps her grandmother with her shopping.

Then, she reads and does her homework.

* Your penfriend

- 7. Judy's favourite subjects are maths and English.
 - 8. Judy thanks Rebecca for being her penfriend.
- 9. Judy is happy to be able to practise her English.

Lesson [7] SB page 11

- 1. Dan is from England and is writing an email to Alex.
- 2. Dan thanks Alex for being his penfriend.
- 3. Dan gets up at half past seven.
- 4. Dan walks to school with his brother.
- 5. After school, Dan sometimes does sport or plays music. 6. Dan asks Alex to tell him about his typical daily routine.

Lesson (7) SB page 11

- 1. Alex is from Germany and is replying⁽⁹⁾ to Dan's email.
 - 2. Alex thanks(10) Dan for his email.
- Alex says that school in Germany starts very early in the morning.
- 4. Alex doesn't have breakfast at home.

He has a breakfast break after the first lesson.



* Description of your favourite room.





Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 9

1 Boy:

My room is small, but it's really attractive. I have a lamp on a bookshelf next to my bed so I can read at night.

I have a wardrobe with a mirror on the front, and my desk is under the window.



على رف الكتّب ليلًا فى المقدمة أسفل النافذة يشاهد فيديوهات ينام والستاثر مفتوحة ينظر من

Do you like my curtains? The colour matches the carpet. The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos 51 on my computer.

Girl:

My bed is under the window. There are cushions on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open—because I like to look out of—the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers. Our bathroom is downstairs, but I have a basin in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.



Answer Listening Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise I have a with a mirror on the front.

a. bookshelf b. wardrobe c. sofa d. carpet

on Lesson 5 WB page 76

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of **sunlight** in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed they have a big wardrobe.

🗀 ضوء الشوس

Mu mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an armchair 🔽 فساتين next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. الا ولأسرر He puts his clothes in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at herself in it!

Answer Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise - In front of the bed, they have a big

a. mirror

b. wardrobe

c window

d.door



on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dear Rebecca.

It is very nice to meet you⁽¹⁾. My name is Judy.

I'm from Al Fayoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.



On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping, then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother.

My favourite subjects are maths and English. Thank uou for (3) being my penfriend. I am happy to be able to practise my English (4)!

I hope to hear from (5) you soon,

(1) سررت بلقائك (2) يلغب أثماب حاسوب وع

(3) بشکر علی

(4) يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية

d.far

(5) يسمع من

Judu

مهارة التفكير النقدى Critical thinking skill Learn 1. Do you think it's a good idea to have a penfriend? Why? - Yes, I think so. Because it helps me to practise English. Answer تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context the following Practise 2. The word (nearby) in the first paragraph is the opposite auestions: of

b. open

a. beautiful

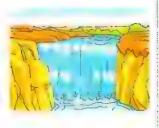
c. nice

UNIT ONE

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

Hi Tamer

Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fayoum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge, but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English. Please write to me again soon.



Yours, Oliver

on Lesson 6 WB page 77

Hi Leila

- b 1 Thank you for your email. Here is some information⁽¹⁾ about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford. We live in a house but we don't have a garden⁽²⁾ Does your home have a garden?
- a 2 Without⁽³⁾ a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

- (1) معلوما*ت* (2) حديقة خاصة
- d 3 I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk (3) from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home ?
 - c 4) I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes

Mariana

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

Hi Alex!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England. I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sport⁽¹⁾ or play music⁽²⁾. I do not watch TV when I get home⁽³⁾. I always do my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany?



(1) <mark>يمارس رياضة</mark> (2) يعزف موسيقي

(3) يصل المنزل

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I do not have breakfast before school. There is a "breakfast break (1)" after the first lesson (2). How many lessons does your school have every day?



(1) فترة استراحة لتناول وجبة الأفطار

(2) حصة / درس

on Lesson 7 SB page 11

I love my bedroom! I have a big white wardrobe in the corner (1). Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on it. I close (2) them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey (3) armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks (4) and other clothes in it. Finally, there is a big carpet on the floor (5)



(1) في الركن

ålė. (2)

(3) رمادي اللون

(4) جوارب

(5) الثرضية



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. I have a big in my bedroom to keep my clothes. b. carpet c. wardrobe d. basin 2. are used on windows to keep out the light. d. Bells b. Curtains c. Mats a. Carpets 3. She likes to look at the after she wears her clothes. c. basin d.carpet a. lamp b. mirror 4. We use to cover the floors.

c. drawers d. clothes b. curtains a. carpets

UNITONE

5. Please, turn on 1	the	want to read the s	story in bed.
a. lamb		c. carpet	
6. You can put son	ne of your clothe	s in this chest of.	
a. windows	b. armchairs	c basins	d. drawers
SB , WB & Previous Exa	ams		
7. I washed my fa	ce in the	after getting u	Qena 2024)
a. cupboard	b. armchair	c. basin	d. mirror
8. 🛂 Al Fayoum i	s a large city, wit	th beautiful natur	e reserves
a. nearby	b. near	c. next	d. up
			(Giza – Al Warrag 2022)
9. When they	open the curtain	s, there is always	lots of in
the room.		(Multid	disciplinary - Fayoum 2021)
a. moon	b. sunlight	c. darkness	d. study
El-Moasser Exercises			
10. There is a colou	rful carnet on th	e	
g. flood	b. reserve		d. floor
11. What's your			
	b. address		d. birthday
Definitions			
12. A large comfort	able chair with p	parts to put your	arms on is called
a/an			
a. curtain	b. carpet	c. basin	d. armchair
13. A is a	big cupboard w	here you can put	your clothes.
a. carpet			
Language Notes,	Expressions &	Prepositions	
14. We always talk	online, but we h	ave never met. He	e is my
a. classmate	b. keypal	c. partner	d. brother
15. There is a break	fast af	ter the first lessor	١.
a. lesson	b. break	c. class	d. play
16. I like to sleep w	ith the curtains	The air	is fresh.
a. happy	b. closed	c. open	d. lively



مهارة التحدث

I. Describing your bedroom and furniture. : ا. وصف غرفة النوم والأثاث الخاص بك:

Questions



Answers



- Can you describe your bedroom?
 - هل يمكنك أن تصف غرفة النوم الخاصة بك ؟
- Yes, I can. I share a room with my sister. There are two beds. I have a big white wardrobe in the corner. نعم يمكننى. أشترك في غرفة مع أختى. هناك سريرين كما أننى أمتلك دولاب للملاس ذولون أبيض كبير العجم في الركن.
- ٤. أسئلة والرد عليها عن أصدقاء المراسلة: . Asking and answering about penfriends.

Questions



Answers



- 1. Do you think it is a good idea to have penfriends? Why / Why not?
 - ١. هل تعتقد أنه من الجيد أن يكون لديك أصدقاء مراسلة ؟ لم/لم لا ؟
- 2. What can you learn from writing to people from different countries?

 د ما الذي يمكنك تعليه من مراسلة أشخاص من بلاد مختلفة ؟
- Yes, I think it's a good idea to have penfriends because it is good to practise a new language.
- نعم، أعتقد إنها لفكرة جيدة أن يكون لدى أصدقاء
 مراسلة لأن ذلك مفيد لممارسة لغة جديدة.
- I learn about their different habits and traditions.
 - أتعلم عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم المختلفة.

Pop Quiz

on Speaking

- Comp	lete the	following	dialogue
--------	----------	-----------	----------

Hussein and Marwan are talking about penfriends.

Marwan: What are you doing, Hussein?

Hussein: (1)

Marwan: Who are you sending an email to?

Hussein: (2)

Marwan: (3) ...

Hussein: Mark is my penfriend.

Marwan: (4)

Hussein: He is from Canada.

Marwan: Do you think it is a good idea to have penfriends?

Hussein: (5)......

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand

Apply

O Create

Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر اللجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب) 1. Ahmed is a/an a. student h dentist c teacher d. engineer Ahmed is from . c. Cairo d. Qena a. Al Fayoum b. Luxor 3. He has a. one brother b. no brothers c. one sister d. two brothers 4. In summer, they go to b. Alexandria c. Al Fayoum d. Cairo a. Luxor

(Favoum-Senorous 2023)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Haytham and this is my house. My house is quite big. It has got two floors a ground floor and a first floor. It has also got an attic and a basement بدروم. On the ground floor there is a hall, a kitchen, a living room, a big dining room and a toilet. On the first floor there are three bedrooms, one bathroom and a big corridor. My bedroom is between my parents' bedroom and the bathroom. My sister's bedroom is in front of mine.

I love my bedroom, but I also like the attic. In the attic, I keep some of my books and my old toys. I like to spend my time there because it is **large** and there is a big sofa there where I sometimes take a nap.

In the basement, we keep the washing machine, the drying machine and old things. At the back of the house, there is also the garage, where my parents park the family car, and a lovely garden, with many green spaces, flowers, two swings and a swimming pool. I love my house so much! It's very comfortable.

a.	Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b	, C	or	d	
----	--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	---	-----	----	---	--

 The opposi 	te of the underlined	l word " <i>large</i> " is "	*
a. wide	b. long	c. small	d. sad
2. The toilet is	on the	•	
a. hall	b. ground floor	c. second floor	d. basement
3. There are to	wo in th	ne garden.	
a. slides	b. bathrooms	c. swings	d. pools

		following questions to best title for this p							
	5. Why do you think Haytham likes the attic?								
		the underlined pro	noun " <u>It</u> " refer	to?					
3	Choose the co	orrect answer fron	na,b,cord:						
•	1 . A is:	something that give	es light.	F m. L E m. 2 V					
	a. baisn	b.lamb	c.lamp	d.curtain					
•	2. I a ro	om with my sister. T	here are two be	ds. Mer en grant					
	a.do			d.share					
•	3. WBYou can s	ee yourself in the	************						
	a.sofa	b. bookshelf	c.mirror	d.carpet					
•	4. Most countrie	s are interested in	to keep o	and protect animals.					
	a.rivers		b. nature res	erves					
	c.mirrors		d.bookstore	S					
•	5. The colour of	the curtains	the carpe						
	a.deals	b. treats	c.plays	d.matches					
•	6. I have blue	on the windo	ow. I close then	n at night.					
				(Giza - Omraniva 2023)					
	a.sofas	b.chairs	c.curtains	d.carpets					
	7. 😘 I play cor	nputer games	my brother						
	a.at	b.from	c.with	d.to					
i	8 . Ahmed gets	up early and	his homewor	rk. (, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,					
	g.do	b.is doing	c.does	d.did					
	9. There is a lan	np to the de	sk.						
	a.next	b. behind	c.back	d.front					
•	10. This bag is m	ine. It to me	<u>.</u>						
	a.works	b. brings	c.treats	d.belongs					
A	Complete the s	entences with the co	orrect form of t	he word(s) in brackets :					
Ť		u for (b							
	_								
		(gets up al							
		(get) a ma		All the state of t					
	4. All Often	(go) to scho	ioi by bus.	Merce & Farance at					



Comprehensi

Critical thinking

ر تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (التفكير النقدى Critical thinking تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (التفكير النقدى مناسب.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

▶ Read and answer the question:

My dad works in a shop. I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed chickens, then I help my an outside tap at the end of the street where we live. My mum gets water from it every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup of tea. mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. My name's Shahana, I'm from India. I live in a village Sometimes, I help my brother and sister to do their a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is with my parents, my brother and my sister. I share homework, too. Then I go to bed.

Why do you think Shahana is happy to help her Do you think that Shahana is happy to help her brother and sister with their homework? Why? brother and sister with their homework?

🤲 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في إبداء الرأي.

할 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع أن تبدى رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة.

Your daily routine

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من والرد عليها. (language functions) والتي غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة

• اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue:

Amal is talking about her daily routine.

Mona: Do you have a daily routine, Amal?

Mona: (2) Amal : (1)

Amal: I get up at 7 o'clock in the morning.

Mona: Do you prepare your breakfast?

Amal : (3)

Mona: (4)

Mona: How do you go to school? Amal: My mum makes it for me.

Amal : (5)

🔌 التحدي تريد (التحدث عن الروتين اليومي) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

🧐 مفتاح الحل بجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك



Correction notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
 التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
 اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review		◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة		
inf.+s / inf. الاثبات → Subj. فاعل فاعل → doesn't / don't + inf.	في المضارع البسيط مـع (He / She / It) يضاف للفعل ies / es / s وينفي بـ (doesn't) وتحذف الـ ies / es / s ومـع (I / You / We / They) الفعــل بــدون إضافات وينفي بـ (don't).			
Do ► (I/you/we/they/ جمع) ► inf. Does ► (he/she/it/مفرد) ► inf.	فى حالة السؤال نستخدم الفعل المساعد (Do / Does).			
always / usually / often / never / sometimes	تســتخدم الظروف مع المضارع البسيط قبل الفعل الرئيســى وتستخدم بعد am / is / are وبعض ظروف التكرار تستخدم في أول الجملة!			
Learn		◄ تعلم		
Sentence	Correction	Reason		
1 Hany never[play] footba	ll plays	يضاف للفعل (s) مع الاسم المفرد		
② I[tell always] the truth.	always tell	ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الرئيسي		
3 Salma doesn't [goes] to school by bus.	go	نستخدم المصدر بعد (doesn't)		

Seriour by bus.				(4,545), (4,545)
Practise				◄ تدرب
Write the reason : للقاعدة المطلوبة	استيعابه	يؤكد	ىبب الإجابة	♦ معرفة الطالب لس
1 They [doesn't] play sports on S	undays.	don't		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
② She			ays visits	, ,
100 your father drive to work	(?		Does	
4 How [does] you usually go to	school?	do		
Write the correction :				▶ اكتب التصحيح
What time [do] your brother go to bed?				نســتخدم فعل مساعد الاسم المفرد في المض
2 I love apples. I [never] eat them.			بأكل تفاح	الجملة تدل أنه دائمًا ب
3 Sometimes, I [going] to my friend's flat.			sometime	مضارع بسبط لوجود 5
①			اعد Does سيط	نستخدم الفعل المس مع he في المضارع الب



on unit 1

قيم مستواك كيقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Speaking	1. Discussing daily routine	اليومي: 1. What time do you get	- I get up at	2. How often do you play tennis?	- I usually play tennis.	3. Who do you usually talk	to at break time?	- I usually talk to my	friends at break time.	2. Describing your bedroom	and furniture	وصف غرفة اللوم والأثاث الخاص بك: الحملة المنفية :	- Can you describe your	bedroom?	- Yes, I can. There are two		wardrobe in the corner.	
Language		احيان sometimes النفا solvays - دائفا always عادة - often النا - often الناء - often	• تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير	عن عدد مراث تكرار حدوث فعل ما : She always studies hard for her final - دذات	exams.	زمن المضارع البسيط Z- The Present Simple Tense	• «يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من»	। रिवाह । प्रिंगिक : विकास । विकास ।	Hoard Me You was well the	(\$/\$\$/\$) + Induct 1914 + bildy odge 1919/98/	- He drives an old car.		+ time	- We don't go to school on Friday	interrogative : कंप्राचित्रकारा	+ dad + soo o		- Does Mariam listen to music on the bus?
ary	الروتين اليومى	يحاور - حوار	يرسل رسائل لأصدر المحمولة	يطعو	رهيب / فظيع	خط سكة حديد	mtt	مقير	كرسي بمسند	حوض (للاغتسال)	رف الكتب	سجادة	خزانة ذات أدراج	ستائر	لمبة / أباجورة	مراة	Sițiô	دولاب ملابس
Vocabulary	daily routine	interview text friends	پرسل رسائل لأصدقائه على هواتفهم المحمولة	feed	terrible	railway line	prison	poor	armchair	basin	bookshelf	carpet	chest of drawers	curtains	lamp	mirror	sofa	wardrobe

ucstions collected from previous exame ندریان محققهٔ من اختیارات المحافظات علی الوجدة

9 Gamal got a new car? (Ismailia 2023) a. Has b. Does c. Have d. Do 10. On Saturday, I usually time with my cousins. (Luxor - Toud 2023) a. spends b. spend	brackets: d play cheser is	3. How often (do) Hassan go to the park? (Suez 2023) 4. I	6. They (be) usually late. 7. Does Omar usually (comes) to school late? 8. Have your (app.) a mobile phone?	9. I(get usually) up late at weekends. (Port Said 2023) 10. My sister(don't) helps me with my school work.
1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Can you tell me about your typical routine? (Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2024) a. dairy b. diary c. daily d. deal 2. My grandparents live in a of flats.	a. house b. black c. block d. chest 3. He was sent to	and read books. a. bookshelf b. wardrobe c. armchair d. basin 5. People put on the windows to keep out the light. a. carpets b. floors c. curtains d. maps	were so.	a. text b. send c. speak d. talk 8. My brother polite and clever. (Cairo - Ain Shams 2024) a. always is b. is always c. does always d. always does

on unit



Understand
 Apply
 Create

A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر اللجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



- 1. Dina is years old. d. thirteen b. twelve c. thirty a. eleven 2. Dina is from d. France c. USA
- a. Egypt 3. Ding's mother is a/an
 - c. footballer d. engineer b. doctor a. teacher

b. England

- 4. There are people in Dina's family.
- c. eight b. five a. ten
- (Qena-Nage-Hamadi 2023)

d. three

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Jana is describing her house to her friend Judy.

Judy: Do you live in a flat or a house?

Jana: (1) Judy:(2)?

Jana: We've got three rooms, a bathroom and a kitchen.

Judy: Have you got a special bedroom in your house?

Jana: (3) Judu:(4)?

Jana: I share it with my sister.

Judy: Are there curtains in your room?

Igng: (5)

(Beni Suef-Naser 2023 / Assuit - Manfaloat 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Nada. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive before the bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with **them** in the playground. I come back home at about three o'clock. My parents come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

a. Choose the c	orrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
1. Nada's hou	se is not far from	her school. It mean	s that her school is
the	house.		
a. near	b. far	c. big	d. opposite
2. Nada's par	ents come home o	at o'clock.	
a. one	b. two	c. three	d. four
The underli	ned pronoun "the	m" refers to	
a. Nada's p	arents	b. Nada's family	J
c. Nada's fr	iends	d. sandwiches	
b. Answer the fe	ollowing question	ns:	
	able title to the pa		
	•		1541+15151141+47+ 5+45454 v4 444+ v 447- v
5. What does	Nada do at break	?	
**** **********************************			***************************************
	u think of Nada ? V		
o. macao go		*****	
	***************************************		(Cairo-West Cairo 2023)
	No ombuden		
_	. vocabular	y & Structure	,
Choose the co	rrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
1. He washed his	face in the	after aettina u	IP. (Minia Samalut 2024)
	b. armchair	c. basin	d. mirror
2. This	helps me to read	l in bed at night.	(Gi;a Hawamdia 2023)
a. lamb	b. lamp	c. basin	d. curtain
3. Doing the sam	e thing every day	is called a daily	
a. meal	b. routine	c. road	d. threat
4. There's a brown	on the	e floor in our living ro	oom.
		_	20 / Giza - Al Warraq 2023)
a. window	b. carpet	c. mirror	d. curtain
5. My friend is ser	nding me a	message on r	ny phone.
		c.picnic	

UNITONE	Understand © App	oly • Create	
a. universit	المجرمور must be sent to ty b. hospital attractive" means "	c. prison	d. school
a. ugly	b. beautiful does Shahana	c. dirty	d. terrible
a. lives	b. living	c. to live	d. live
a. Has 10 . Mona	b. Have write her les	c. Does sons at home.	d. Do (Caro Heliophy 2024) d. isn't
a, never			ne word(s) in brackets:
2.[***] Alex	(walk) to s	chool with his bro	ther every day.
3. We have 4. It doesn't. Write an er	ve (get) f (rains) in E. V mail of about NINET nd Tamer to describe	ish or chicken with summer. Vriting Y (90) words: your bedroom. Yo	n rice. Behevra Itav El Barud 2023) مجاب عند في نهاية الكتاب our name is Ali and
3. We have 4. It doesn't. Write an er	ve (get) f (rains) in E. V mail of about NINET nd Tamer to describe address is ali@gmail.	ish or chicken with summer. Vriting Y (90) words: your bedroom. Yo	n rice. Behevra Itav El Barud 2023) مجاب عند في نهاية الكتاب our name is Ali and
3. We have 4. It doesn't. Write an er To your friend your email of	ve (get) f (rains) in E. V mail of about NINET nd Tamer to describe address is ali@gmail. ail.com.	ish or chicken with summer. Vriting Y (90) words: your bedroom. Yo	n rice. «Behevra Itav El Barud 2023) معلم عند في نعاية الكتاب our name is Ali and email address is

(Sharkia - Awlad Sakr 2024)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

I. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: d. England 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: b. brother c. parents d. uncle c. Italy 2. She lives with her b. India 1. Shahana is from a. China a. gunt

Mona is asking Huda about her daily routine. **Mona:** Can I ask you some questions?

Huda: I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning. Mona: What do you do when you get up ?

Huda: (3)....

 ${f 3.}$ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.

d. wardrobe 2. People write information about themselves on their b. curtain c. carpet a. basin

c. picnics d. lives who repairs cars? 3. What do you call the..... a profiles b lines - A mechanic.

c. activity b. person a. research

d. Where d. way 4. A: . . . dress is this? B:-Mariam's. c. Whose 5. He got three children. b. How a. Who

4. Read the following, then answer the questions: d. has to c. having b. has a. have

morning. My mum also gets up early and makes my I am Mona. My daily routine is the same every school day. I always get up early at 6:30 in the breakfast. We always have breakfast together.

my books on the sofa. I watch TV and text my friend. parents work at the hospital. Their work is very hard Then I go to bed at 10 o'clock music very much and we sometimes listen to it. My dinner in the evening. I do my homework and read and they get home late, so I often help to make I go to school by bus with my friend Maha. I like

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

How does Mona go to school?

3. Do you think that Mona enjoys her daily routine?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : 4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

c. breakfast d. bus b. music b. 7:30 5. Mona gets up at g. 6:30 Q. Work

d. 9:00

5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences: I. get - to - does - How - she - school?

2. bookshelf - his - has - on - He - a lamp.

3. your - people - **How many** - in - are - family - there ?

4. bed - the - My - is - window - under.

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about: "Your bedroom"

غريبات طبطا لنموذج امتخان محافظة برازتهيد فختياري

5	
D	
-	
0	
0	
1	
è	
=	3
5	5
E	0
1	.00
3	0
S	0
5	.5
2	3
Ö	9
2	7
5	-
Ü	2
a	=
=	a
a)	a a
S	0
0	E
5	0
-	0
-	

Maged: Hi Saleh. Do you have the same routine every day of the week?

every au

a. No, I won't b. Yes, I do

c. Yes, he does d. No, I didn't

Maged:(2) ?

a. How do you go to school

b. Where are you

c. When do you get up

d. What time do you go to school

Saleh : I go to school at 7:00 am.

Maged: What do you do after school?

Saleh : (3)

a. I have lunch b. We like music

c. He plays chess d. They are at the school

b. laziness c. lazier d. faziest

a. lazily

6. The cat is sitting in the sun (lazy).

Maged: (4)?

a. What do you do in your free time

b. When are you free

c. Do you have free time

d. How often do you go swimming

d. does Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the Saleh : I like to listen to music in my free time. 7. How often (are) she go shopping? 8. A: (Where) is your shirt? B: 100 b. Yes, they do c. No, we haven't d. Yes, I do b. we c. they 6. Has (you) got a new bag? b. When d. Who b. have c. is Maged: Do you like basketball? brackets from a, b, c or d: a. No, I didn't a. How much pounds. C. How a. he



How are you feeling?

S8 pages 12:21 WB pages 79:85

Unit Objectives:

Reading:

A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email

Writing:

A text to describe a place or a photo; an email to a friend

Listening:

People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos

• Speaking:

Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news

- Language:

Adverbs of manner

• Life Skills :

Empathy

· Values :

Patience

· Issues:

Social participation

W8 pages 79 a 80



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ward (n)	جناح / عنبر (فی مستشفی)	calligraphy (n)	فن الخط
food stall (n)	كشك لبيع الطعام	sewing (n)	الخياطة / الحياكة
طلق}	(مكان لبيع الطعام في الهواء ال	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
park (ed) (v) , (n)	يركن [سيارة] - حديقة عامة	deaf (adj)	أصم (لا يسمع)
communicate (d) (v) يتواصل / يتصل	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

communicate - repair - sign language - food stall - ward

- 1. Samar works as a doctor in the children's in El Salam Hospital.
- 2. I bought some biscuits from a on the street corner.
- 3. My car broke down. Can youit, please?
- 4. Deaf people use to communicate together.

وظائف Jobs					
call-centre worker (r	موظف مركز اتصالات (۱	shop worker (n)	عامل / بائع في محل		
computer engineer	(n)	street-food seller (n)			
ات}	مهندس کمبیوتر [حاسب	عا	باتع طعام متجول (في الشار		
nurse (n)	مُمَرِّض / ممرضة	cook (n)	طباخ		
police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة	artist (n)	فنان / رسام		

Lesson 1	SB pages 12 &13	WB page 79		
school trip (n)		رحلة مدرسية	climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق
patients (n)		المرضي	tired (adj)	مُتعب
tourists (n)		سائحون	wave (d) (v)	بلوّح (بیدُه)

happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	fountain (n)	نافورة
tonight (adv)	الليلة	keyboard (n)	لوحة مفاتيح

sson	1	SB	pages	14 8	15	WB	page 80	

quite (adv)	إلى حد ما	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
surprise (n)	مفاجأة	sail (ed) (v)	يبحر [بالقارب]
traditional (adj)	تفلیدی	painting (n)	دهان / تلوين - لوحة فنية
neighbour (n)	جار	art club (n)	نادى الفنون
falafel (n)	فلافل [طعمية]	lovely (adj)	جميل
skill (n)	مهارة	dance (d) (v)	يرفص

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewn
stand	يقف	stood	stood
catch	يلحق بـ/ يصطاد	caught	caught

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

park	put a car, lorry, van, etc. in a place where it a period of time	t can stay for یرکن (سیارة)
sign language	a way of talking to people who cannot he hands instead of words	ar, using لغة الإشارة
ward	a large room in a hospital for people who the hospital for one night or more	need to stay in عنبر فی مستشفی
street-food seller	a person who prepares or sells food in the sometimes from a van or stall	street, بائع طعام متجول (فی
police officer	 this person helps to keep people safe in t a male or female member of the police 	he streets ضابط شرطة
call-centre worker	 a person who works in a big office in which speak to customers on the phone this person speaks to people on the phore helps them with their problems 	ne. He or she

UNIT TWO

shop worker	عامل في محل this person helps in a place which sells things
computer engineer	• you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system [مهندس کمبيوتر (حاسبات) • a person who mends or works with computers
calligraphy	beautiful writing using special pens or brushes فن الخط
communicate	share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways
deaf	not able to hear anything or not able to hear well [قصم الايسمع]
food stall	a large table or open shop in the street where people cook and sell food كشك طعام (في الشارع)
look forward to	feel pleased and excited about something that is going to happen يتطلع إلى/يتمنى
make sure	take special care and attention to do something يتأكد من

·Vocabulary Study

Synony	مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات عليم مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات عليم مترادفات عليم مترادفات عليم مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات				
Word الكلمة Synor		المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym		
busy	مشغول / مزدحم	crowded	empty	فارغ	
safe	آمن	protected	dangerous	خطير	
lazy	كسول	غير نشط inactive	active	نشيط	
bored	شاعر بالملل	uninterested	excited حمس	منفعل/مت	

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية					
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examp	أمثلة oles		
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	building	بناء		
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	seller worker	بائع عامل		
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional	تقليدي		
-ly	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة	lovely	جميل - محبوب		
-ous	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	dangerous	خطير		

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. To turn the verb "love" into an adjective, we add ".....".

 a. -ity

 b. -al

 c. -le

 d. -ly
- 2. The antonym of the word "safe" is "......".
 - a. protected b. secure c. dangerous d. useful
- 3. The words "bored" and "uninterested" are
 - a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. pronouns
- 4. The place is very busy. This means it is
 - a, free b, crowded c, distant d, far

Q General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 2 look forward to + (noun / inf. + ing) يتطلع إلى / يتمنى أن
 - >- [5] I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.
 - Sara is **looking forward to** her weekend. (SB page 13)

3 quite - quiet

- * quite (adv)
 - At the weekend, Ziad's usually quite lazy. (SB page 14)
- quiet (adj)Please, be quiet during the lesson.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

miczi

Express	ions	Prep	ositions
go on a school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية school trip		ne city يتجول حول المدينة (بالسيا
make sure	يتأكد	sit by	يجلس بجانب
have a rest	يأخذ قسطًا من الراحة	stay at	ہمکث / ہظل ہے
have a big dinner يتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة		make for	يصنع من أجل
give a surprise	يفاجئ	communicate v	يتواصل مع (شخص) with
catch fish	يصطاد سمكّا	tins of	علب من
get everything ready	یجهز کل شیء	look for	بيحث عن

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson 15B page 13

- 1. Amal is a nurse. She is looking after patients(1) at a hospital.
- 2. She is looking after children in the children's ward⁽²⁾.
- is looking forward to having a rest. 3. She is feeling tired tonight, so she
- Emad and Adel are police officers. 5. They are driving around the city.
- people are safe in the streets. 6. They are making sure that
- 8. He is parking his food stall in the 7. Kamal is a street food seller⁽³⁾
- 9. Lots of people and tourists⁽⁴⁾ best place in the city. come this way.
- He is getting everything ready for people to buy their breakfast.

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

- 1. Ziad lives with his parents.
- 2. They live in a small flat in Minya.

parents usually have a big dinner with 3. On Friday evening, Ziad and his grandparents.

5. Tamer wants to give his cousin Sami

a surprise⁽⁸⁾.

having sign language⁽⁷⁾ lessons. 4. On Saturday morning, Tamer is

6. At the weekend, Eman is learning to

7. Mr Osman is Eman's neighbour⁽⁹⁾. 8. Mr Osman is in the hospital now.

do lots of new things.

- 4. On Saturday morning, Ziad often stays in bed.
- 5. Ziad's grandmother is a fantastic COOK(5)!
- 6. In the afternoon, Ziad does his homework.

9. Eman and some other neighbours are

repairing Mr Osman's flat, painting

the kitchen and sewing⁽¹⁰⁾ new

curtains.

Injy & Aya

- Injy and her sister Aya live near the sea.
- 8. Their father and uncle are repairing their old boat(6).
- their father and uncle on their boat. 9. On Saturday, they spend time with

on Lesson 2 SB page 15

2. They are studying traditional Arabic coming to the school to teach them.

1. Manal's uncle is an artist and he is

Manal is starting a calligraphy⁽¹¹⁾

and art club at school.

Manal is making a calligraphy book

calligraphy.

for her uncle as a present.

(١) المرض

(2) संग्रद/जंग्र्स (3) भीड़ वज्ज्र व्यंस्त्रि

Tamer, Eman & Manal

- 1. Tamer is learning a new skill.
- communicate better with his cousin. 2. He is learning sign language to 3. Sami is deaf - he can't hear.
- (4) mil (8) onlcte (6) ty (S) 43, (6) قارب C) THE STREET

تتويه : | الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Learning new skills * Night workers * The job of (a nurse - street food seller - police officer) * Your family's daily routine







on Lesson 1 SB page 13

3 am in Cairo

A: I'm looking after(1) patients at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to⁽²⁾ going home and having a rest⁽³⁾.

Amal

B: We're driving around the city (4) and making sure(5) that people are safe in the streets. We gren't very busy tonight. It's cold so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit bored⁽⁶⁾ and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to having breakfast!





Emad and Adel

C: I'm parking my food stall here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready⁽⁷⁾. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

(1) یعتنی بـ

(2) يتطلع إلى

(3) يستريح

(4) يتجول حول المدينة (بالسيارة)

(5) بتأكد من

(6) يشعر بالملل قليلًا

(7) بجھز کل شیء

استخراج معلومات

Kamal

Answer the following questions:

- Extracting information

Learn 1. Why is Kamal parking his food stall at this place?

- Because it is the best place in the city, lots of people and tourists come this way.

2. What is Kamal looking forward to?

UNIT TWO

Listening

on Lesson 1 WB page 79



Man 1 : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here.

2

Woman 1: There seems to be a problem with '1' the keyboard, but it won't take me

long.

8

Woman 2 : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you?

4

Man 2 : Are you looking for tins of beans?

You can find them on the top shelf 4,

over there.

Answers : 1. police officer

2. computer engineer

call-centre worker

4. shop worker

1 مشكلة بى 😢 يبحث عن 🚯 علب من 🚯 على الرف الأعلى













on Lesson 2 SB page 14



Hi, I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend⁽¹⁾, I'm usually quite lazy. **b** d



Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea.

ac

(1) في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

- **b** On Friday evening, my parents and I usually **have a big dinner with**⁽²⁾ my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.
- d On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed⁽³⁾ and then I have a late breakfast with my grandmother she's a fantastic cook! In the afternoon, I do my homework.
- a My father and my uncle have an old boat which they are repairing. I am learning to sail but Aya doesn't like the water yery much!
- c At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with⁽⁴⁾ our father and uncle on their boat⁽⁵⁾.

(2) يتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة مع ﴿ (3) يبقى في الفراش ﴿ (4) يقضي وقتًّا مع ۗ (5) في القارب

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 15

Tamer: I'm Tamer. At the moment I'm learning a new skill⁽¹⁾. I'm learning sign language⁽²⁾ so I can communicate⁽³⁾ better with my cousin Sami. Sami is deaf⁽⁴⁾ - he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school, too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise⁽⁵⁾!

Eman: I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour⁽⁶⁾,

Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building⁽⁷⁾,

we're repairing⁽⁸⁾ his flat⁽⁹⁾. He lives in a lovely flat, but he can't look after it at the moment.

My sisters and I are painting⁽¹⁰⁾ the kitchen and I am also sewing⁽¹¹⁾ some new curtains.



ا مهارة 2 لغة البشارة 3 يتواصل 4 أصم (لا يسمع) 5) مفاجأة 6 جار (7) مبنى (8) يصلح (9) شقة (10) يدهن (11) يخيط / يحيك

UNIT TWO

Manal: I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting
a calligraphy⁽¹²⁾ and art club⁽¹³⁾ at school. We're
very excited about it. My uncle is an artist⁽¹⁴⁾
and he's coming to the school to teach us.
We're studying traditional⁽¹⁵⁾ Arabic calligraphy
and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a
calligraphy book for my uncle as a present⁽¹⁶⁾.



Exercise on Vocabulary

120 فن الخط - 13, نادي الفنون -14، فنان / رسام - 15، تقليدي - 16، هدية

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► Key vocabulary

I. THE	use sign language	to communicate	With Each other.
a. blind	b. deaf	c. young	d. rich
2. If there is a pro	blem with my comp	outer system, I call	a
a. nurse		b. shop worker	
c. computer e	ngineer	d. police officer	
3. The street-foo	d seller sells his foo	d in the street in o	food
a. stool	b. stall	c. stick	d. stock
to it	r doesn't work so we b. repair		er engineer d. park
5. Sama wants t	o improve her hand	dwriting so she is	learning
a. history	b. geography	c. calligraphy	d. science
SB , WB & Previous E	exams		
6. Some ill peop	le need to stay in a	anin h	ospital for one night
or more.			(Suez - North Suez 2024)
a. word	b. ward	c. stall	d. fountain
7. SB My grand	lmother is a fantast	icHer	food is delicious.
a. teacher	b. doctor	c. cook	d. nurse

	8. WB It is usually	easy to	with people in oth	er countries if you
	can speak Englis	sh.	(Multidisciplinary -	Cairo - New Cairo 2021)
	a. correct	b. communicate	c. sweep	d. clean
	El-Moasser Exercises			
	9. There's a lovely.	in the mi	ddle of our garde	n. Its water sounds
	clear.			
	a. food stall		b. sewing machin	ne
	c. fountain		d. keyboard	
	10. You can learn ca	ılligraphy at the	club.	
	a. art	b. tools	c. sports	d. circus
	11. There are four	in the Eng	glish language : re	ading, writing,
	speaking and lis	tening.		
	a. skills	b. presents	c. clubs	d. awards
	Definitions			
	12. A is a	person who helps	people in a place	which sells things.
			(Fayo	oum - East Fayoum 2024)
	a. cell-centre wo	rker	b. computer eng	ineer
	c. shop worker		d. street food sel	ler
	13. A prep			
	a. computer eng	ineer	b. street - food se	eller
	c. shop worker		d. police officer	
	14. A/An u	usually drives arou	ınd the city to kee	p people safe in
	the streets.			
	a. shop worker	b. police officer	c. teacher	d. engineer
•	Language Notes,	Expressions & Pi	repositions	
	15. If you are tired,	why don't you	a rest ?	
	a. make	b. do	c. have	d. are
	16. Mona	forwards to visitin	g Al-Azhar Park n	ext week.
	a. takes	b. looks	c. gives	d. makes

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about the weekend

ا. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Questions



Answers



- 1. What do you usually do at the weekend?
 - ا. ماذا تفعل عادة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
- How do you feel at the weekend?
 کیف تشعر فی عطلة نهایة الأسبوع؟
- 3. Whose weekend activities would you prefer to do, Ziad's or Injy's? Why?
 ۳. أى من أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع تفضلها،
 أنشطة زياد أم أنشطة إنجى؟ ولماذا؟
- At the weekend, I usually get up early.
 - في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع عادة ما أستيقظ مبكرًا.
- I feel excited and active.
 - أشعر بالحماس والنشاط.
- I'd prefer to do Injy's activities because I don't like to be lazy.
 - أفضل أن أقوم بأنشطة إنجى لأننى لا أحب أن أكون كسولًا.

2. Describing weekend activities

٢. وصف أنشطة عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

- 1. On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner with my grandparents. ... ا. في مساء يوم الجمعة، أنا ووالداي عادة ما نتناول وجبة عشاء دسمة مع أجدادي.
- 2. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things.

٢. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أتعلم أن أقوم بالعديد من الأشياء الجديدة.

3. At the weekend, we sometimes spend time with my uncle at his house.

٣. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، نقضى أحيانًا الوقت مع عمى بمنزله.

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

أشخاص مختلفة في أسرتك "Different people in your family"

- 1. Dad is looking after patients at a hospital. He is busy. He is feeling tired.
- 2. Mum is cooking in the kitchen. She's wearing an apron مربلة
- 3. My brother is a policeman. He is wearing a uniform.
- 4. My sister is helping mum at home.

🔟 Language



1. The Present Continuous Tense التكوين Formation am is + inf. المصدر + ing فاعل مفرد / He / She / It **Affirmative** فاعل جمع / We / You / They Statements ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy. الحمل الخبرية - Sami is learning sign language at school. المثبتية - I'm sitting in my English class now. فاعل مفرد / He / She / It + is + not + (inf. المصدر + ing) Negative are فاعل جمع / We / You / They Statements الجمل الخبرية ex. - She is not learning English at the moment. المنفية - They are not playing tennis now. (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" : (A) Yes/No guestion: Am I قاعیل مفرد / he / she / it 🎍 ?.. ing + المصدر .inf فاعل جمع / Are we/you/they ex. - Is she helping sick people at present? * No, she isn't. * Yes, she is. ex. - Are they growing potatoes now? Interrogative * No, they aren't. * Yes, they are. صغية الاستفصاو (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام: (B) Wh-question: **Ouestion** subject word 🕂? + ing) المصدر .? الفاعل كلمة الاستفهام ex. - Where are you working now?

* I'm working in Cairo.

Usage الاستخدام

بعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex. - They are designing a new library now.

بستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.

ex. - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.

-They are having a party tonight.

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

﴾ عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

write → writing practise → practising see → seeing

﴾ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد) .

swim -> swimming

sit -> sitting

لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed --> feeding

wait --- waiting

َ إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

lie --> lying

die --> dying

Key words كلمات دالة

غالبًا تأتي مع الزمن :

now	الأن	Take care	احذر!!	at the moment	فى تلك اللحظة
Look!	انظر!	still	مازال	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Listen!	انصت!	tonight	في هذه الليلة	Look out!/Watc	احترس!! h out!

ex. - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

2. The present simple tense : رس المصارع البسيط

تم شرحه في الوحدة الأولى

ex. - We usually stay at home when it's cold.

- She sometimes listens to the radio.
- Do you like milk? No, I don't.
- Does she go to school early? Yes, she does.

3. The difference between the present continuous and the الاختلاف سن زمن المصارع المستمر وزمن المصارع البسيط - present simple:

We use the present simple for:

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في:

1. habits

العادات

- I always drink milk for breakfast.

2. routines and repeated actions

الروتين والأحداث المتكررة

- We go to school every day.

3. things that are always true.

الأشياء التي دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة [معلومة صحيحة]

- My gunt lives in Cairo.

4. facts

الحقائق خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة

- The sun rises in the east.

We use the present continuous for:

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر في :

- 1. things happening now الأشياء التي تحدث الآن
- I am sitting in my English class.
- 2. unfinished actions in progress around أحداث غير منتهية ومستمرة حتى الأن now.
 - My sister is learning to swim.

3. temporary situations or actions.

أحداث أو مواقف مؤقتة

-They are painting the school this week.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. They are still the story. a. read b. reading

c. to read

2. When she doing her homework?

d. reads

b. are a. is

c. am

(Cairo - Heliopolis 2024)

(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)

3. I English at the moment.

d. were

b. am studying c. will study a. study

(Beni Suef - Ahnasea 2023)

4. WB How often do you dinner?

d. studied

a. makes

b. make

c. making

d. made

UNIT TWO

5. SB What is Mar	nal fo	r her uncle ?	
a. make	b. makes	c. made	d. making
El-Moasser Exercises			
6. I always go to se	chool on foot, b	out now I t	the bus.
a. takes	b. take	c. taking	d. am taking
7. What game a. did you play c. are playing	at the m	oment ? b. are you playi d. do you play	ing
8. We usually	up early e	every day.	
a. get	b. getting	c. gets	d. are getting
9. Look!They			d was
a. ran	_	c. are running	a. runs
10. Listen! Sama a. is playing	*	no. c. plays	d. play
Complete the se	ntences with	the correct form of	f the word(s) in
SB , WB & Previous Exa	me		
		come) fast (Rel	nerra - Kom Hamada 2024)
2. S Who are	· ·		etra - Rom Handad 2024)
		cause I'm cleaning m	ny room
4. W On Saturday	, I usually	(spending) tim	ne with my cousins.
5. It's (ra	in) now. I advis	se you to take an um	nbrella.
			(Beni Suef - Sumusta 2023)
El-Moasser Exercises			
6. I can't help you	now. I'm	(do) my work.	
7. My mother	(not cook)	at the moment.	
8. They never	(walks) to	school.	
9. Dalia (not study) on F	ridays.	
10. What (you do) now?		

Speaking & Writing विकास (अ

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

• Understand	Apply	O Create
--------------	-------	----------

	<mark>hammed abou</mark> hammed. Wha		
Mohammed: (1)	nammed. Wild	t does gour it	utilei uo :
	### 00 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
Mohammed: He wo	rks in a bia hos	pital in Cairo).
Mohammed: He exa	imines patients	and gives th	nem medicine.
	ie like helping t		
Mohammed: (4)	***************************************	*********	
	ı like to be a do		
Mohammed:(5)			
			ıfr El-Sheikh - Sidi Salim 2
Read the following,	, then answer	the questio	ns:
All of us should res	nect night wor	kore Thoroga	re many hard jobs t
the workers have to s	tay all the nigh		
the workers have to s call center workers ar	tay all the nigh nd policemen.	nt without sle	eping, such as nurs
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without	nt without sle sleeping in h	eping, such as nurse ospitals to look afte
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people	at without sle sleeping in he kindly to ge	eping, such as nurse ospitals to look after t better. Call center
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people stay all the nig	st without sle sleeping in h kindly to ge ht on phones	eping, such as nurse ospitals to look after t better. Call center s. If anyone has a
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people stay all the nig ter worker recei	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor	eping, such as nurse tospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people stay all the nig ter worker rece licemen are ve	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor ry important	eping, such as nurse tospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying tor our life. They sto
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people stay all the nig ter worker receilicemen are ve in streets to m	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phorry important ake sure that	eping, such as nurse tospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying to for our life. They sto t we are safe in our
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing	tay all the nigh nd policemen. night without eat sick people stay all the nig ter worker receilicemen are ve in streets to m	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phorry important ake sure that	eping, such as nurse to spitals to look after to better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying to for our life. They sto t we are safe in our their great effort.
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and r	tay all the night of policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receivicemen are vehicements to might espect to night	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor ry important tworkers for	eping, such as nurse tospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying to for our life. They sto t we are safe in our
the workers have to s call center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to s problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and r	tay all the night of policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receivancemen are veries answer from a	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor ry important tworkers for a, b, c or d:	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after the better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying if for our life. They sto the we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2
the workers have to scall center workers are Nurses stay late at their patients. They treworkers also have to sproblem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and reasons. Choose the correct 1. The call center we	tay all the night and policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receivicemen are very in streets to might answer from a corkers received.	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phorry important ake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: pur problems	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying to for our life. They sto t we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2
the workers have to scall center workers are Nurses stay late at their patients. They treworkers also have to sproblem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and rea. Choose the correct 1. The call center was letters by	tay all the night and policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receivicemen are verificemen are verificemen to nighter answer from a corkers received to hones	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phorry important ake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: our problems c. e-mails	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after to better. Call center s. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying t for our life. They sto t we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2 by d. presents
the workers have to scall center workers ar Nurses stay late at their patients. They tr workers also have to problem, the call cent solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and ra. Choose the correct 1. The call center was letters b. p 2. The underlined p	tay all the night and policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker received in streets to might answer from a orkers received bhones ronoun "They"	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phory important ake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: our problems c. e-mails refers to	eping, such as nurse to spitals to look after the better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying if for our life. They state we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2) by
the workers have to secall center workers are Nurses stay late at their patients. They treworkers also have to seproblem, the call center solve the problem. Por all the night standing beds. All thanks and results. The call center was letters by a letters by a nurses but	tay all the night of policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker received in streets to might answer from a corkers receive cohones ronoun "They" reachers	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor ry important ake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: our problems c. e-mails refers to	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after the better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying if for our life. They state we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2) by
the workers have to secall center workers are Nurses stay late at their patients. They treworkers also have to seproblem, the call center solve the problem. Po all the night standing beds. All thanks and reas. Choose the correct 1. The call center was letters by a letters by a nurses by the call center was letters by a second part of the word of the call center was letters by the call center was letters.	tay all the night of policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receiving streets to make spect to night orkers receive a cohones ronoun "They" reachers dly" means in a	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phor ry important dake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: our problems c. e-mails refers to	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after the better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying if for our life. They state we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2) by
the workers have to secall center workers are Nurses stay late at their patients. They treworkers also have to seproblem, the call centsolve the problem. Por all the night standing beds. All thanks and reasonable center was letters by a letters by a nurses by the call center was letters by the call center was letters.	tay all the night and policemen. In ight without reat sick people stay all the nighter worker receivicemen are very in streets to make answer from a corkers received bhones ronoun "They" reachers dly" means in augly	sleeping in he kindly to ge ht on phones ives the phorry important ake sure that tworkers for a, b, c or d: our problems c. e-mails refers to	eping, such as nurse cospitals to look after the better. Call center is. If anyone has a ne call kindly trying if for our life. They state we are safe in our their great effort. (Giza - El Haram 2) by

6. Do you think that night worker's jobs are hard? Why?

3	Choose the co	orrect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
•		uselangu		inicate with each
	other.	J	(The	New Valley - Al-Kharga 2024)
	a. song	b. signal	c. sign	d. English
•	2. I want to	my phone. It	is broken.	(Assiut - Monfloat 2023)
	a. wave	b. drive	c. meet	d. repair
•	3. He is	, so he can't hear	you.	
	a. blind	b. deaf	c. tired	d. lazy
•	4 . Please,	sure that you	answer your qu	uestions correctly.
٧.	a. take	b. make	c. stay	d. spend
•	5. There is a be	eautiful in	my uncle's gar	den.
ш	a. fountain	b. temple	c. museum	d. calligraphy
•	6. Mum is a far	ntastic! Sh	ne prepares del	icious food for us to
	eat every do	ıy.		
	a. doctor	b. nurse	c. cook	d. farmer . (Qena - Nag Hammadi 2024)
•	7. She's a/an	Her paintin	ig is very lovely.	. (Qena - Nag Hammadi 2024)
4	a. cook	b. singer	c. engineer	d. artist
		Kamal his	food stall at th	is place ?
,	a. park	b. parks	c. parking	d. parked
1.5	9. WB Nabila	feels ill, so she	in bed this	morning.
Ш	a. stay	b. stays	c. is staying	a. to stay
C)			s school today,	but he usually drives
ш	around the	treet.	ام محت عام	al calate
	a. visits	b. is visiting	c. visited	Q. VISIL
4				the word(s) in brackets:
				ent. (Menofia-Menouf 2024)
		t rain) outside now.		(Giza - Agooza 2023)
		eekend, I usually	(getting u	p) early.
		Emad (eat) ?		
5		ail of about NINET		
	To your friend	Ahmed to tell him o	bout night wo	rkers. Your name is
	Hady and you	r email address is he	ady@gmail.cor	n. Your friend's email
	address is ahn	ned@gmail.com.		
	*** ********* ******** *****			1 1007517 7 7 10 5 7 4 5 5 5 5
				The state of the s

3&4



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

The Party of the P			
guest (n)	ضیف/ نزیل	alone (adv)	بمفرده
port (n)	ميناء	striped (adj)	مُخطط / مُقلم
airport (n)	مطار	pattern (n)	نموذج / شکل مرسوم
suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر	hanging (adj)	معلق
wedding (n)	حفل زفاف	teenager (n)	مراهق
suit (ed)(v), (n)	يناسب - يلائم / بدلة	grateful (adj)	ممتن / شاکر
weeding (n) (الزراعية	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة (من الأرض	skin (n)	جلد (بشری أو حیوانی)
	* Adverb	ظروف ع	
excitedly	بحماس/ بانفعال	quietly	بهدوء
happily .	بسعادة	quickly	بسرعة
hungrily	بشراهة	lazily	بكسل
loudly	بصوت عال	easily	بسهولة
slowly	ببطء	carefully	بحرص/بعناية
	Famous place	أماكن مشهورة	
Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر	Umm al-Sultan S	haban Mosque (n)
			مسجد أم السلطان شعبان

Pop Quix

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

wedding - airport - teenagers - grateful

- 1. We are very to you for your help.
- 2. Soha's party was great. We enjoyed a lot.
- 3. People whose ages are from 13 to 19 are called

-Lesson 3	SB pages 16 &17	WB page 81		
treat (ed) (v)		يعامل - يعالج	crowds (n)	زحام من الناس - حشد
sharp (adj)		حاد	rocks (n)	صخور

invite (d) (v)	يدعو	shopping bags (n)	أكياس التسوق
husband (n)	نوج	sweet (adj) داق	لطيف/جميل/حلو (الم
playground (n)	ملعب/فناء	foreground (n)	مقدمة
football team (n)	فريق كرة القدم	background (n)	خلفية

Lesson 4 SB page 18 WB page 82

happiness (n)	سعادة	magazine (n)	مجلة
worried (adj)	فلق	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
pleased (adj)	مسرور	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Prese	المضارع nt	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
speak	يتحدث/يتكلم	spoke	spoken
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
sing	يفنى	sang	sung

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

teenager	a boy or girl aged 13 – 19	مراهق
normal	usual, not different	طبيعي
alone	not with other people	بمفرده
grateful	 feeling and showing that you want to thank som because of what they have done or given you feeling happy about the good things in your life 	
in the background	the part that seems furthest to you in a picture or photograph	في الخلفية
in the foreground	the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph	فى المقدمة
sharp	having a thin edge or point that can cut somethin make a hole in something	g or حاد
striped	with long narrow lines of colour that are a different from the areas next to them	nt colour مخطط / مقلم
towards	in the direction of, or closer to somebody / someth	نجاه ning
wedding	a ceremony احتفال in which people get married	حفل زفاف
careless	not paying enough attention to what you are doi	مهمل ng

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms ترادفات ومتضادات				
Wor	الكلمة b	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
dark	غامق اللون	_	light فاتح اللون	
wrong	خاطىء/مخطئ	incorrect	محیح/علیحق right - correct	
remember	يتذكر	recall	ينسى forget	
normal	طبيعي	usual	غیر طبیعی abnormal	
get on للات	يركب وسيلة مواص	-	ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات get off	
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly غير ودود	

Prefixes & Suffixes		وناهية	مقاطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة ي
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	unfriendly	غير ودود
ab-	تعطى عكس المعنى	abnormal	غیر طبیعی
-ful	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة	careful	حريص
-ly	تكوِّن الصفة من الاسم	friendly	ودود
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	happiness	سعادة



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Everyone her word "friendl		endly towards us.	The synonym of the
a. kind	b. ugly	c. lazy	d. sad
2. To get the no	un from the adjecti	ve happy, we add	1"
aful	bable	city	dness
3. When someth	ning is incorrect, this	s means it is	
a. sad	b. happy	c. correct	d. wrong
4. "Remember"	and "forget" are	22022110	
a. the same	b. synonyms	c. opposites	d. nouns
5. To give the or	oposite of the adjec	tive "normal", we	add the prefix
" "in the	beginning.		
a. ab-	b. un-	c. dis-	d. re-



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 alone / lonely

* alone (adv)

He lives alone.

وحيدًا - بمفرده

- * lonely (adj)
- ▶ He has no friends. He feels lonely.

وحيدًا - حزينًا (SB page 18)

2 (older / elder) (oldest - eldest)

- اكبر **سنًا أو أقدم من** تستخدم لوصف الأشخاص والأشياء * older
 - Basem is older than Mohammed.
 - My car is older than Ayman's car.
- اكبر سنًا تستخدم لوصف الناس فقط (وخصوصًا داخل العائلة)
- My elder brother is an engineer.
- + elders (n) عبار السن
 - للحظ: يمكن استخدام elder كاسم بينما لا يمكن استخدام older (كاسم) وتستخدم كصفة. • Be polite and respect احترم your elders.
- اللَّكبِر سنًا / اللَّقِدَم تستخدم لوصف الأشياء والأشحاص على حد سواء. * oldest
 - The Pyramids are the oldest structures in Egypt.
 - Soha is the oldest girl in the school.
- الأكبر سنًا تستحدم لوصف الأشخاص فقط (حصوصًا : محيط الأسرة) * eldest
- My eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of the tree. (SB page 17)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expres	sions	Prepos	sitions
get married	يتزوج	smile at	يبتسم لـ
get texts from	يتسلم رسائل نصية من	get on a plane	يصعد إلى متن الطائرة
do exciting things	يقوم بأشياء رائعة	in the background	في الخلفية
down the hill	أسفل التل	in the foreground	فی مقدمة of
make new friends	بكون صداقات جديدة	in the middle of	في وسط
مية للهاتف take a selfie	بلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأما	towards the right	تجاه اليمين
as usual	كالمعتاد	on the left	على جهة اليسار
do something kind	يفعل شيئًا جيدًا / طيبًا	laugh at	يسخر من
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	be grateful for	يكون شاكر أو ممنن لـ
feel pleased	يشعر بالسرور	for the first time	للمرة الأولى



Lesson (3) SB page 16

Picture 1

- This is a photo of my sister's wedding⁽¹⁾.
- 2. The guests⁽²⁾ are slowly leaving.
- My sister and her husband are smiling happily at the camera. 3. Most of the family are still there enjoying the party.

Picture 2

- 1. That is my class on the school trip(3) to the mountains.
- We are sitting carefully on the rocks.
- 3. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily eating my lunch.

1. I am at the airport⁽⁴⁾ and waiting excitedly to get on the plane.

Picture 3

My sister is taking a photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches.

Picture 4

- 1. This is my aunt's new baby.
- She is laughing loudly because she can see the cat.
- She always laughs when she sees the cat.

Lesson (3) SB page 17

- 1. This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. 2. My mother and sisters are sitting under a tree in the
- 3. In the **background**⁽⁶⁾, there is a mosque. foreground(5) of the photo.
- 4. My sister Talia is in the middle of the picture.
- 5. She is taking a selfie as usual.

* Describe a photo of (a trip - a wedding)

Lesson (3) SB page 18

- 1. Happiness⁽⁷⁾ for teenagers⁽⁸⁾ is very important.
- It is normal to get worried or feel sad sometimes.
- There are five things that can help teenagers feel happy. 4. Teenagers should get lots of rest.
- Young people should sleep eight to ten hours a night.
- They should make friends because this makes them happy. 7. Teenagers should go outside because people need nature
- 8. Teenagers should do something kind for someone else. to be happy.
 - Teenagers should be arateful⁽⁹⁾ and they should remember good things in life.

Lesson (4) WB page 82

Osama is writing about his problem to Help! Magazine.

- . Osama is a normal teenager but he often feels worried about things.
- 2. He stays at home and does homework and gets texts(10) from his friends.
- 3. They are all doing exciting things.
- 4. He does well at school and he enjoys his weekends with his family.

(4) oct	(C) (C)	(Z) cittor	(1) حقاق رفاق
_	(7) Ilunako	(6) في خلفية (الصورة)	(5) في مقدمة (الصورة) ﴿(6) في خلفية (الصورة)

الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى

Happiness for teenagers

* Teenagers' problems





Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

Girl 1: This is a photo of my sister's wedding. It's at the end of the day and the guests are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though, and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssef, her husband.

Boy 1: That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp! We got up at 5 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily.

Boy 2: This is me at the airport . I'm waiting excitedly 14 to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.

Girl 2: This is my aunt's new baby . Isn't she sweet . ? She is laughing loudly . In this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat-she thinks it's very funny.

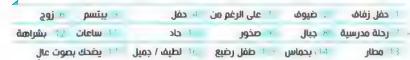










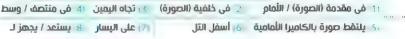


on Lesson 3 SB page 17

Girl: This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground of ' the photo. In the background', you can see the Umm al-Sultan Shaban Mosque. The tree is towards the right' of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her – we can't



see her face. My middle sister Talia is in the middle of ⁴ the picture. She's taking a selfie⁵ as usual! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill ⁶ and on the left ⁷. I think she is getting ready to ⁸ take a photo, too.





on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Happiness for teenagers

It's normal to **get worried**⁽¹⁾ or to feel sad sometimes – but what helps teenagers to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

1. C Get lots of rest

Teenagers often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

2. e Be friendly

It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with⁽²⁾ your family and also try to make new friends⁽³⁾ because this makes teenagers happy.

3. a Go outside

People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

4. b Help someone

When you do something kind for (4) someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. Try it! You feel really good.



(1) يقلق (2) يقضى وقت مع (3) يكون صداقات جديدة (4) يفعل شيئًا جيدًا/طيئال

5. d Be grateful

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased about (5) them.

(5) يشعر بالسرور بشأن

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: تذمين عمني مفردة لغوية في النص Learn 1. The word " in the third paragraph means not with other people.
a. sad b. normal c. alone d. worried

Practise 2. The word "pleased" means a. grateful b. bored

c. happy d. unpleasant

on Lesson 4 WB page 82

Dear Help! Magazine

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried about (1) things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I get texts from (2) my friends and they say they are all doing exciting things! What am I doing wrong (3)? I do well (4) at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please, can you help me?

Yours, Osama

Dear Osama

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think



that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember: you are wrong! Your friends probably feel worried, just like you. When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably think YOU are having a better time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax at different times (5). Be grateful for (6) the good things in your life and continue to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine

(1) يشعر بالقَلَقَ بشأنَ (2) يتسلم رسائل نصية من (3) يخطئ (4) يؤدى جيدًا (5) في أوقات مختلفة (6) يكون شاعر أو ممتن لـ ...

Exercise on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. It's important to remove the from the soil to get a good crop.a. climbing b. weeding c. wedding d. running

UNITTWO

2. That's my sister. S	he is smiling	at the cam	era.
a. happily	b. carefully	c. loudly	d. hungrily
3. The ship reached	the safe	ely this morning.	
a. girport	b. ground	c. port	d. playground
4. He invited over 1	00 for the	e wedding party	J.
a. descriptions	b. suitcases	c. guests	d. hills
5. We can catch a p			
a. port	b. road	c. airport	d. way
B , WB & Previous Exar	ns		
6. To be scared of d	angerous animals		
			(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)
a. funny	b. normal	c. lazy	d. happy
7. SB The teacher.	all his ch	ildren kindly.	(Sharkıa - Belbis 2022)
a. invites	b. treats	c. stands	d. gets
8. WB The skin of a	zebra is		(Menofia - Tala 2023)
a. curly	b. worried	c. sharp	d. striped
9. 53 I'm sitting ur	der a tree and	eating m	y lunch.
a. loudly	b. hungrily	c. carefully	d. luckily
El-Moasser Exercises			
10. A knife has a	edge.		
10. A knife hαs α a. wet	b. dry	c. sharp	d. soft
11. You can put you	on the	plane when you	travel.
a. suits	b. pencil cases	c. suitcases	d. shopping lists
12. I'd like to			
	b. take		
Definitions			
13. A/Ani	a boy or girl aged	d 13-19.	
	b. baby		d. teenager
14 means	not paying enoug	h attention to w	hat you are doing.
a. Careful	b. Crying	c. Careless	d. Waving
Language Notes, I			
15. After his parents	death, Ali lived		
a. lonely	b. only	c. alone	d. solo
16. My uncle	married at the	age of 25.	
a. made	b. got	c. gave	d. had



مهارة التحدث

1. Describing a photo

ا. وصف صورة / وصف ما يحدث في صورة

- 1. This is a photo of me and my family in Al Azhar Park. هذه صورة لي ولعائلتي بحديقة الأزهر.
- 2. In the foreground, we can see my sister and my mother.

في المقدمة، يمكننا أن نرى أختى ووالدتي.

3. In the background, we can see my father sitting on the grass.

في الخلفية، يمكننا أن نرى والدى يجلس على العشب.

- 4. The tree is towards the right of the photo. يوجد شجرة تجاه يمين الصورة.
- يجلس أخي الأكبر عمر أمام الشجرة. . S. My eldest brother Omar is sitting in front of the tree
- 6. Our aunt is behind my brother Omar. We can't see her face.

عمتي تقف خلف أخي عمر ولا بمكننا رؤية وجهها.

7. My middle sister Samar is in the middle of the picture.

أختى الوسطى سمر في منتصف الصورة.

▶2. Explaining feelings and how to deal with them ايضاح المشاعر وكيفية التعامل معها

Questions



Answers



- 1. How do you feel when you go ١. كيف تشعر عندما تذهب بالخارج ؟ ? outside
- 2. How do you feel when you help someone?
 - ٢. كيف تشعر عندما تساعد شخصًا ما ؟
- 3. How do you feel when you get lots of rest?
 - ٣. كيف تشعر عندما تأخذ قسطًا من الراحة؟



- I feel pleased. - أشعر بالسرور.
- I feel happy. - أشعر بالسعادة.
- I feel relaxed. - أشعر بالاسترخاء.

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

وصف صورة / وصف ما يحدث في صورة | Describing a photo

- 1. This is a photo of هذه صورة لـ
- 2. It shows إنها توضح / تعرض
- في مقدمة [الصورة] / في الأمام يمكنك أن ترى ____ في مقدمة [الصورة] / غي الأمام يمكنك أن ترى ____
- 5. ... is towards the right of the photo.تجاه يمين الصورة.
- 6. is in the middle of the photo.في منتصف الصورة.

III Language

Adverbs of manner

ظروف الحال [الكيشة]

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة.

adjective قفصا

Our team are bad.

الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد (Verb (to be)

They are quiet people.

adverb

Our team are playing badly.

الظرف

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

المنتظم Regular							
Adjec	tive	Ac	lverb	Adjec	tive	A	tverb
bad	سىء	badly	بطريقة سيئة	slow	بطىء	slowly	ببطء
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء	happy	_	happily	بسعادة /
loud		loudly	بصوت عال	sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن
quick	- سريع	quickly	بسرعة	kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف/بطيبة

			Irregular	بير المنتظم	Ė		
Adjec	tive		Adverb	Adject	ive	Ad	dverb
good	جيد	well	جيڈا	wrong	خطأ	wrong	بطريقة خاطئة
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة	late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة	early	مبكر	early	مبكرا
right	صحيح	right	بطريقة صحيحة				

Formation التكوين

excited → excitedly

safe → safely

يتكون ظرف (الحال) الكيفية غالباً بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

أ. بصفة عامة يتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة (ly) إلى الصفة

- quick → quickly
- strong -> strongly
- ب. وتُضاف (ly) حتى وان كانت الصفة منتهية بحرف (l)
- careful → carefully
 beautiful → beautifully

```
ج. الصفة المنتهية بـ (le) يتم حذف حرف (e) وإضافة (y)

    probable - probably

    possible → possibly

                                د. الصفة المنتهية بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (ily)
easy — easily

 happy → happily

    lazy → lazily

 hungry 
  hungrily

                                هـ هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها (ly) وتحفظ كما هي:
                                                          · high - high
. good → well
                                     • fast — fast
• hard \rightarrow hard
                                     • late → late • early → early
 Usage الاستخدام
We use adverbs of manner to describe how we do the action of a verb.
             ◄ تستخدم ظروف الكيفية لوصف حدث / فعل [الطريقة التي يؤدي بها شخص ما شئ ما].
                                            - He works slowlu.
 ex. - Rodina sinas well.

    لاحظ أن ظروف الكيفية تجيب عن السؤال الذي يبدأ بـ (How):

                                           B: She eats hungrily.
 ex. - A: How does Aya eat?
                                           يأتى ظرف الكيفية بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:
 ex. - My friend sews badly.
     - The teacher called our names loudly.
```

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. A: How do you walk to school? B: I walk (Monofia - Tala 2024) c. quickly b. more quick d. most quick a. guick 2. SB Mr Kamal speaks English very (Gharbia - East Mahalla 2024) c. bad d. clear a. well b. good 3. WB The children are singing in the playground. a. loudly b. loud c. more loud d. most loud

UNITTWO

4. 56 The cat is s	sitting in the sun	*****	(Cairo - Helwan 2023)
a. lazy	b. lazily	c. laziest	d. lazier
5. Our football te	eam won the match	n, so they are smili	ng
a. happy	b. happiness	c. happily	d. more happy
El-Moasser Exercises	i		
6. I didn't eat for	a long time, so I at	te the sandwich	P
a. hungry	b. hungrily	c. more hungry	d. hungriest
7. There were so	me quest	ions in the exam.	
a. hardly	b. hard	c. badly	d. easily
8. It was raining	yesterda	y.	
a. heavy	b. the heavier	c. heaviest	d. heavily
9. My cousin is ve	ery at pla	ying tennis.	
a. best	b. better	c. good	d. well
10. The plane flew	/ in the sk	ty.	
a. highly	b. easy	c. high	d. quick
Complete the s brackets:	entences with the	e correct form of	the word(s) in
SB , WB & Previous E	xams		
1. SB The teache	er treats all her chil	dren (kin	d).
2. WB Ahmed we	ent to the new scho	ol(sad).	
3. It was raining,	but I arrived home	e (safe).	(Fayoum - Itsa 2024)
4. Always speak	(quiet) to	your parents.	(Isamailia 2023)
5. SB My friend:	sews (bad	I).	
El-Moasser Exercises			
	asketball	(good).	
, _	(quick) .	(9000).	
,	he party, the guest	r loft (clo	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
			₩, .
	e questions(loud		
10. Allinea is read	ing tiodd	,	

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

् ।ख	Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Speaking Speaking اختبر مدی اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
₩ ≥	Read and complete: 1. What is her called?	Complete the following dialogue: Farid tells Mohamed about his sister's wedding. Mohamed: Why didn't you come to school	Write a paragraph on : "A wedding party"
1 5 1	2. Were there a lot of -Yes, there were.		
S :	جمل زفاف حمل زفاف - It was in the new hotel.	Mohamed Farid Mohamed Farid	
> 1 > 0	1. Where did you take this عبورة بالكاميرا الأمامية ? - I took it in Al Azhar Park. 2. Who is in the of the photo?	Mona tells Maha about Al Azhar Park. Mona: I like your selfie on Facebook. Maha: (1) Mona: (2). Maha: I took it in Al Azhar Park. Mona: Who is in the background?	"A visit to Al Azhar Park"
1 7 > 1	eel when	Maha: (3) Mona: I know your cousin. (4) you Maha: I felt pleased and excited there. Mona: When do you suggest going there? Maha: (5) It is better in the morning.	

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

			• Understand	Apply	@ Creat
1	Listen and choo	ose the correct	answer from a , b	, c or d :	
•			ة الصحيحة (نصوص اللستماع ة		استمع إلى مع
	1. Adel is a / an	teenag	er.		
	a. strange	b. normal	c. crazy	d. abnor	mal
	2. Adel often feel	s abo	ut things.		
	a. worried	b. sad	c. happy	d. angry	
	3. Adel gets	from his fri	ends.		
	a. texts	b. subjects	c. hobbies	d. sports	
	4. Adel's friends s	ay that they all	do things		
	a. big	b. happy	c. exciting	d. good	
2	Complete the fo	ollowing dialo	que:		
-	•	_	nation about her fa	milv.	
	_		u some questions?	,.	
	Jana : (2)				
	Huda: They lived		***************************************		
	Jana : What did		er do ?		
	Huda:(3)				
				?	
	Huda : Yes, he gr				
	Jana : What abo				
		-	vas a housewife. (Gh	arbia - West Mo	ihallah 2023)
3	Choose the corr				
•	1. This is a photo	of my parent's .		ery happy	
	a. weeding	b. wedding	c. married	d. crowd	S
				(Sharki <mark>a</mark> -	Belbis 2024)
			t on a plane for the		
	a. badly	b. loudly	c. excitedly	d. lazily	
•	3. We You can	a plane f	rom an airport.		

a. hit

b. miss

c. catch

d. drive

•	4. Most students	play happily in the so	thool (Ca	iiro · East Nasr City 2022)
П	a. museum	b. playground	c. library	d. port
•	5. Be careful! The	e knife is very	DESCRIPT ▼	
	a. grateful	b. sharp	c. dry	d. wet
•	6. In the	of the photo, we d	an see a man sitt	
П	a. ground	b. underground	c. top	d. middle
•	7. I'd like to	you to my wed		
ı	a. cotch	b. wait	c. invite	d. treat
١,		mework, s		
	a. careless	b. carelessness	c. more careless	d. carelessly
0	9. Salma is a			
	a. well	b. good	3	d. slowly
*1		rp rocks here, so you		
	a. careful	b. carefully	c. carelessness	d. carelessly
4	Complete the se	entences with the co	rect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
Ö	1. Don't go to so	thool(late:	st).	(Suez - North Suez 2024)
	_	speaks very		
	3. WB The child	ren are singing	(loud) in the	playground.
				/ Giza - South Giza 2023)
	4. The friends a	re smiling (ha <mark>ppy).</mark>	
	Write a paragr	aph of about NINET	V (90) words on	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
9	Write a paragra	"Making nev		
1		making net		
1	** ******** * **** * ** **			,
Н	***************************************	,		
Н				4
П	see stary even d. P. P.			
	*******	. , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
	** ** * *****			
•	4,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
	.,, .,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
116				

5&6

vib pages by 6 by





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Congratulations!	تهانينا! / ألف مبروك	pity (n)	شىء مؤسف أو محزن - شفقة
conversation (n)	محادثة	empathy (n)	تعاطف
respond (ed) (v)	يجيب/يرد	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
news (n)	أخبار	excited (adj)	متحمس/منفعل



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

news - empathy - conversation - respond - interview

- 1. I have a/an for a new job today
- 2. We offered him a drink but he didn't
- 3. You should show to poor people.
- 4. Well done, Tarek! That's great!

-Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

check (ed) (v)	يتحفق	coach (n)	مدرب
pass (ed) (v)	بجتاز/ يمر	worry (ied) (v)	يفلق
sorry (adj)	أسف/حزين	soon (adv)	فريبًا / في القريب العاجل
bank (n)	بنك - ضفة (بهر)	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

miss (ed) (v)	بفنقد [شيء / شخص]	suitable (adj)	ملائم / مناسب
introduce (d) (v)	بقدم / يعرف	dear (adj)	عزيز / غال
system (n)	نظام	prepare (d) (v)	يعد/يجهز
recently (adv)	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	term (n)	فصل دراسي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Preser	المضارع nt	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

empathy	the ability to understand how someone feels	تعاطف
That's /	something you say to show you feel sad about some	thing
It's a pity	يؤسف / المحزن	إنه من الم

Vocabulary Study

Synonym	s and Antonym	ns	ات	مترادفات ومتضاد
Wo	rd الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Anto	المضاد nym
cloudy	مليثة (بالسحب)	dark - gloomy	clear	صافی - نفی
useful	مفيد	good - helpful	useless	غيرمفيد
married	متزوج	_	single	أعزب/غيرمتزوج
funny	مضحك	comic - amusing	serious	جاد

Prefixes & Suffixes		ئة وناهية	مقاطع باد
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
un-	تعطى العكس	unsuitable unmarried	غیر مناسب غیر منزوج
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	greeting	نحية
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	congratulation	تهنئة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1.	I remember him "serious" is "	as a very serious b	ooy. The antonym	of the word
		b. married	c. funny	d. clever
2.	The sky is unclea	r. This means it is .	nenduceneese #	
	a. bright	b. clear	c. cloudy	d. useful
3.	To turn the verb	'congratulate" inte	o a noun, we add	
	aor	ber	cion	dable
4.	_	this means she is b. married		d. helpful



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 miss / mess

* miss (v) يفتقد (شخص)

I miss my uncle. He's been in Paris for long.

* miss (v) بغشل / يخطئ (الهدف)

He tried to score a goal, but he missed it.

 miss (v) يفوته (وسيئة مواصلات)

He came late because he missed the bus.

فوضي / ورطة - مأزق

When I came home, I found the kitchen in a mess.

- He always gets me into a mess.

(SB page 20)

2 so / such

* 50 + āi.a جِدًا ... (وبعدها صفة)

The party was so exciting.

(اسم مفرد بعد + صفة)+such +a/an * حدًا ... وتعدها (صفة واسو) It was such an exciting party. (WB page 84)

3 pass / succeed in

* pass يجتاز اختبار (لا تأخذ حرف جر)

▶ SB I've passed my maths exam.

* succeed in (noun / inf. + ing) (ينجح في ...) I've succeeded in my maths exam. (SB page 19)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions

get better do an interview يتحسن يجرى مقابلة شخصية Great to see you! That must be difficult سعيد لرؤيتك! لابد وأنه صعب

It's a pity. إنه من المؤسف. do hours of homework!

كيف تسير الأمور في ...؟ ? ... How's it going at ... ? يقوم بأداء ساعات من الواجبات المنزلية! show empathy ? How are things يبين التعاطف كيف هي الأحوال؟

have an interview ? Guess what الديه مقابلة شخصية خمن ماذا؟

Prepositions

congratulations ... on + n/ (inf.+ing) happy for سعيد من أجل

تهانینا علی ... prepare ... for respond to يجهز ... لـ يرد على

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson [6] 5B page 20

- Injy is sending an email to her friend Salma.
- 2. Injy misses⁽¹⁾ Salma.
- 3. Injy tells Salma that there is some bad news⁽²⁾.
- 4. Their science teacher Mrs Tahany is leaving school and they feel sad.
- 5. There is also some good news.
- 6. Injy's parents say that she can go on the school trip⁽³⁾ to Amman.
- 7. Injy is very excited because she will visit many amazing places.

Lesson (6) WB page 84

- 1. Tamer is sending an email to Tarek.
- 2. Tamer is congratulating⁽⁴⁾ Tarek on passing⁽⁵⁾ his maths test.
- 3. Tamer says that they are moving to⁽⁶⁾ a new house and he is excited.
- Tamer's bedroom in the new house is very big.

5. The bad news is that Tamer shares the room with his brother for a week.

6. Tamer is looking forward to⁽⁷⁾ meeting Tarek in the summer.

Lesson [7] WB page 85

- 1. This is a photo of the market(8).
- 2. There is a man selling⁽⁹⁾ fruit and other things.
- 3. In the middle⁽¹⁰⁾, there is a man on a bicycle⁽¹¹⁾.
 - 4. He is carrying something.
- 5. On the right, there are two women.
 - They want to buy something.
- In the background⁽¹²⁾, we can see some other people.

(1) ग्वांकृत	(S) LETA	Sun (9)
(2) لذبار سيلة	(6) ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	(10) في المنتحف
(3) رحلة محرسية	⊕ بتطاع اب	(11) دراجه
(4) يهنئ		(12) في الخلفية

للُّولِهِ : } الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخري: Congratulating your friend



* Telling your penfriend your news



Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 19





() Ali

: Hi Yasser! Are you coming to football practice⁽¹⁾ on Thursday?

Yasser: Oh Hello Ali. No, I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to

look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

to visit him.

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better soon. It's a pity that you can't come. Maybe see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser: Thanks Ali.

0

Yasser: Hey Ali, Guess what !! I'm in the football team! The coach told me after football practice last night.

Ali : Well done , Yasser! That's great news .

8

Hana: Hello Salma. How are you? Great to see you!
How's it going at⁽⁸⁾ your new school? Are you

enjoying it?

Salma: Hello Hana. Great to see you, too! The new school is really hard! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of

homework(9) every night.

Hana: That must be difficult. But don't worry: I'm sure things will get better. You were always the best

student in our class!







(1) <mark>ئدرىپ كرة قدم</mark> ,_, يئدسن

(3) إنه من المؤسف

خون ماذا ا

أحسنت صنعًا.

🗼 هذه أخبار راثعة.

(7) سعيد لرؤيتك !

كيف تسير الأمور في ... ؟
 بأداء ساعات من

9 <mark>يقوم بأداء ساعات من</mark> الواجبات المنزلية

10) كيف مي اللحوال ؟

Hana: Hi Huda, how are things⁽¹⁰⁾?

اجتزت امتحان اللغة الإنحليزية إ

Huda: Hello Hana! Fine thanks, I passed my English

تمانينا ا

exam(11)!

13) سعيد من أجل

Hana: Congratulations! I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows

that's a really difficult exam.



on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Hi Salma!

How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss(1) uou. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving!

She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad. I have some good news, too. Guess what? My parents say I can go on the school trip⁽³⁾ to Amman⁽⁴⁾. I am very excited! There are many amazing⁽⁵⁾ places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait. So what's your news? Write soon!

(1) ىقتقد شخص

(2) مدرس علوم

(3) رحلة مدرسية

(4) مدينة عمان

(5) راثع / مذهل

Inju

- Understanding reference

فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Answer the following auestions:

Learn

1. What does the pronoun "you" in the second line refer to? It refers to Salma.

2. What does the word "there" in the seventh line refer to?

Listening

on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Hi Tarek.

How's it going? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?

The news from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I've got some bad news, too. I'm sharing the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready.





ينتقل إلى بتشارك في الحجرة مع

UNIT TWO

I'm looking forward to 4 meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you. Write soon!

ا يتطلع إلى أ يذهب للسباحة

Tamer



on Lesson 6 WB page 84

My name is Dina. I am Egyptian but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandparents. Who do you live with? Write soon.

From Dina

on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Hi Jana!

How are you? I hope you are well. Guess what! I've passed my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard to pass it next time. It's raining today, so I'm happily sitting in my bedroom. I'm playing a game with my sister. What's your news? Write soon!

Huda

on Lesson 7 WB page 85

This is a photo of a market. In the foreground towards the left, we can see a man. I think it is his shop and he is selling fruit and other things. In the middle of the picture we can see a man on a bicycle. He is carrying something. On the right, we can see two women. I think they want to buy something. In the background, we can see some other people.





Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary			
	to your tea		
a. respond	b. worry	c. miss	d. refuse
2. When someone	e passes their exa	m, we say "	' to him.
a. Sorry!		b. How terribl	
		for the new job.	
a. view	b. interview	c. review	d. revision
		t come. It was a fant	
a. pity	b. empathy	c. expression	d. respond
SB , WB & Previous Ex	cams		
5. Yesterday, I go	t up late, so I	the school bus.	
		(Shark	ia - East Zagazig 2024)
		c. caught	
6. WB I'm	. the room with	my brother.	(Sharkia - Hehia 2023)
a. keeping	b. sharing	c. singing	d. jumping
7. 🛐 Well done,	Yasser!That's gree	at! (Bei	ni Suef - Somosta 2022)
a. science	b. phrase	c. empathy	d. news
El-Moasser Exercises			
8. I've some good	news, too	what ?	
a. Introduce	b. Sorry	c. Miss	d. Guess
9. After the footb	all match, the	told the goalke	eper to train well.
		c. coach	
10. I was very	to know my	exam results.	
a. quick	b. excited	c. slow	d. ugly
Definitions			
		ns something you say	y to show you feel
sad about som			
a. Thank you	b. It's a pity	c. Congratulation	s d. Well done

UNIT TWO

12. The ability to unders	tand how sor	neone feels is calle	d
a. respond b. s	ystem	c. empathy	d. wedding
▶ Language Notes, Expr	essions & Pr	repositions	
13. I've my Eng	glish exam. I'r	n really happy.	
a. succeeded b. fe	ailed	c. passed	d. worked
14. He an inter	view online f	or a new job from l	nis house.
a. had b. n	nade	c. played	d. shopped
15. My uncle had an acc	ident last mo	nth, but now he is	better.
a. making b. g	jiving	c. doing	d. getting
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Responding to news.			الاستجابة للأخبار .
Good news ö.	أخبار جيد	Bad news	أخبار سيئة
- Congratulations!	- تلك أخبا - تهانبنا ! -	That must be diffic	- أنا حزين لسماعي ة cult. - من المؤكد/لابد أنه
Pop Quiz on S	Speaking		
Complete the following			
Adel talks to Samy abo	out great nev	VS.	
Adel: How are you?	2		
Samy: I'm fine. (1)		A46	
Adel: Fine. Thanks. I h	_	W.2.	
Adel: I bought a new			
Samy: Who bought it f	_	y	
Adel:(3)	_		
Samy: That's great nev		h is it?	
Adel: (4)	. Do you t		?



مهارة الكتابة

Important tips for punctuation

نصائح هامة لعلامات الترقيم

1. A sentence ends with a full stop (.).

الجملة تنتهى بنقطة.

- 2. A question ends with a question mark (?).
- السؤال ينتهي تعلامة استفهام.
- 3. A sentence begins with a capital letter.

- تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير.
- 4. We use commas (,) between clauses of a sentence.
 - نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية [٫] بين عبارات الحملة.
- 5. We also use commas(,) in lists.
- نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية (٫) أيضًا في القوائم.

عبارات مفيدة لتستخدمها في كتابة بريد إلكتروني Useful phrases to use in an email

- بمكن أن تبدأ رسالتك بإحدى هذه العبارات متبوعة باسم المرسل إليه.
- Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه
- تستخدم العبارات الأتية للسؤال عن الصحة.
- How are you ? / How are things ? / How's it going ? / How's life ?
 - تستخدم العبارات الآتية عند تقديم الأخبار.
- The news from me / us is that / Guess what ? ...
 - تستخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المشاعر.
- I / We miss you. / I / We hope that you are ... / I'm so excited / sad because تستخدم هذه العبارات عند الحديث عن المستقبل.
- I'm looking forward to ... / I can't wait to...
- Write soon / See you soon.
- تستخدم هذه العبارات عندما ننهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني.

Model email

نموذج لرسالة بريد إلكتروني

From: injy@gmail.com
To: salma@gmail.com

About: Bad news and good news

Hi Salma.

How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss you. I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving! She is such a good science teacher and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what?

My parents say I can go on the school trip to Amman. I am very excited! There are many amazing places to visit there. I hope you come with me. It will be nice to get around together. The trip is in March and I can't wait. So, what's your news? Write soon!

Yours,

Inju

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

1	Complete the f	ollowing dialog	ue:	
•		aa about her exa		
ı		afaa. How are thir		
١				
		I've po		
		(4)		
	Wafaa : Me!I po	issed but with lov	v marks.	
		to hear that.		
n		## \$77455555555555555555555555555555555555		
V.	Basem : You shou			
	Wafaa : Thanks f	-	3	
2				
4	Choose the corr			
•	1. WB I'm looking	to m	eeting you in the	summer.
	a. forward	b. backward	c. foreground	d. background
•	2. Well done, Ali. 1	hat's great		(Assuit - Manfalout 2024)
•	a. empotny	b. news	c. pity	d. pollution
Ĭ	feel.	ea/an		ne how other people
ı		b. greeting	c empathu	Gharbia - West Tanta 2024) d. interview
•	4. Our manager			
	a. got	b. did	c took	d. had
•	5. I'm sorry about			
	soon.	godi decident. 11	iope god will	Detter
	a. play	b. have	c. get	d. pass
•	6. It is important t an accident.			
	a. prepare	b. show	c. do	d. make
•	7. I arrived at the	bus stop late so I	the b	ous,
	a. caught		c. handed	d. reached

	the n	niddle of the pic b. On	c. At	d. From	e.
,	In				
		_	places to visit t	here. The trip is in	
N	March and I can	ı't wait.			
4,41		b. amaze	c. amazed	7	
10.N	1r Nader is	a good s	cience teache	r. I really love him.	
a.	but	b. so	c. such	d. quite	
	nplete the sen c <mark>kets :</mark>	itences with th	e correct forn	n of the word(s) in	
1.8	The friends a	re smiling	(happy).	(Cairo - East Nasr City 20.	24)
	The pilot usu hone.	ally flies planes.	Now he	(speaks) on th	e
3. No	ever speak	(loud).		(Damietta - Zarka 20	22)
4. Sh	and the language of the	rward to	(nass) her	exams.	
	ne is looking to	waid to	(puss) ner		
10000			·		
	te an email of	about NINETY	(90) words on	اب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	
To yo	te an email of our friend Ali co	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب عنه في نهاية الكتاب ss. Your name is Sam	nir
To yo and	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب عنه في نهاية الكتاب	nir
To yo and	te an email of our friend Ali co	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب عنه این نیایدالاکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir ess
To yo and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add @gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To ye and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب عنه این نیایدالاکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add @gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir
To you and is ali	te an email of our friend Ali co your email add i@gmail.com.	about NINETY	(90) words on m on his succe	اب منه فی نیایدالکتاب ss. Your name is Sam friend's email addre	nir

(Cairo - Heliopolis 2022)



Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (giving the main idea) أو [giving a suitable title] وهنا تحتاج لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية التي

يدور حولها الموضوع.

▶ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Read and answer the question:

people go to the market to buy meat, chickens or fish. a week. Most people who go around the markets are People who go to the market are different. Some Others go to bring fresh fruits and vegetables. A few clothes, tools and wood. Markets are often one day people go to markets to sell things and goods like often women but some men go, too.

- Give a suitable title to the passage.
 - What is the main idea of the text?
- What is the text about?

🏈 التحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في الفقرة. 🥦 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع

واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة.



Jobs

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من (language functions) والتي غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها. ▶ اقرآ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking Yassin about his father's job.

Ahmed: Hi, Yassin. What's your father's job Yassin:(1)

Ahmed: (2)

Yassin: He works in Tanta Prep School.

Ahmed: (3)

Ahmed: Do his pupils like him? Yassin: He teaches English.

Yassin : (4)

Ahmed: Do you want to be a teacher like him?

Yassin : (5)...

🕬 التحدي تريد [إجراء حوار عن وظيفة] أو [الرد على أخبار سواء كانت جيدة أو سيئة] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

🥦 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين المتحدث



3 Correction notes

- الهدف من هذا الجزء
 التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
 اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review	◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة
I → am / am not He / She / It → is / isn't You / We / They → are / aren't	صمائر الفاعل مع (v. to be) في المضارع
am / is / are — (inf.+ing)	في [المضارع المستمر] نستخدم [are / am / ing) وبعدهم الفعل مضاف له jing
bad → badly / slow → slowly good → well / fast → fast	بصـف الظرف الفعل ويأتى بعده و يســتخدم الظرف للإحابة عن سؤال بـ How

Learn		◄ تعلم
Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 My mother is[shop] at the moment.	shopping	مضارع مستمر لوجود at the moment
2[Am] they taking a photo?	Are	نســتخدم الفعــل المســاعد (Are) مع (they)
3 He speaks very[quiet].	quietly	نستخدم (ظرف) بعد الفعل

Practice		◄ تدرب
Write the Reason : متيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة	بب الإجابة يؤكد اس	 ◄ معرفة الطالب لس
• What [are] your mother doing now?	is	
2 Salma [watches] TV at the moment.	is watching	·
We [drive] around the city now.	are driving	
4 He speaks English [good].	well	
Write the Correction :		◄ أكتب التصحيح
⑤ I am not [work] today.		مضارع مستمر
② The cat is sitting in the sun [lazy].	الفعل	نستخدم (ظرف) بعد
3 [Who] does he run? - He runs fast.	ـــؤال عن	نســتخدم How للس ظرف الكيفية
[Were] they feeling hungry now?	. now a	مضارع مستمر لوحوه



on unit 2

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

call-centre worker acamputer worker computer engineer acamicu, clumic police officer شرطة متبول street-food seller ومندس طعام عنبر شوطه متبول stall وممندس مند الخط	1. Use the Present Simple and the Present Continuous 1. The Present Simple : 1. The Present Simple : 1. The Present Simple : 1. The Present Continuous : 1. The Present Continuous : 2. The Present Continuous : 1.	s ومن المضابع الله على اللخيار: اللود على اللخيار: التصييف الله على اللخيار: التصييف الله على الله المعالجة الله المعالجة الله المعالجة الله المعالجة ال
å å	و يستخدم زمن المضاوع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يفع النر • وستخدم زمن المضاوع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يفع النر • poratory now. usic at the moment.	B: Congratulations That's great news. 2. Describing weekend activities
	=	illuniga :
	ا المجادة الم	 At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things.
ğ ÷	 هناف ظروف غير منظمة لا يضاف لها "را-" وتحفظ كما هي ماؤ للسؤال عن كيفية فعل شي ما في زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام She speak? 	2. At the weekend, we sometimes spend time with my uncle at his house.

ಪ್ರಕ್ಷಾತ್ರೂ ತಿಮ್ಮ (Unit 2 ರ್. ಕ್ಷಮ್ಮ ಕ್ಷಮ್ಮ

(Cairo - Ain Shams 2023)

Questions collected from previous exams تدريبات مجمعة من اختيارات المحافظات على الوجدة

9. Tamer is, so he can't hear you. (Fayoum - West Fayoum 2022) a. blind b. deaf c. lazy d. fired 10. It was raining yesterday.	a. heavy b. the heavier c. heaviest d. heavily	2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1.A:	the sun (Behi	4. Mr. Ahmed speaks English (good).	5. I (learn) to sail now. (Minia 2023) 6. It is important to drive (careful) when it is raining. (Gharbia - West Mahalla 2023)	7. What (be) you doing now? (Fayoum 2023)	8. She is (make) tea now.(Sharka - Duarb Negm 2023) 9. He speaks (quiet). (Beheira - Daminhour 2023 10. We should be (friend) to tourists.
1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The street-food seller prepares food people to eat. (Damiena - Roda 2024) a. to b. from c. of d. for	i is at El-D	3. We need a computer engineer to	a. help b. helps c. is helping d. helping 5. Ahmed looks forward high marks.	a. to get b. to getting c. get d. getting 6. The skin of a zebra is (Luxor - Luxor 2023)	a. plain b. blue c. striped d. sharp 7. Deaf people in sign language. (Beni Suef - Samasta 2022)	a. recommend b. make c. cook d. communicate	8. When two people get married, they have a party. (Damiera - Kafr Saad 2023). a. competition b. birthday

d. game

c. wedding

Test on unit 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملدق

1	Listen and	choose	the correct	answer	from a ,	b, c or d	
---	------------	--------	-------------	--------	----------	-----------	--



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نصابة الكتاب). The street-food seller is his food stall here. c. sailing a. making b. parking d. selling 2. He is looking forward to drinking some coffee. d. cold a. dark b. light c. hot 3. Lots of come this way to his food stall. b. passengers c. mechanics d. workers a. tourists 4. He is feeling b. cold d. cool a. hot c. warm

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Essam is telling Maher what he did last weekend.

Maher: What did you do last weekend?

Essam: (1)

Maher: Does your brother love playing football?

Essam: (2)

Maher: (3)?

Essam: We played in the club.

Maher: Did you enjoy playing?

Essam: (4)

Maher: (5)?

Essam: Sure. We will be happy.

(Cairo - Old Cairo 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dear Ayman,

I'd like to tell you about my new preparatory school. It's near my house, so I walk to get there. The school teachers are very kind and

they help me a lot. I was not good at maths last year. But Mr Ramzy helped me to do better. This subject is very important for our daily life. Our school library is full of **interesting** books. I go **there** once a week to borrow one. After reading, I make the most important notes to help me know a lot about the world and our life. Please, write back to tell me about the time we'll meet

		nd our life. Please	write back to tell me
about the time we	e'll meet.		
Yours, Ashraf			
a. Choose the cor			77 ° M
		ed word "interest	
	b. boring	3	d.important
Ashraf walks	to school becau		
a. it's near		b. it's new	
c. it's far		d. the teacher	rs are kind
3. Ashraf goes t	o the library	a week.	
a. once	b. twice	c. three times	d. four times
5. What does th	think about wh	ord "there" refer nat Ashraf does af	ter reading ?
Choose the corr	ect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
1. Why is Kamal	his foo	d stall at this place	? - Because it is the best
place in the city.			(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024),
a. barking	b. moving	c. parking	d. preparing
2. Our TV is broken	. Can you	. it?	(Gtza - Bolak Fl Dakroor 2023)
		c. mix	d. repair
3. We're very	to our po	rents who helped	l us a lot.
a. angry	b. ugly	c. bad	d. grateful
4. Ahmed is a fante	astic	He prepares me	eals in a big restaurant.
a. cook	b. engineer	c. sailor	d. pilot

UNITTWO Und	erstand	Create	
• 5. I usually	a rest when	n I feel tired	
a. do	b. have		d. wave
• 6. Calligraphers : a. languages c. calligraphy	are the peo خطاطیہ	ple who are good a b. Chinese d. communicati	
 7. Deaf people ca a. sewing 	n communicate v b. painting	vith others using	d. hand
8. They	the school this b. painted	week. I hope it will c. were painting	be beautiful. d. are painting
9. When the boysa. happy		they played c. as happy	d. happier
			(Beni Suef - El Wasta 2023)
10. Ghada is a clev a. better	er pianist, she pla b. best	ays the piano c. good	d. well
5 Complete the ser	ntences with the c	orrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
			(Qena - Abo Teshi 2024)
_			start my homework.
·			y. (Sohag - Gerga 2022)
4. We should be	(friend	d) with other people	. (Cairo - Am Shams 2023)
	E. W	riting	
6 Write a paragra	ph of about NIN	IETY (90) words on	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
"What tee	enagers should o	do and what they s	houldn't do"
	•		• •
	•		
, ,			
		(M	lenofia - Al-Shohadaa 2022)

well and gives them advice. Mr Samir always travels students like Mrs Mona because she teaches them home so she always walks to her work. All the Mona works at a school which is not far from abroad. He always travels by plane. 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2. Tamer can communicate better with his Sami. 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: d. cousin d. game

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What does Ahmed's father do?

2. Where does Mona work?

Why do all the students like Mrs Mona?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d : 4. The underlined word "them" refers to. b. Mrs Mona a. Mr Samir

Mr Samir always goes to to travel abroad. d. the students c. Samir and Mona

a. the station c. hospital

d. jumps

d. the airport

b. school

1. is - after - a hospital - Amal - looking - patients - at. 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

2. does - with - to - want - Tamer - Who - communicate?

3. happy - to - **People** - nature - need - be - by .

4. hope - school - enjoying - you - I - are - your - new

Ahmed is thirteen years old. His father, Samir, is

famer: I can't come to the party today,

famer's grandfather is ill today.

b. brother c. uncle

a. gunt

1. Tamer is learning a new

a. language b. hobby

Tamer: Because my grandfather is ill.

farek :(1)....

Tarek: Why don't we visit him?

Tamer : (3)

Famer: In the hospital.

arek : (2)

Tarek : I hope he will get better soon.

Tamer: Thanks a lot.

 $\boldsymbol{3}$. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or \boldsymbol{d} :

1. Mona the room with her sister. c. shares b. sings a. keeps

d. wet b. grateful c. dry 2. Be careful. The knife is. a. sharp

3. Deaf people can by using sign language. b. communicate d. take c. give

b. makes c. making b. slowly c. slowest 5. What is Salma for her father? a. make a. slow

4. Sama walks to school.

d. slower

4. Read the following, then answer the questions: d. made

a businessman but his mother, Mona, is a teacher.

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about: "A visit to Al Azhar Park in Cairo "

تدريبات طبقا لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد اللختياري

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Khalid is asking Ali about his father's job?

Khalid: Hi, Ali. What's your father's job?

b. He is a vet. a. He is a doctor.

d. He is a scientist c. He is a teacher.

b. Where does he work? a. What is he doing?

c. When does he go home?

d. Why is he happy?

: He works in Tanta prep school.

Khalid : (3)

a. When does he finish?

b. What does he like?

c. What does he teach? d. Who does he teach?

: He teaches English.

Khalid: Do his pupils like him?

b. No, he didn't d. Yes, they do. a. Yes, I am.

c. Yes, they will.

Khalid: Do you want to be a teacher like him?

a. Yes, I do.

b. No, he doesn't.

d. Yes, I did.

c. No, they aren't.

 Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

6. I (read) a book at the moment. a. reads

b. am reading d. is reading

c, reading

7. It is important to drive (careful) when it

b. carefulness c. carefully is raining. a. care

d. careless

8. The cat is sitting under the tree b, lazily

(lazy).

a. laziest

(do) his homework now. d. laziness My brother c. lazier

a. doing

b, does

c. are doing

d. is doing



Great jobs

SB pages 22:31 WB pages 86:92

Unit Objectives:

• Reading:

An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes

Writing:

A paragraph about rubbish collectors, a paragraph about someone you are proud of

Listening:

Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero

• Speaking:

Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand

Language:

used to

• Life Skills :

Collaboration: Communication

Values

Work values; Love and respect for homeland and the family

• Issues:

Citizenship; Loyalty and belonging; National unity





Key Vocabulary

date of birth = birth	ناريخ الميلاد (n) date	competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة
hero (n)	بطل	handball (n)	رياضة كرة اليد
junior (adj) , (n)	ناشيء / حديث السن	final (adj) , (n)	نهائي - مباراة نهائية
senior (adj) , (n)	أكبر سنّا / أكثر خبرة	treatments (n)	علاجات
	jobs	وظائف	
surgeon (n)	طبيب جراح	sports coach (n)	مدرب ریاضی
patron (n)	راع/کفیل	nuclear scientist (n)	عالم نووي

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

senior - hero - junior - competitions - handball

- 1. You can use your hands to score goals in a game.
- 3. Young people like to join sports
- 4. When he was 10, he played football in the team.

-Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

princess (n)	أميرة	Bilbeis (n)	مدينة بلبيس
Khedive (n)	خدیوی (حاکم مصر)	heart problems (n)	مشاكل بالقلب
national university (n)	الجامعة الوطنية	experiments (n)	تجارب (علمية)
Cairo University (n)	جامعة الفاهرة	primary (adj)	ابتدائي
shark (n)	سمكة القرش	preparatory (adj)	إعدادي
attack (ed) (v), (n)	يهاجم - هجوم	land (n)	أرض
female (n)		nuclear (adj)	نووي

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

Tunisia (n)	دولة تونس	pronounce (d) (v)	ينطق
against (prep)	ضد / في مواجهة	chess player (n)	لاعب شطرنج

teamwork (n)	- عمل جماعی	event (n)	حدث
prize (n)	جائزة	Tunisian (adj)	تونسي (الجنسية)

Sports Expressions

تعبيرات رياضية

the Egyptian handball team	the Africa Cup of Nations
المنتخب المصري لكرة اليد	كأس الأمم الإفريقية
the Egyptian junior team	the under-19 World Cup Final
منتخب الناشئين المصرى	نهائي كأس العالم للشباب تحت ١٩ سنة
the Egyptian senior team	the Handball Africa Cup of Nations
المنتخب الأول المصري	كأس الأمم الإفريقية لكرة اليد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع t	المافي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
bear	يلد	bore	born
mean	ىعنى/يقص <mark>د</mark>	meant	meant
throw	يرمي/يلقي	threw	thrown
become	يصبح	became	become

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

,		ن المحارية	. درس سد
handball	a sport with seven players in a team. They sco throwing the ball into a goal	ore by	كرة اليد
competition	an event when people try to get a prize by be at something		e best مسابقة - ب
sports coach	 someone who teaches people how to play or im a person who trains or helps people to do a sp 	•	
junior	 for younger people connected with young people or involving young 		الناشئين (أ eople
senior	for older people more advanced and / or older	ئر من ۱۸ س	الشباب (أك
surgeon	a special doctor who knows how to look inside body to help people who are ill	,	on's طبیب جراح
scientist	someone who does experiments to study and about how things work	l find o	ut عالم
patron	a person who gives money to help people or pla	aces	راع/كفيل
hero	a person that people admire because they has something very brave or good	ave dor	ne بطل
female	being a woman or a girl		أنثى

UNITTHREE

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

	a job	بحصل على وظيفة	win	a competition	يفوز بمسابقة
get	a prize	بحصل على جائزة	lose	a leg	يفقد ساقًا
do	experiments	بقوم بنجارب علمية	iose	a competition	يخسر مسابقة
start	preparatory s الإعدادية a charity	chool ببدأ الدراسة بالمرحلة ينشأ مؤسسة خيرية	make	a hero	يصنع بطلأ

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and A	ntonyms		نضادات	مترادفات ومن
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
brave	شجاع	courageous	cowardly	جبان
patient	صبور	tolerant	impatient	غير صبور
successful	ناجح	_	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
similar	متشابه	alike	different	مختلف
win	يفوز	succeed in	lose	يخسر

Prefixes & Suffixes		ة وناهية	مقاطع بادئذ
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
-ess ·	تحول الاسم المذكر لمؤنث	princess	أميرة
-er	تحول الفعل لاسم	player	لاعب
-ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	successful	ناجح
-ment	تحول الفعل لاسم	treatment	علاج

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The female name	of "prince" is "			
a. nobleman	b. princes			d. actress
5. Ahmed is a brave				
a. strong	b. coward	ly c. coura	geous	d. patient
General	Notes on	Reading &	Liste	ning
1 win/beat				
* win (v) won – w			س / مسابة	يفوز (بميدالية / كأ
▶ -Who won the				
- Egypt often w		can football con	npetitio	ns.
* beat (v) beat – b			5)	يعمزم (شخص / فريا
Salim always be	ats me at che	SS.	(SB page	29 / WB page 87)
2 sport / sports				
* sport (n)		*		رياضة
Handball is my	favourite spa	rt.		3
* a good sport	طيبة	ذو روح رياضية وأخلاق	شخص بأنه	تستخدم عند وصف
Mohammed Sa	lah is <mark>a good</mark>	sport.		
* sports (adj)				رياضي
Omar Abdel	lkader worked	l as a sports cod	ich.	(SB page 23 24)
3 born in/on/into				
* born in			نة)	ولد في (مكان / س
I was born in Co	airo in 1990.		.—	
* born on			(2	ولد في (يوم / تاري
My dad was bo	rn on Friday 2	2 nd September.		23 · · FX. G 3
* born into				ولد لـ (عائلة)
She was born in	nto a rich fam	ily.		
				(SB page 23)
Important Expression	ons & Prepo	sitions	هامة	
Important Expressions				نعبيرات وحروف جر
Expressions		Pro	epositio	نعبيرات وحروف جر
Expressions improve in a sport	يتحسن في رياضة		<mark>epositio</mark> body	عبیرات وحروف جر ns
Expressions improve in a sport a long time ago	يتحسن في رياضة منذ وقت طويل	Pro look inside the	<mark>epositio</mark> body	ت عبيرات وحروف جر ns فحص الجسم من اا
	يتحسن في رياضة منذ وقت طويل problems	Pro	<mark>epositio</mark> body	نعبيرات وحروف جر
Expressions improve in a sport a long time ago help people with heart	يتحسن في رياضة منذ وقت طويل problems يساعد الأشخاص	Pro look inside the	<mark>epositio</mark> body	ن عبيرات وحروف جر ns فحص الجسم من اا



Lesson (1) SB page 23

- A. Omar Abdelkader.
- He was born in 1994.
- 2. When he was 22, a shark attacked(1) him.
- He lost his leg, but he didn't stop wanting to be successful (2).
 4. In 2019.
- Now, he helps other people with similar problems.
 - 5. He is an important sports coach(3).
- B. Sameera Moussa.
- . She was born in 1917.
- 2. She studied science at Cairo University.
- 3. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist⁽⁴⁾.
- 4. She wanted to use nuclear treatments(5) in medicine.

C. Magdy Yacoub.

- 1. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935.
- 2. He went to Cairo University.
- 3. He became an important heart surgeon⁽⁶⁾.
- 4. He helped people with heart problems.
- 5. He started a charity (7) to help children with heart problems.

D. Princess Fatma Ismail.

- 1. She was the daughter of Khedive Ismail.
- 2. She was born in 1853.
- 3. She became a **patron**⁽⁸⁾ of Egypt's first national university. 4. She gave a lot of money and land to help it to open.

Lesson [2] SB page 24

- 1. The Egyptian handball team are heroes⁽⁹⁾.
- 2. They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations⁽¹⁰⁾ in Tunisia.
- They won the final⁽¹¹⁾ against Tunisia 27-23.
- 4. In 2019, the junior team (12) won the under-19 World Cup.
- 5. They were the first team from Africa to win it.
- In 2018, the senior team⁽¹³⁾ were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations.
- 7. Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport.

Lesson [2] WB page 87

- 1. My brother Ahmed loves playing handball.
- 2. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition.
- 3. The team didn't win but it came second.

4. Last year, he **played for**⁽¹⁴⁾ a senior team.

5. He was very pleased.

. Sggi pile (4)	(3) مدرب رياض	(2) بالحج	(I) oped
Jgan / gdy (8)	(T) مؤسسة خيرية (8) راع / ممور	(6) جراح المُلاب	८) जातिल
(12) فريق النفشين	(۱۱) نصائی	(10) كاس الأمم الأفريقية	(6) jiqif
		(क्रा) भूका, जिल्ल (वंत्रक्र)	(13) الفريق المول (الكبار) (14) ياعب لصالح (فريق)

*Your role model *Your favourite hero *A sports star *The Egyptian handball team *Your favourite sport الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية أخرى:





Reading and Listening



- on Lesson 1 SB page 23
 - Photo one shows Omar Abdelkader.
 He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22,

 a shark attacked him and he lost a leg, but this did not stop him wanting to be successful. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important sports coach⁽⁵⁾.
 - Photo two shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist and wanted to use nuclear treatments in medicine.
 She died in 1952.
 - 3. Photo three shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon. He then helped people with heart problems for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity to help children with heart problems.
 - 4. Photo four shows Princess Fatma Ismail. The princess was the daughter of Khedive Ismail and she was born in 1853. She became a patron of Egypt's first national university after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called Cairo University.













أني أنائي	مدرب ریاضی	: مشابه	ناجح	هاجم	سوكة القرش
انشأ جمعية خيرية	ااا جراح قلب	جامعة القاصرة	الطب	عللجات	عالم نووی
الجامعة الوطنية	راع / كفيل	الخديوي إسماعيل	ابنة	اميرة	لديهم مشاكل بالقلب

UNITTHREE



on Lesson 1 WB page 86

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they **moved** to⁽¹⁾ Port Said in 1990. My father **got a job**⁽²⁾ in Cairo 15 years ago. They then lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later when I was born.

(1) ينتقل إلى ﴿2) يحصل على وظيفة

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Egyptian heroes(1)!

The Egyptian handball team⁽²⁾ are heroes! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations⁽³⁾ in Tunisia in 2020. They won the final⁽⁴⁾ against⁽⁵⁾ Tunisia 27-23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final.

In 2019, the junior team⁽⁶⁾ won the under-19 **World Cup⁽⁷⁾** Final 32-28 against Germany. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team⁽⁸⁾ were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost⁽⁹⁾ the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's **hope**⁽¹⁰⁾ the Egyptian team can win **competitions**⁽¹¹⁾ again!

Answer the following questions:

استخراج المعلومات Leorn 1. Where did the Egyptian handball team
win the handball Africa Cup of Nations?

- In Tunisia

Practise 2. What did the Egyptian junior team win in 2019?

(1) أبطا**ل**

(2) فريق كرة اليد المصرى

(3) كأس اللمم اللفريفية

(4) مباراة نصائية

(5) څد

(6) فريق الناشئين

(7) کأس العالم

(8) الفريق الأول

(9) خُسر

(10) يتمنى

(11) منافسات / مسابقات

on Lesson 2 WB page 87

My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very **good at**⁽¹⁾ it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition for a team in our city. The team didn't win, but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he **played for**⁽²⁾ an important senior team. He was very pleased. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it!



··· (1) جيد في (2) ياعب لصائح (فريق)

-		
	Exercise	on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary			
1. My father is my		ig hospital for the	poor.
a. friend	b. doctor	c. teacher	d. hero
2. A does expo work.	eriments to study a	nd find out about h	ow things
a. surgeon	b. charity worker	c. patient	d. scientist
3. The Egyptic	an team won the u	ınder -19 World Cur	Final in 2019.
a. senior		c. children	
SB , WB & Previous Exams			
4. My brother became gold medal.	the number one c		l won the it - Manflout 2024)
a. inventor	b. player	c. driver	d. sailor
5. Sameera Mousso	was Egypt's first	nuclear s	cientist.
a. male			
6. WB In 2006, Dr Maga	dy Yacoub started	a charity to help cl	hildren with
problems.			nary - Assuit 2021)
a. cold	b. eyes	c. heart	d. legs
El-Moasser Exercises			
7. My brother is a cleve a person's body to he		ows how to look in	rside
a. surgeon		c. patron	d. baker

UNITTHREE

8is the abi		gether in a group. c. Teamwork	d. Artwork
9. We all hope our nat			
a. Charity		c. World Cup	, ,
Definitions			
10. A/An is a	-		•
a. sports coach	b. surgeon	c. patron	d. engineer
11 is a sport a. Chess	with seven player b. Football	s in a team. c. Handball	d. Tennis
12. A is a wo	man or a girl.		
a. female		c. hero	d. male
13. Ais some in a sport.	eone who teaches	people how to pla	y or improve
a. sports player	b. sports star	c. sports coach	d. sportsman
Language Notes, Exp	pressions & Prep	ositions	
14. My brother			•
a. won	b. beat	c. gained	d. earned
15. Sama was born	-		1.6
a. on	b. in	c. by	d. for
Mohamed Salah pl many goals.	ayed Liv	erpool Football Cl	ub and scored
a. at	b. in	c. of	d. for
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
▶ 1. Asking and answer	ing questions abo	out what a hero i	nakes :
	بطل:	د عليها حول ما يصنع الب	ا. توجيه أسئلة والر
Questions	9	Answers	Ø
1. What makes a hero		ero should be brave ent. He shouldn't b	•
البطل ٢		بطل بالشجاعة والطيبة والصب	
2. Can you give examp heroes from other co طاء أمثلة لأبطال من دول أخرى ؟	ountries ? play	I can. The America er Michael Jordan. عب كرة السلة الأمريكي مايكل	
0, 0, 0, 0	,	,	C- 1

▶ 2. Asking and answering questions about teamwork:

٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها حول العمل الجماعي :

Questions



Answers



- 1. Why is teamwork important?
 - ١. لماذا العمل الجماعي هاء ٦
- 2. Which team do you like? Why?
 - ٢. أي فريق تحب ؟ ولماذا ؟
- Did the team win many games last year? Why / Why not?
 - ٣. هل فاز الفريق بالعديد من المباريات العام الماضي ؟ لما / لما لا ؟
- 4. When did your favourite team last win a competition?
- ٤. متى كانت آخر مرة فاز فريقك المفضل بمسابقة ؟
- 5. Would you like to play in a team? Why?
 - ٥. هل تود أن تلعب في فريق ؟ ولماذا ؟



- Because when people have teamwork skill, they become successful.
- لأنه عندما يتمتع الناس بمهارة العمل الجماعي يصبحون ناجحين.
- My favourite team is Liverpool.
- I like Liverpool because they play well.
 - فريقى المفضل هو ليڤربول. أحب فريق ليڤربول لأنهم بلعبون جبدًا.
- Yes, they won many games because they had teamwork skill.
 - نعم، فازوا بمباريات عديدة لأنهم كان لديهم مهارة العمل الجماعين
- Mu favourite team (Liverpool) won the European Championship last year.
 - فريقي المفضل (ليڤربول) فاز ببطولة أوروبا العام الماضي.
- Yes, I'd like to play in a team to experience teamwork.
- نعم، أود أن ألعب في فريق حتى أجرب العمل الجماعي.

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

جمل تساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية ورسالة البريد الإلكتروني في الورقة الامتحانية.

What makes a hero ما الذي يصنع البطل

1. A hero should help others with their problems.

ينبغي على البطل أن يساعد الآخرين في مشاكلهم.

2. A hero should be brave, kind and patient.

ينبغى على البطل أن يتسم بالشجاعة والطيبة والصبر.

3. A hero should learn good things from other heroes.

ينبغي على البطل أن يتعلم أشياء جيدة من الأبطال الآخرين.

4. A hero should help the poor and the needy.

ينبغي على البطل أن يساعد الفقراء والمحتاجين.

III Language

رمن الماضي البسيط - The Past Simple Tense

النكوين Formation

1

(A) Regular verbs:

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Affirmative Statements

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل Subject

الجمل الخبرية المثبتــة

• لاحظ: قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل المنتظم في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل المنتهى بــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	يضاف له	مئـــال Example
و (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y + (حرف ساکن)	+ ied	carry → carried
+ (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
[حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك]		stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	ed + يضاعف الحرف الأخبر	visit → visited

(ب) الله عال غير المنتظمة: : (ب) الله عال غير المنتظمة :

1	الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي	هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه
	cut	cut	put	put	الفاعدة تحفظ مثل :
	eat	ate	drink	drank	

• لاحظ الآتي : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالأتي.

I / He / She / It / [فاعل مفرد] → was / wasn't

We / They / You / [فاعل جمع] → were / weren't

- ex. Dr Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935.
 - The Egyptian handball team were the first team from Africa to win the World Cup.

2

Negative Statements

الجمل الخبرية المنفية لاحظ: في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيفة الآتية:

المصدر .Subject فاعل + didn't + inf

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.

• لاحظ: تستخدم (could / couldn't + înf.) للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة في الماضي.

ex. - When I was young, I could play football, but I couldn't play chess.

(A) Yes/No question : : "السؤال بـ "هل" : السؤال بـ "هل" : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" : 3 Did + subject فاعل inf. ? Interrogative ex. - Did you clean the car yesterday ? * Yes, I did. * No, I didn't.

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام : : (ب) السؤال بكلمة

أما في صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word + did + subject + inf. ? المصدر فاعل كلمة الاستفهام

ex. - What did you study? - Where did she go?

Key words كلمات دالة

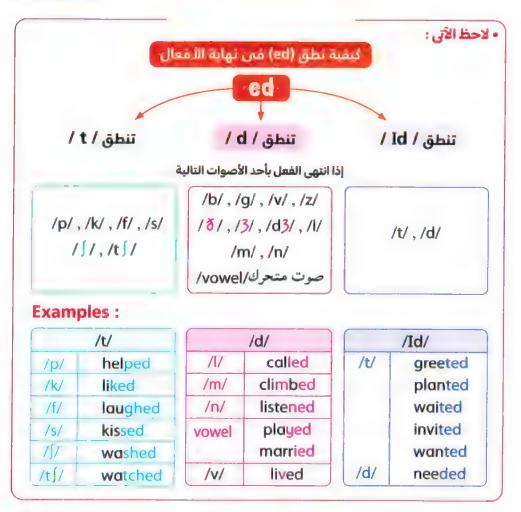
الاستفصار

- in the past في الماضية year السنة الماضية + ago منذ + ago مدددة When I was (young)/
 yesterday أمس (little) | الشهر الماضي week الثلاثاء الماضي 1000) سنة ماضية العمرانية العمرانية الماضي 1000) سنة ماضية الماضي Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي الماضي 1000)
 - ex. Dr Magdy stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ago.

Usage الاستخدام

- (1) It is used to talk about actions that started and finished in the past.
 - ◄ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.
 - ex. She went to school two hours ago.
- (2) It is used to talk about past habits.
 - **◄ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط أيضًا للحديث عن عادات في الماضي.**
 - ex. When I was young, I played football every day.

UNIT THREE





1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. 53 Egypt's handball team in a final before. It's not the first time.
a. play b. played c. playing d. plays

(Dakahlia - Sherbeen 2024)

- 2. I helped my mother with housework and I to school yesterday. (Assuit Al badary 2024)
 - a. go b. goes c. going d. went

3.	58 When	they win tl	ne World Cup Final?	– Last year.
	a. were	b. had	c. did	d. does
4.	W B My uncle	Rashid	born in 1961.	(Assiut – Sedfa 2022)
	d. were			d. was
5.	a. Did	y win the last ma b. Do		(Beheira - Rashid 2023) d. Had
6.	SB Where did	your parents	when they w	ere younger?
	a. lived	b. living	c. live	d. to live
El-M	oasser Exercise	S		
7.		at home yeste		
	a. was		c. is	d. are
8.			three weeks ago.	
		b. weren't		d. don't
9.	the	y busy at school !	yesterday?	4.344
	a. Was			d. Were
10.	She	the match yeste	rday. She enjoyed it	very much.
			c. didn't watch	d. doesn't watch
11.	a. leaves	the library ten b. left	minutes ago. c. leave	d. leaving
12.	Were you wor	rried about your	brother?-Yes,	
	a. I were	b. I was	c. you were	d. they were
	_		correct form of the	word(s) in brackets:
-	WB & Previous			
1.	Magdy Yo	acoub (is) born in 1935.	
2.	WB They	(live) in a sı	mall flat from 2005 to	o 2006.
				Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024)
4.	WB They	(get) marri	ed in 1983.	
5.	. How	(do) you travel t	o Alexandria last yea	I r ? (Qena - Farshout 2023)
EI-N	loasser Exercise	25		
7. 8.	When she wa	(went) ho	(can't) speak Eng me ?	glish.
		_	two hours	

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

U 1	Vocabulary ختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing Writing lèziq ako l'alibi bagle l'Eziq ako l'alibi bagle l'Eziq ako l'alibi l'a
T 4	Read and complete : 1. Who is your - My great grandfather. ्रो	Complete the following dialogue: Ashraf asks Ayman about his hero. Ashraf: Who is your hero, Ayman? Auman: (1)	Write a paragraph on : "Your hero"
(4	2. What was your great grandfather's??aabg		
(1)	3. Why was your great grandfather your hero? - Because he helped a lot of people.		
	1. Who is Sameera Moussa ? - She is Egypt's first female scientist. 6399	Iman and Nawal are talking about Sameera Moussa. Iman : Do you know who is in this photo? Nawai: (1) Iman : She is Sameera Moussa.	"Sameera Moussa"
CA	2. Where did she study science? - She studied science at Cairo	Nawal: (2) Iman : She is Egypt's first female nuclear scientist. Nawal: That's amazing! (3) Iman : She was born in 1917.	
(4)	3. Have you met her before ? - No. Shein 1952. Old	Nawal: Where did she study science? Iman: (4) Nawal: Many famous people graduated from Cairo University. Have you met her before? Iman: (5) She died in 1952.	

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

	@Understand	Apply	Create
1 Complete the following dialogu	ie:		
Ahmed is asking Hossam about h			
Ahmed: Who is your hero, Hossan	n?		
Hossam: (1)			
Ahmed : What was your grandfat			
Hossam: (2)			
Hossam : He worked in a big hospi			
Ahmed: Did he use to be a volunt	eer?		
Hossam : (4)			
Ahmed : (5)	?		
Hossam: Yes, I am so proud of him	. (Dak	ahlia Sinbell	lawein 2024)
Read the following, then answer	the questions:		
Mu brother Mahmoud loves pla	ying handball. He	e is very go	od at it.
When he was nine, he played in a j	unior competition	n for a tear	n in our
city. The team did their best, but th	ey didn't win. Ma	hmoud fell	t saa, but
he didn't lose hope. He encouraged them to train hard and never lose l	nis friends to try	j again. ne ioiped the l	Fauntian
handball team.	lope. men, meg	onied the i	-ggptian
Mahmoud and his team won th	e handhall Africa	Cun of Na	tions in
Tunisia in 2020. They won the final	agginst Tunisia 2	7 - 23. Tha	t means
they are the best team in Africa. No	ow lots of people	in Egypt lo	ve the
sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team	n can win compe	titions aga	in. So, we
learn "With hard work, you can achi	eve all your goals	". (Cairo - Am .	Shams 2024)
A. Choose the correct answer from	n a, b, c or d:		
1. Mahmoud is very good at	0410204 4		
	c. football	d. hand	ball
2. The underlined pronoun "He" ref	ers to		
a. Mahmoud's brother	b. Mahmoud d. Tunisia		
c. a swimmer3. We hope the Egyptian team can			
a. competitions b. jewels	c. treasure	d. mode	
B. Answer the following questions:	C. 61 G G G G G		
4. What did Mahmoud advise his to	eam ?		
			,, ,
5. When did Mahmoud and his team	win the handball A	Africa Cup of	f Nations?
		4 V V	****
6. What did you learn from this pa	ssage :		

3	Choose the c	orrect answer from	ma,b,cord:					
•	1. My brother i	is 12 years old, he w	ants to join the	team.				
	a. junior	b. senior	c. old	d. small				
,	•		(Sharkia - Mashtool 2024)				
•	2. I see what you It's important to do the project.							
	a. eat	b. mean	c. pay					
•	3. A/An	is an event whe	n people try to get	a prize by being				
	the best at s							
	a. teamwork	b. treatment	c. competition	d. experiment				
•	4. SB When O	mar was 20, a sharl	k him.					
	a. talked	b. attacked	c. improved	d. won				
•	5. SB Sameer	a Moussa wanted to	o use nuclear	in medicine.				
	a. competitio	ons b. treatments	c. nations	d. problems				
•	6. That man he	ad an accident yest	erday and he	his hand.				
	a. lost	b. won	c. missed	d. got				
1				rkia - West Zagazig 2023)				
•	7. A sports coac	h teaches players hov	v to play in a game o	rin a sport.				
	a. improve	b. eat	c. damage	d. throw				
۰	8. Did Ali	to the shops ye		(Cairo - Maadi 2024)				
	a. go		0 0	d. goes				
۰				(Minia - Mallawy 2023)				
		b. helping	c. helped	d. help				
۰	_	to a new flat a yea						
	a. since	b. last	c. next	d. ago				
4	Complete the	sentences with the d	correct form of the v	word(s) in brackets:				
-		study) English last r	-					
		(not go) to school	_	(Qena - Deshnu 2023)				
		e) they happy at ye						
	4. Yesterday, I.	(be) at scl	nool from 8 to 2.					
5	Write an ema	il of about NINET	Y(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب				
•		Maha to tell her ab						
	is Nour and yo	ur email address is	nour@gmail.com. Y	our friend's email				
	address is mah	na@gmail.com.						
				****** *** ***** * ****** * ****** * * *				
				,				
				.,				
				Y */				
			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,					



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

charity (n) غيرية	جمعية خيرية / مؤسسة -	pump (ed) (v), (n)	يضخ - مضخة
countryside (n)	الريف	cuts (n)	جروح
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ	infection (n)	عدوى - إصابة
natural disaster (n)	كارثة طبيعية	bones (n)	عظام
volunteer (n)	منطوع	earthquake (n)	زلزال

Parts of the body

أجزاء الجسم

In your head			In your body		
brain		المخ	lungs	الرئتين	
eyes		أعين	heart	القلب	
mouth		فم	stomach	المعدة	

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

stomach - lungs - heart - brain - volunteer

- 1. The pumps blood around the body.
- 2. A is someone who works for no money to help people.
- 3. The take in air and help us to breathe.
- 4. A tells the parts of our body what to do.

Lesson 3

\$8 pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

family history (n)	تاريخ العائلة	scary (adj)	مخيف
necessary (adj)	ضروری / هام	life-lives (n)	حياة - حيوات
school project (n)	مشروع / بحث دراسی	great grandmother	الجدة الكبرى
the Red Crescent (n)	جمعية الهلال الأحمر	special (adj)	خاص/مميز

UNITTHREE

Lesson 4 SB page	28 WB page 89		
parts (n)	أجزاء	blood (n)	الدم
function (n)	مهمة / وظيفة	medicines (n)	أدوية
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	infect (ed) (v)	يصيب بالعدوي / يعدي
mend (ed) (v)	بصلح - يعالج	pieces (n)	قطع
broken (adj)	مكسور	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
tomato plants (n)	نباتات الطماطم	furniture (n)	أثاث

Cor	ijugation of irregul	ar Verbs	تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة		
	المضارع Present	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.		
pay	يدفع	paid	paid		
burn	بحرق/ بحترق	burnt / burned	burnt / burned		

Study these	definitions e	ادرس هذه التعريفان
charity	an organisation that gives money, food, et who are in need	c. to people جمعية خيرية
cut	an injury when something cuts you, made sharp	by something جرح - قطع
infection	a disease in a part of your body	اصابة / عدوي
countryside	the area outside a city, where there are far nature	ms and lots of الريف
emergency	something serious or dangerous that you r something about.	need to do حالة طوارئ
volunteer	 someone who works for no money to help a person who does a job without being p 	
natural disaster	 a terrible event, such as an earthquake something that happens in nature and codamage, for example a flood or an earth 	
lungs	 they take in air and help us to breathe the parts of the body inside the chest which w 	الرئتين e use to breathe
brain	it tells the parts of our body what to do	المخ
heart	it pumps blood around the body	فلب

	feeling happy about something you ha	ve done or are
proud	connected with	فخور
	make water, air, gas, etc. move in a part	icular direction;
pump	the thing you use to do this	يضخ - مضخة

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات المتضادات مترادفات المتضادات مترادفات المتضادات مترادفات المتضادات ا				
Wor	الكلمة d	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
ايعيش يعيش		exist - survive	die	يموت
serious	خطير	dangerous	safe	آمن
repair	epair يصلح mend - fix break - damage		geیکسر-بدمر	
special	خاص / مميز	significant - unusual	usual	عادي

Prefixes & Suffixes		دئة وناهية	مقاطع با	
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples		
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	infection	عدوي	
-ent	تكون الصفة من الفعل	different	مختلف	
-al	تكوِّن الصفة من الاسم	natural	طبيعي	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

_							
(0)	Choose	the	correct	answer	trom a	a. D.	, c or a

1. To change the word "infect" into a noun, we add "..... we a. -ed b. –ious c. -ion d. -ing 2. To form an adjective from the verb "differ", we add ".......". d. -ation a. -ent b. -lu c. -ive 3. We need to repair our computer. The synonym of the word "repair" a. break d. build b. mend c. prepare 4. "Live" and "die" are d. adjectives a. synonyms b. antonyms c. nouns 5. To get the adjective from "nature", we add the suffix "....". d. -al a. -ic b. -able c. -itu



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 volunteer - voluntary

* volunteer (n) متطوع

Salim is a volunteer in a team.

* voluntary (adj.) تطوعي He's doing much voluntary work.

2 breathe - breath

* breathe (v) يتنفس

He isn't dead. He is still breathing.

* breath (n) نفس "Take a deep breath." said the doctor.

3 proud

* proud of + (v + ing) / (pwl)فخور بــ

- Basem is **proud of** being a policeman.

- Basem is **proud of** his job.

* proud to + (inf.) فخور أن

Basem is proud to be a policeman.

4 special hospital / private hospital

* special hospital مستشفى (أنشأت لعلاج مرض معين)

There is a special hospital for treating cancer.

* private hospital مِستشفى (خاصة - ملك لشخص)

Today private hospitals are too expensive. (WB page 88)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

(SB page 26)

(SB page 29)

Expressions		Prepositions	
work for no money	يعمل بدون مقابل	different to / from	مختلف عن
do a school project	يقوم ببحث دراسي	pay for	يدفع (مال) لـ
start a charity	ينشأ مؤسسة خيرية	cut into	يقطع إلى
take in air	يستنشق (هواء)	a volunteer for	متطوع لـ
sew cuts	يخيط الجروح	pleased with	مسرور من / فرح بـ
for the first time	لأول مرة	write down	بدون
stop infection	يمنع الاصابة / العدوي	fall off	يسقط من على

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson [3] 5B page 26

. Yasser didn't use to know much about his family history.

- 2. Last week, Yasser did a school project.
 - 3. It was about someone in Yasser's family.
- 4. Yasser did some research and found out interesting things.
 - 5. Yasser knew that his grandfather was a doctor.
- 6. He worked for a charity.
- 7. He used to live in the countryside(1).
- 8. He worked as a volunteer(2) for the Red Crescent(3).
- 9. He helped when there was an earthquake⁽⁴⁾.
- 0. He used to help people who didn't have much money.

Yasser feels very proud of him. Lesson [3] WB page 88

- 1. We should be proud of (5) Magdy Yacoub.
 - 2. His family used to travel to many places.
 - 3. His father was an important doctor.
 - 4. Magdy also became a doctor.
- 5. He used to work in a special⁽⁶⁾ hospital in London.
 - 6. He used to help to give people new hearts. 7. In 2009, Magdy started a charity for ill children.
 - 8. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives.
- 9. Now, many ils children can live healthy lives.

Lesson [4] SB page 28

- 1. Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients.
 - 2. They wrote down⁽⁷⁾ their ideas.
- They understood that the heart pumps (8) blood.
 It pumps blood around the body.
- 5. They thought that the heart pumped air to our lungs. 6. Doctors used plants to help people with **burns**⁽⁹⁾.
- 7. They used plants to stop infection⁽¹⁰⁾.
- 8. They also knew how to mend broken bones.
 - 9. They knew how to sew cuts(11).
- 10. They used to make medicine from animal eyes.

Lesson (4) WB page 89

1. Life in Ancient Egypt was **different to**⁽¹²⁾ today.

Poor children didn't use to go to school

- 3. Children from **rich**⁽¹³⁾ families started school at seven.
 - Children used to enjoy playing games at home.
 When parents died, they left houses to the sons.
- 6. They left jewellery⁽¹⁴⁾ and furniture to the daughters.

		(C) Manual Manual	(7) orcu63	
gg (01) 2c65	(6) دروؤ	(8) d	را يدؤن	(3) 001/2 - خاص

* Your grandfather's job * Life in Ancient Egypt

* Dr Magdy Yacoub * Ancient Egyptian doctors

<mark>تئويه :</mark> الجمل السابقة نساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: AMedicine in Ancient Egypt





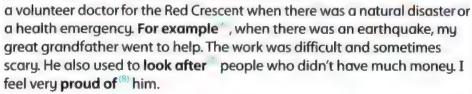


on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Yasser:

I didn't use to **know very much about**⁽¹⁾ my family history. Then, last week, I **did a school project** about someone in my family so I did some research and I **found out** some really interesting things about my great grandfather.

I knew he used to be a doctor but I didn't know he worked for a charity *! My great grandfather used to live in * the countryside and he worked as







on Lesson 3 WB page 88

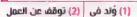
We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was **born** in⁽¹⁾ 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he **stopped working**⁽²⁾ in 2001, he used to work in a **special** hospital in London.











At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time (3). Before the 1980s, people with (4) أنشأ مؤسسة خيرية لـ heart problems often died. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for (4) ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص : Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context Learn 1. The word "special" means not b. usual c. similar d. difficult 2. The opposite of the word "live" is . Practise a. drive b. give

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients(1) because they wrote down their ideas (2) thousands of years ago.

The body

Ancient Egyptians doctors understood that the heart

pumps (3) blood (4) around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumped air (5) to our lungs! (6) They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain (7) does, but they did not know how important it was.

(1) المرضى

(2) أفكار (3) يضخ

(4) الدو

sloon (5)

(6) الرئتين

(7) المخ

(8) نیاتات

(9) دروق

(10) عدوي/إصابة

(11) تصلح/تمالج

(12) عظام مكسورة

(13) بخيط 2912 (14)

Ways to help

Doctors used to use **plants**⁽⁸⁾ to help people with **burns**⁽⁹⁾ and to stop infections (10). We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend⁽¹¹⁾ broken bones⁽¹²⁾ and sew⁽¹³⁾ cuts⁽¹⁴⁾, but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine from animal eyes. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

Answer the following questions:

Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage. Ancient Egyptian doctors.

Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدى

Practise 2. Do you think using animal's eye could help people who couldn't see ?

UNITTHREE

on Lesson 4 WB page 89

Life in **Ancient Egypt**⁽¹⁾ was different to today. **Poor children**⁽²⁾ didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave their houses to the **sons**⁽³⁾. However,



they used to leave things inside the house, such as jewellery⁽⁴⁾ and furniture⁽⁵⁾, to the daughters⁽⁶⁾.

(1) مصر القديمة (2) اللثاث (3) اللبناء (4) مجوهرات (5) اللثاث (6) البنات (1) EXERCISE on Vocabulary

O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

 An earthquak 	ce is a natural	********	
a. kindness	b. disorder	c. disaster	d. infection
2. Living in the	is quieter	than living in the	e city.
a. countryside	b. emergency	c. fire	d. charity
3. You can use th	his tool in a/an	, such as a	ı fire.
a. pump	b. mend	c. farm	d. emergency
	for a charity.		
a. student	b. volunteer	c. brain	d. patient
SB , WB & Previous E	xams		
5. The	take in air and help	us to breathe.	(Gharbia - East Tanta 2024)
	b. brains		
6. Lina's cousin is	s in hospital with ey	je	(Aswan Edfu 2022)
	b. part		
7. WB This footbo	all has no air inside	it. I need a	to fill it.
a. plant	b. light	c. pump	d. brain
El-Moasser Exercises	S		
8. "" is th	ne opposite of the v	vord "serious".	
a. Tired	b. Safe	c. Different	d. Excited

9. It's t	o stay in a burning i	nouse for some ti	me.
a. great	b. natural	c. scary	d. safe
10. Dad always	gives money to a	that help	os poor.
a. charity	b. company	c. hotel	d. factory
Definitions			
11. The	pumps blood aro	und the body.	
a. heart	b. lung	c. brain	d. eye
12. The	tells the parts of o	ur body what to	do.
a. heart	b. brain	c. lung	d. stomach
13. A/Ansomething s	is an injury wher harp.	n something cuts	you, made by
	y b. cut	c. lung	d. pump
	s feeling happy abo		u have done or are
a. Special	b. Proud	c. Broken	d. Scary
Language Note	es, Expressions &	Prepositions	
15. You should p	oay the th	ings you bought	•
	b. for		
16. The Ancient years ago.	Egyptian doctors w	roteth	eir ideas thousands of
	b. down	c. of	d. inside

A week is enough



مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه ف*ا* اسبوع واحد فقط



مهارة التحدث

ا. مناقشة عن تاريخ العائلة الخاصة بك 1. Discussion about your family history مناقشة عن تاريخ العائلة الخاصة بك

Questions



Answers



- 1. Do you know much about your family history? What things do you know?
- ١. هل تعرف الكثير عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ ما الأشياء التي تعرفها ؟
- 2. Would you like to learn more about your family history? Why?
- ٧. هل تود أن تعرف أكثر عن تاريخ عائلتك ؟ لماذا ؟
- 3. When you were ten, did you use to live in a different house?
 - ٣. عندما كنت في العاشرة، هل اعتدت أن تعيش في منزل مختلف ؟
- 4. Did you use to have different hobbies?
 - ٤. هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك هوايات مختلفة ؟
- 5. Which person in your family do you talk about?
 - أي شخص في عائلتك تتحدث عنه ؟
- 6. Where did your great grandfather use to live?
 - ٦. ابن أعتاد أن يعيش جنك الأكبر؟
- 7. What did your great grandfather use to do?
 - ٧. ماذا اعتاد جدك الأكبر أن يفعل ؟



- Yes, I know a lot about my great grandfather and great grandmother.
 - نعم، أعرف الكثير عن جدى الأكبر وجدتي الكبرى.
- Yes, I'd like this because I want to learn about their life and their habits.
- نعم أود ذلك لأننى أريد أن اعرف عن حياتهم وعاداتهم.
- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

- . Y -
- I talk about my great grandfather.
 - أتحدث عن جدى الأكبر.
- He used to live in the country.
 - اعتاد أن بعيش في الريف.
- He used to be a volunteer for the Red Crescent.
- اعتاد أن يكون متطوعًا في جمعية الهلال الأحمر. - He used to help when there was
- a natural disaster or a health emergency.
- اعتاد أن يساعد عندما كانت هناك كارثة طبيعية أو حالة طوارئ صحية.

▶ 2. Asking and answering questions about Ancient Egyptian doctors :

٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن أطباء مصر القديمة :

Questions



Answers



- 1. How did we know about Ancient **Eguptian doctors?**
 - ١. كيف عرفنا عن أطباء مصر القديمة ؟
- 2. What did they use to know about the heart?
 - ٢. ماذا اعتادوا أن يعرفوا عن القلب ؟
- 3. What did they use to help people with burns and to stop infections?
 - ومتع العدوي ؟
 - ٣. ماذا استخدموا لمساعدة المصابين بالحروق

- Ancient Egyptian doctors wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.
- كان أطباء مصر القديمة يدونون أفكارهم منذ آلاف السنيين.
- They understood everything about how the heart works.
- لقد فهموا كل شئ عن كيفية عمل / وظيفة القلب.
- They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.
- استخدموا النباتات لمساعدة المصابين بالحروق ومنع العدوي،

😘 Writing 🛚

مهارة الكتابة

How your life used to be different when you were younger كيف اختلفت حياتك عندما كنت صغيرا

- 1. When I was young, I used to do a lot of things.
 - عندما كنت صغيرًا، اعتدت القيام بالكثير من الأشياء.
- 2. When I was young, I used to get up early. عندما كنت صغيرًا، اعتدت الاستيقاظ مبكرًا.
- 3. When I was young, I didn't use to walk to school.
 - عندما كنت صغيرًا، لم اعتد التمشية إلى المدرسة.
- 4. When I was young, I used to go swimming with my dad.
 - عندما كنت صغيرًا، اعتدت الذهاب للسباحة مع والدي.
- 5. When I was young, I didn't use to live in the city.
 - عندما كنت صغيرًا، لم اعتد العيش في المدينة.

What Yasser's family used to do and didn't use to do in the past ماذا اعتادت عائلة ياسر أن تفعل وألا تفعل في الماضي

- 1. Yasser's grandmother used to work in a hospital. اعتادت جدة باسر أن تعمل في مستشفى.
- 2. Before Yasser's dad got married, he didn't use to live in Cairo.
 - لم يعتاد والد ياسر أن يعيش في القاهرة قبل زواجه.
- 3. Yasser's uncle used to live in Tunisia.
- اعتاد عم ياسر المعيشة في تونس.
- 4. When Yasser's mum was a child, she used to play the piano every day.
 - اعتادت والدة باسر العزف على البيانو يوميًا عندما كانت طفلة.

III Language

"used to" for regular past habits and routines سنحدم (used to) للتعبر عن العادات والأعمال الروبنية في الماضي

 You can use (used to) to talk about habits that were true in the past but are not true now.

– تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادات كانت تحدث بانتظام في زمن الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن.

ex. - When I was young, I used to play in the street.

التكوين Formation

(أ) الجملة الخبرية المثبتة : : (أ) الجملة الخبرية المثبتة :

المصدر .Subject الفاعل + used to + inf

ex. - My father used to work in a bank, but now he works in an office.

Subject المصدر + didn't + use to + inf. الفاعل

ex. - I didn't use to like salad when I was young, but I love it now.

(ح) صيغة الدستفهام : (ح) صيغة الدستفهام :

• في حالة صبغة الاستفهام بـ (هل) تستخدم هذه الصبغة التالية :

Pid + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. المصدر

ex. - Did your mother use to read to you when you were young?
- Yes, she did.
- No, she didn't.

B. Wh - question :

ب. السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام :

• في حالة صيغة الاستفهام بـ (كلمة استفهام) تستخدم هذه الصيغة التالية :

Question word + did + subject + use to + inf. ? المصدر فاعل كلمة الاستفهام

ex. - Where did you use to live before you moved to this city?



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

B, WB & Previous E			
1. My father	work in Asw	an.	(Beheira - Delengat 2023) d. didn't use
a. used to	b. didn't used	c. is used	d. didn't use
2. SB Yasser's ur	icle use	to live in Tuni	sia. (Minia - Beni Mazar 2024)
	b. doesn't		
3. WB	you use to have a	lot of homew	ork?
a. Do	b. Did	c. Have	d. Are
4. Did Hassan	to live in C	airo?	d. Are (Sharkia - East Zagazig 2022) d. using
a. use	b. to use	c. used	d. using
5. 😘 Did you us	se to have any diff	erent hobbie	s ? – No,
a. I did	b. I don't	c. I do	d. I didn't
6. What	Salma use to do	when she wo	as young?
a. does	b. did	c. is	d. was
			(Qalyobia - West Shubra 2024)
El-Moasser Exercises			
			w he in the city.
	b. lived		d. live
	fat, but no		
	b. is		
9. My uncle used	I to be sad, but no	w he	•
a. doesn't	b. isn't	c. didn't	d. wasn't
10. Where did you	ı go on v	acation with	your ramily !
a. used to	b. using to	c. use	d. use to
 Complete the se 	ntences with the c	orrect form o	of the word(s) in brackets:
SB , WB & Previous E			
1. WB Dr Magdy	(use) to h	nelp people wi	ith heart problems.
2. SB My uncle u	sed (be) (a firefighter, b	ut now he is a police officer.
			to know how to drive.
4. WB How did yo	ou (used)	to go to scho	ol? (Damietta - Al-Roda 2024)
El-Moasser Exercise			
Ayman used t	o(had) (a sports car.	
6. How did you	(using) to	go to schoo	1?
7. That building	used to	(being) a cine	ema.
8. He (use) to play footb	all, but now h	e doesn't.

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Paragraphs & E-mails

80 Dialogues

"Ancient Egyptian doctors" ختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة Nrite a paragraph on: "Dr Magdy Yacoub" Adel and Hany are talking about Dr Maqdy Yacoub. (Beheura - Delengat 2023), brahim asks Kamal about doctors in Ancient Egypt. Ibrahim: Were there any doctors in Ancient Egypt? Ibrahim: Did they know how to mend broken bones? : They used plants to help people with . What do you think of him? Ibrahim: Did they know anything about the They also knew Kamal : They wrote down their ideas so we Hany: What did he do to help children in Adel: We should be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He is an important hero. Hany: Where did he work in the past? اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث Complete the following dialogue: Speaking Adel: He was born in Bilbeis. Adel: He was born in 1935. know about them. now to sew cuts. human brain? burns. Aswan? :(2) Kamal :(1) Ibrahim: (2) brahim: (4) Hany: (2) .. Adel: (4) Hany: (5) Kamal Hany: Kamal Kamal Adel : of him. see Where did he work in the past? اnospital. مم ill children in Aswan a page عظام their ideas. سلحى لكون What do you think of Dr Magdy Did they know how to mend ٥ doctors in Ancient Egypt ? 2. How did they help people اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية 1. How did we know about They used plants to help What did he do to help Vocabulary children in Aswan? Read and complete: He started a Yes, they did. - I am so (aconb) broken them. -They -In a with ന

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

1	Listen and choose	the correct a	nswer from a . b .	cord:			
-				استمع إلى معامك واختر الإجابة			
	1. The Ancient Egyptian helped people with burns.						
	a. scientists	b. teachers	c. rulers	d. doctors			
	2. What did they us	e to help peopl	e with burns?				
	a. Seeds	b. Medicines		d. Mud			
	3. The Ancient Egyp	otian doctors w	ere				
	a. clever	b. patient	c. brave	d. kind			
	4. We still use some	of these	today like ther	n.			
	a. tools		c. doctors	d. pumps			
9	Complete the foll	owing dialogu	ie:				
4	Ali is telling Amr a						
	_		s Job.				
	Amr : Hello, Ali. Hov	-					
	Amr: (2)						
	Ali : My father is a						
	Amr : (3)		Cui-				
	Ali : He works in o						
	Amr : Does he go to						
	Ali : (4)		on foot.				
	Amr : Why does he						
	Ali : (5)	***************************************					
3	Choose the correc	t answer from	a, b, c or d:				
•	1. A/An is	an organisation	that gives money,	food, etc. to people			
	who are in need.		(Beni Suef Beba 202)	2 / Minia - Samalut 2024)			
	a. emergency	b. charity	c. countryside	d. university			
•	2. 🔀 Lungs take in	air and help us	s to				
	a. release	b. relax	c. please	d. breathe			
•	3. "Special" has the	same meaning	as "				
	a. serious	b. usual	c. natural	d. unusual			



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scared (adj)	خائف - مرعوب	organisation (n)	منظمة
education (n)	التعليم	championship (n)	بطولة
rubbish collectors (n)	جامعي القمامة	street cleaners	منظفى الشوارع
heroic (adj)	بطولي – نبيل	manager (n)	مدير
nursing (n)	(مهنة) التمريض	society (n)	المجتمع

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

education - manager - championship - heroic - society

- 1. Our team won a football this year.
- 2. My mother is the of our school.
- 3. He went to England to complete his
- 4. Saving children from a dangerous fire is a act.

Lesson 5 SB pag

SB page 29 WB page 90

painting (n)	لوحة فنية (مرسومة)	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
discussion (n)	منافشة	statue (n)	تمثال
internet (n)	الإنترنت	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / بفسر

4.esson 6 SB page 30 WB page 91

continue (d) (v)	يستمر	confuse (d) (v)	بحير / بربك
Faculty of Nursing	كلية التمريض (n)	captain (n)	قائد / كابنن الفريق
main idea (n)	الفكرة الرئيسية	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
Athens (n)	مدينة أثينا (عاصمة اليونان)	The Island of Crete	جزيرة كريت
England (n)	دولة إنجلترا	writer (n)	كاتب
The Parthenon (n)	معبد البارثينون	firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء

UNITTHREE

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

المضارع Present		الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
teach	يعلم - يُدرس	taught	taught
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

heroic	يىل very brave or great	بطولی / نب
manager	a person whose job is to organise people in a company business	or مدیر
scared	frightened or afraid that something bad could happen	خائف

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات				
Wo	rd الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
true	صحيح/حقيقي	right	wrong / false	خطأ
difficult	صعب	hard	easy	سهل
modern	حديث	new - recent	ancient	قديم
famous	مشهور	popular - known	unknown	غير معروف

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية			
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
−ic	تكون الصفة من الاسم	heroic	بطولي
		manager	مدير
-er	تكون اسم الفاعل من الفعل	writer	كاتب
-ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	organisation	منظمة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. This story isn't true, so it's
 - a. factual b. false
- c. easy
- d. ancient

2. To get the no	ame of a person fron	n the verb "manag	e", we add ""
a. –ity	b. –ation	c. –er	d. –or
3. This scientis	t is famous, this me	ans he is	, 9
a. ugly	b. popular	c. coward	d. unknown
4. The words "r	modern" and "	" have the sa	me meaning.
a. old	b. new	c. famous	d. popular
5. To get the a	djective from the w	ord "hero", we add	d the suffix ""
a. –ic	bation	cer	d. –or
Gene	ral Notes on	Panding ST	ictoning
d delle	al Notes on	Reading &	cisceining
1 scared - sca	ry		
* scared (adj			خائف
	cared. She doesn't	like the dark.	
* scary (adj)	scary. I don't like th	om	مخیف (SB page 29)
		ieiii.	(38 bude 54)
2 nursing - nu	_		
* nursing (n)	died nursing to loo	k after natients	التمريض/مهنة التمريض
* nursery (n)	anca marsing to 100	it diter patients.	دخانة
	t her daughter to a	nursery school.	(SB page 30)
3 contain - inc	clude		
* contain (v)			یحتوی علی
▶ The muse	um <mark>contains</mark> a num	nber of old statue	S.
* include (v)			يشتمل - يتضمن
▶ The menu	includes fish, sala	d and rice.	(SB page 30)
4 reason - cau	ise		
* reason (n) (سبب مبرر (معنوی)
	s mobile. This is the	reason for his an	
* cause (n) (a			سبب (مادی) (۵۱ ۱۸۷)
• what's the	e cause of the fire ?		(WB page 91)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have a class discussion	يقوم بعمل مناقشة صفية / دراسية	in other ways	بطرق أخرى
get better	بتحسن - بتعافی	collect from	يجمع من
put other people first	يضع الآخرين في اعتباره أولًا	in other words	بمعنى أخر
try their best	يبذلون قصاري جهدهم	answer to	إجابة / رد على
do something very use	بقوم بشئ مفيد جدّا ful	scared of	خائف من

do something very userui	يقوم بشئ مقيد جدا	scarea or	حانفاض
Confusing words			
	لق :	ب الآتية لها نفس الند	- لاحظ أن بعض الكلمان
to (prep.)		(in	- بمعنى لكي ويتبعها (.f
- She also used to work	o help pay for h		(WB page 91)
- I went to the zoo last w	reek.		بمعنى إلى ويتبعها مكان
two (number)			رقم اثنين [عدد]
I bought two books yes	sterday.		(WB page 91)
too (adv)		ية الجملة المثبتة	بمعنى أيضًا وتأتى في نها
- Warda is good at math	s, and she's goo	d at English, t	00. (WB page 91)
know (v)			يعرف
- I didn't think I know the	e answer to this	question.	(WB page 91)
no		ـ ، أو عدم الموافقة	تستخدم للتعبير عن النف
- No, I didn't use to go to	school bu bus		(WB page 86)
, raidir asc to go to	, serioor by bos.		(WD page 00)
than (prep)	ب جر)	رنة أو التفضيل [حرف	«من» تستخدم في المقا
- Are you taller than you	r brother?		(WB page 91)
then (adv)			تستخدم كظرف للتعبير:
- My father got a job in (Cairo. My parent	s then lived in	a small flat.
			(WB page 86)
their (adj)			صفة ملكية (جمع) ويأتي
- My brothers have the s	ame bags. Their		
there (adv)			ظرف مكان بمعنى هناك
▶ - We went to my cousin's	nouse, but nob	ody was there	(WB page 91)
it's = it is			هذا / هذه تكون (لغير الا
This is my primary school			
its (adj)			صفة ملكية لغير العافل
- Athens is a great city a	nd the Partheno	n is its most f	
			(WB page 91)

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson (6) SB page 30

- 2. My mother is an important nurse. 1. My mother is a heroic(1) mother.
- 4. She studied at the Faculty of Nursing⁽²⁾. 3. Her life used to be difficult.
- 5. She got a job at a big hospital in Cairo.
- 6. She continued(3) to work hard and studied, too.
- 7. She became one of the most important nurses in Cairo.
- 8. In 2020, many people became ill.
- 9. She worked hard for many weeks.
- 10. It was difficult, but heroic work.
- 12. Now, she is a nursing manager(5). 11. Most of the people got better(4).
- 13. She helps nurses.
- 14. I think she is a hero.
- 15. She studied and worked very hard.
- 16. She always tells me that education(6) is very important.
- 17. If I work hard, I can do anything.

* A job of a nurse

Lesson (6) WB page 91

- 1. My name is Adam.
- 2. I want to write about a person I am very proud to know.
- She is called Mrs Karima Mohamed.
- 4. When she was young, she used to study very hard.
- 5. She worked to pay for⁽⁷⁾ her studies.
- 6. In 2020, there was a health emergency⁽⁸⁾,
- 7. Many people were in hospital.
- 8. I became ill and I was in hospital for two weeks.
- 9. Mrs Karima helped me.
- She helped other people in the hospital.
- She was always very kind⁽⁹⁾.
- 12. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers.
- 13. I am very happy and I am proud of her.

(1) بطولی	(4) تُحشُنُ	(ل) يدفع لمن ا.
(2) كلية التمريض	(5) مديرة تعريض	ال (8) حالة طوارئ
(S) Imigg	क्षांट्या (६)	(6) ত্বর্ডঞ / বৃদ্দ

تنويه : } الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Hardworking mother

* Your heroic mother



Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Mona: What is a hero⁽¹⁾, Huda?

who is very **brave**⁽²⁾.

Mona: What do you mean?

Huda: I mean a hero isn't scared of anything.

Mona: I think a hero is someone who is scared,

but still tries his or her best.

Huda: I'm not sure what you mean.

Mona: In other words¹, they often do difficult or dangerous things.

Huda: It's also about putting other people first.

Mona: Sorry, I don't understand.

Huda: I mean a hero helps other people.

Mona: Yes, I agree(5)!

(1) يطل (2) شجاع (3) خائف (4) بمعنى آخر (5) اتفق معك



on Lesson 5 SB page 29

A: I think rubbish collectors(1) can be heroes.

B: What do you mean(2)?

A: I mean, we need rubbish collectors.

B: Sorry, I don't understand.

A: I mean, they do something very **useful**(3).

They collect rubbish from our homes. The city would be **terrible**(4) **without**(5) them!

B: That's true⁽⁶⁾. What about street cleaners⁽⁷⁾?

A: I'm not sure what you mean.

B: I mean, street cleaners are also important because they help to keep our cities clean.

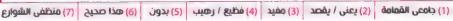
A : Yes, that's true!











on Lesson 5 WB page 90

Soha: All art⁽¹⁾ is important. Sara: What do you mean? Soha: We all need⁽²⁾ art.

Sara: I'm not sure what you mean.

Soha: In other words, art can **teach**¹³ us things.

Sara: Sorry, I don't understand.

Soha: I mean, when we see a painting⁽⁴⁾ or a statue⁽⁵⁾, we can learn

things about life.

(1) الرسم / الف. (2) يحتلج (3) يعلم / يدرس (4) لوحة مرسومة (5) تمثال

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

Karim: I think that all teachers are heroes.

Tarek: What do you mean?

Karim: I mean, without teachers,

we would not learn anything.

Tarek: There's the internet.

Karim: Sorry, I don't understand. I'm not sure

what you mean.

Tarek: In other words, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.

Karim: I don't agree. We will always need teachers.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 30

My heroic (1) mother

1. Today, my mother is an important nurse, Mrs Karima Mohamed, but I know that her life used to be difficult She studied to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing in Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn all she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard but did not stop her studies, and soon she became one

2. Now, she works in a big hospital in Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work, because most of them got better. She is also a nursing manager⁽⁶⁾ and she helps to teach younger nurses.

(1) بطولي (2) صعب (3) كلية التمريض (4) حامعة (5) إستمرت (6) مديرة التمريض

of the most important nurses in Cairo.



UNIT THREE

3. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She always tells me that **education**⁽⁷⁾ is very important, and that if I work hard, I can do anything.

(7) التعليم

on Lesson 6 WB page 91

Hi!

My name's Adam and I want to write about⁽¹⁾ a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed.

When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help **pay for**⁽²⁾ her studies, but that is not the reason I am **proud of**⁽³⁾ her! In 2020, there was **a health emergency**⁽⁴⁾ and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital.

She was always very kind. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!

(۱) يكتب عن (2) يدفع مالًا لـ (3) فخور بـ (4) حالة طوارئ صحية

Answer the following

questions:

Critical thinking skill

مصارة التفكير النقدي

1. Why do you think Mrs Karima is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo?

- Because she is kind and hard-working.

Practise 2. Do you think Mrs Karima is a hero? Why?



Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. The streets would be terrible without
 - a. rubbish collectors

b. trainers

c. farmers

d. managers

2 help	us to keep our city o	clean.		
a. Firefighters c. Computer programmers		b. Vets		
c. Computer pr	rogrammers	d. Street cleaners		
A doctor's world help patients.	k is really	. They fight dise	eases in hospitals to	
	b. dirty	c. ugly	d. easy	
4. Nour El Sherbii	ni won the World So	quash	in 2020.	
	b. Race			
5. Mu sister will id	oin the Faculty of	She wo	ints to help doctors.	
a. Medicine	b. Engineering	c. Nursing	d. Arts	
SB , WB & Previous E	xams			
6. What is the	idea of the :	story?	Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024)	
a. main	b. mean	c. man	d. men	
7. Did he use	to be the	of the football	team?	
a. scientist	b. writer	c. captain	d. cleaner	
			(Menofia - El-Sadat 2023)	
8. 🚰 She alway	s tells me that	is very imp	portant.	
a. infection	b. education	c. pollution	d. smoking	
			(Suez - North Suez 2024)	
El-Moasser Exercises				
9. Tamer	me to his parents	during his birth	day party.	
a. agreed	b. introduced	c. managed	d. kept	
			of Ancient Egyptian	
a. emails	b. statues	c. villas	d. selfies	
11. "Ancient" is the	e opposite of "	.,,,,,,,,	d famous	
a. dangerous	b. serious	c. modern	a. ramous	
Definitions				
12. When you are	afraid that someth	ning bad could h	nappen, then you're	
a. heroic	b. scared	c. proud	d. pleased	
13. A/An	is a person whose	e job is to organ	ise people in	
a company or				
a. firefighter	b. officer	c. hero	d. manager	

UNITTHREE

14. "...." is very brave or great. d. Broken Necessaru b. Heroic C. Scared Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions 15. What is the reason coming home late? d. in a. of b. for c. at 16. I don't understand, so can you tell me the question in words? a. difficult b. great C. another d. other Speaking مهارة التحدث Checking your understanding: التحقق من استيعابك لحديث ما : هناك عنارات تستخدم للناكيد على المهم والإدراك أثناء المحادثة What do you mean? ماذا تعني / ماذا تقصد؟ • I mean أنا أقصد ... · I'm not sure what you mean. أنا لست متأكدًا مما تعنيه. In other words, بمعنى آخرر ... · Sorry, I don't understand. أسف، أنا لا أفهم ذلك. Writing مهارة الكيابة Writing tips: نصائح للكتابة: Start a new paragraph for each main idea. ابدأ فقرة حديدة لكل فكرة أساسية. The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence that introduces the main idea. الحملة الأولى من الفقرة الإنشائية هي الحملة الافتتاحية التي تقدم الفكرة الأساسية. Your favourite hero مثلك الأعلى / بطلك المفضل 1. My hero is my mother. She is an important nurse, but I know that her life used to be difficult. مثلي الأعلى هي والدتي. فهي تعمل كممرضة ذات شأن ولكني أعلم أن حياتها اعنادت أن تكون شاقة. 2. She studied hard to be a nurse at the Faculty of Nursing at Ain Shams Universitu. قامت والدتي بالدراسة بجد في كلية التمريض بجامعة عين شمس. 3. In 2020, many people became ill and my mother worked every day for many weeks. It was difficult, but heroic work.

في عام ٢٠٢٠، أصيب كثير من الأشخاص بالمرض وكانت والدتي تعمل كل يوم لعدة أسابيع. كان عملاً شاقًا

ولكنه كان بطولياً (نبيلاً).

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

• Understand

Apply

O Create

1	Listen and choose			
•		ناع في نهاية الكتاب).	الصحيحة (نصوص الاستم	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
	1. Mohamed is a			
	a. doctor	b. scientist	c. nurse	d. surgeon
	2. He works in a big	10000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	a. clinic	b. hospital	c. charity	d. lab
	3. Mohamed is kind	and		
	a. brave	b. helpful		
	4. When did many p	eople become ill		
	a. 2010	b. 2006	c. 2011	d. 2020
9	Complete the follo	owing dialogue	:	
-	Salwa is asking Hoo			
	Salwa: What do you			
	Hoda: (1)			
	Salwa: (2)			
	Hoda: I mean by "h			useful
			ao sometim y	userui.
	Salwa: Why do you			
	Hoda: (3)			
	Salwa: (4)			
	Hoda :We should e			more money.
	Salwa: But I think n			
	Hoda : (5)		· (S	harkia - Diarb Nigm 2024)
3	Choose the correc	t answer from a	, b, c or d:	
•		n emerg		people were in
	hospitals.			(Fayoum - Senoris 2024)
	a.wealth	b. health	c. clue	d. expression
•	2. Some people thin	k that rubbish	can be	heroes.
	a. actors	b. actress	c. collectors	
				(Beheira - Rasheed 2023)

•	3. Teachers, doctors	s, nurses and oth	er jobs are usefu	for our
	a. society	b. club	c. gallery	d. museum
•	4. Last week, there			
	a. police officers	b. nurses	c. firefighters	d. doctors
•	5. 3 The topic sho	uldth	e main idea of th	e paragraph.
	a. clean	b. end	c. hide	d. include
•	6. Tarek b	etter after two v	weeks in a hospit	al.
	a. knew	b. made	c. got	d. read
•	7. What is the			
	a. cause	b. statue	c. reason	d. answer
Ċ	8. WB Are you taller	·your l	orother?	
	a. them	b. then	c. than	d. their
	9. My grandfather .		_	
	a. used to playing			
,	10. W Did Ali	*		
	a. went	b. goes	c. gone	d. go
4	Complete the senter	nces with the co	rrect form of the	word(s) in
ľ	brackets:			
	1. Ahmed			
	2. I didn't	(used) to know r		amily history. Naga <u>Hammadı 2</u> 023)
	3. Where did Mahmo	oud (fe		
1	4. Did Sally	•		
		_		
<u> </u>	Write a paragraph o			Cidita 1
-		"Rubbish col	lectors"	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
	* * * 100012 21 1	* * 7717 7 11		
		F + + +		, ,,,,



Understanding reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (Understanding reference) وهنا تحتاج لتحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط أقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question:

Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I She was always very kind. I now know that she is one I was in a hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima am very happy that she helped me.

- The underlined pronoun "she" refers to
- a. Mrs Karima
- b. Adam
- c. the doctor
- d. the teacher

🄲 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط. 🥎 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة جيداً سوف نستطيع أن تحدد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحتها خط



Your hero

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من [language functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها. اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Fatma asks her friend Sarah about her favourite sport.

Fatma: Hello Sara. What's your favourite sport?

Sarah : (1)

Fatma: Who is your favourite footballer?

Sarah : (2)

Fatma : (3)

Sarah : Mo Salah plays for Liverpool.

Fatma: And which is your favourite football team?

Fatma: (5) Sarah : (4)

Sarah : Yes, they score many goals.

﴿ 🔌 | التحدي تريد (التحدث عن بطلك المفضل) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

🥠 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الشخص الآخر.



3 6

Correction notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية. - اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال

تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

I/He/She/It/مفرد was (wasn't) You/We/They/جمع → were/(weren't)	ضمائر الفاعل مـع (v to be) في الماضي في الاثبات والنفي وفي حالة السؤال نبدأ بـ was / were
Subj. فاعل → (التصريف الثانى للفعل) Subj. فاعل → didn't + (inf.) Did → subj. فاعل → (inf.)	في جملـة (الماضى البسـيط) نسـتخدم (التصريف الثاني) وفي النفى نسنخدم didn't وبعدها المصدر وفي السؤال نستخدم did كفعل مساعد
Subj. فاعل → used to → [inf. المصدر] Subj. خاعل → didn't use to → [inf. المصدر]	نستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن عادات في زمن الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Yesterday, I [am not] at school.	wasn't	ماضي بسيط لوجود yesterday
② I didn't [used] to get up early.	use	نستخدم (المصدر) بعد (didn't)
O [Does] Dina go to Cairo last week?	Did	ماضی بسیط لوجود last

Practice ▶ تدرب

ؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة : Write the Reason	 ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة ير
--	--

I [not / used] to give money to a charity, but now I do.	didn't use	
② [Did] they at home last night?	Were	
3 They [use] to play basketball, but they don't now.	used	
When I [am] young, I used to play in the street.	was	

Write the Correction:

▶ اكتب التصحيح

1 [Do] he	use	to I	ive	in	Cairo?
Ye	s, he di	d.				
- 1A/-	Idor	41 6				.d

الإجابة النفسي بــ didn't مع الماضي

We ... [don't] have a good meal last night.

البسيط وبعدها مصدر الفعل نستخدم (المصدر) بعد (didn't)

ماضي بسيط لوجود did في

3 I didn't ... [drove] to work yesterday.4 ... [Do] you use to ride a bike when you were young?

سؤال مبدوء بفعل مساعد في زمن الماضي البسيط



on unit 3

قيم مستواك ، يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary	ary	Language	Speaking
scientist	गार्व	زمن الماضي اليسيط T. The Past Simple Tense	1. Asking and answering
surgeon	طبيب جراح	Affirmative supplies	questions about what makes
patron	راغ/كفيل		a hero:
sports coach	مدرب رياض	محريف آمايي مفعل مدين Subject إ	- What makes a hero?
junior junior	ناشئ / حديث	I went out for a walk yesterday اناشئ / دديث السن	- A hero should be brave, kind
senior	الأكبر سنأ	مىغة النفى Negative مىغة النف	and patient.
competition	مسابقة	مصدر الممل .adidn't + inf. (Subj. د من .jubj.	2. Checking von understanding
charity	جمعية خيرية	- l didn't go out for a walk yesterday.	التحقق من استبعادك لحدث ما:
countryside	الريف	الإستخدام Usage الريف	Sopration in the state of the s
emergency	dolis		الما الحرابا 13 الله الله . Dilo - المحدث عن حدث ومع والنمي من العاصي.
		- I visited my cousin last week.	sara . What do you mean?
natural disaster	كارته طبيعية	الكلمات الدالة Key words كارته طبيعية atural disaster معددات	Soha: We all need art.
proud	فخور	ب ago, once upon a time, one day	Sara : I'm not sure what you
volunteer	व्यक्त	orden Interrogative منظوع	medn.
brain	2	Did + subj. + inf ?	Soha: In other words, art can
heart	<u>āh</u>	- D.d you study your lessons?	teach us things.
lungs	بتين	- No, Idida t No, Idida t.	Sara : Sorry, I don't understand.
burns	حروق	, + did + subj. + inf?	Soha : I mean, when we see
cuts	c 165	- Where did you spend your last summer holiday?	a painting or a statue, we
infection	عدوي / إصابة	acgo / lalip	can learn things about life.
infect	يعدي / يطيب	2. Subj	
ocu Toursing manager	סכון נסנים	تستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت مي الماصي وابتهت الآن	
		- He used to play tennis, but now he doesn't.	

went to the surgeon to the cut hand. hand. hand. b. cook c. sew d. break 2. C. sew is the area outside a city, where are farms and lots of nature. learthquake c. served d. break 2. C. sev and lots of nature. learthquake c. sev d. break 2. C. sev and lots of nature. learthquake c. sev d. break 2. C. sev and this can lead and this can lead nate change. leaves b. used c. collected d. burned 6. C. cleaner c. thief d. child 6. C. b. cleaner c. thief d. child 6. C. cheart c. thief 6. C. cheart	9. Thend she to get up early, but now she does. (Cairo - Rod El-Farag 2022) a. didn't b. wasn't c. don't d. doesn't 10. Did Yara play chess when she was young? a. using b. used c. use to d. using to 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. I used to play tennis, but now I (Menofia - Tala 2022) 2. Yesterday, we (have) lunch in a big restaurant. 3. In 2000, Tarek (become) the number one chess player in our city. (Menofia - Bajor 2023) 4. Noha (do) you visit last week? (Assuit - Manfalut 2022) 7. Magdy (not used) to smoke. (Beni Suef 2023) 8. Mona didn't (not / be) at home yesterday. (win) the Africa cup of Nations 100.
when he was only 12! (Dakahlia / Sherbeen 2022) a. winns b. winning c. won	

Test

on unit 3

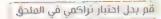


Understand

🍎 kerstij

Create

A. Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

استمع الى معلمك واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة (تصوص اللسنماع في نهاية الكتاب)



1. What's Mrs Kari	ma's job?.	. •	
a. A teacher		c. A doctor	d. An engineer
2. Where does she	work ?	· · · · · ·	
a. In a hospital	b. In a museum	c. In a shop	d. At home
3. What did Mrs K	ari <mark>ma u</mark> se to do wh	nen she was youn	ıg ?
a. To study very	hard	b. To play tenni	S
c. To go shoppir	ng .	d. To drive a ca	r
4. Why did she use	e to work when she	was young?	•
a. To pay for he	r parents	b. To pay for he	r studies
c. To pay for he	brother	d. To pay for he	r sister

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is telling Eman what she did last weekend.

Eman: What did you do last weekend?

Nada : (1) ...

Eman: Does your brother love video games?

Nada: (2)

Eman:(3)?

Nada: We played them at home.

Eman: Did you enjoy playing?

Nada: (4) ...

Eman:(5)?

Nada : Sure. We'll be happy.

(Beheira - Tahrir 2023 Assuit - Manflut 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before **he** stopped working in 2001, he worked in a **special** hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

1. The underli	ined pronoun "he"	refers to	
	acoub <u>se</u>		
	grandfather		
	ned word " specia		_
a. usual		c. not usual	
	ace of Dr Magdy i		a . 1 a b
a, Aswan		c London	d. Bilbeis
	ollowing question	-	
	able title for this p		
,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
5. Why did Mo	agdy Yacoub's fan	nilu use to travel t	o manu places ?
J. 1111.3 W.W. 1111.	ngag racoabbran	mg ase to traver t	o mang praces .
6. Why do you	ı think Magdy Yac	oub started a ch	arity for ill children ?
)			
	D. Vocabular	y & Structu	
		y & Structu	
Choose the co	D. Vocabular	y & Structu ma,b,cord:	
Choose the co	D. Vocabular	y & Structu ma,b,cord:	re
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a. give	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ed for three days c.do	to better.
Choose the co	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ed for three days c.do	tobetter.
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a.give 2. We are	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ped for three days c.do	tobetter.
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a.give 2. We are	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make of being Egypt b, proud	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ed for three days c.do tians. c.sad	to better. d.get (Assuit - Manflut 2024) d.tired
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a. give 2. We are	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make of being Egypt b, proud	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ed for three days c.do tians. c.sad	to better. d.get (Assuit - Manflut 2024) d.tired
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a. give 2. We are	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make of being Egypt b, proud is someone	y & Structuma, b, c or d: ed for three days c.do tians. c.sad	to better. d.get (Assuit - Manflut 2024) d.tired o money. d.patient
Choose the co 1. The doctor ask a. give 2. We are	D. Vocabular rrect answer from ed me to stay in b b, make of being Egypt b, proud is someone b, engineer	y & Structuma, b, c or d: bed for three days c.do tians. c.sad who works for no	to better. d. get (Assuit - Manflut 2024) d. tired o money.

0	5. Do you kno	w the	between "know	"and "no"?
	a. number	b. difference		d. education
•	6. The heart	blood are	und the body.	
	pumps	b. breathes	c. infects	d. cuts
	7, wi	hich is made of g	old and silver, is v	ery expensive.
	a. Emergency	b. Money	Charity	d. Jewellery
				(Giza - Al-Haram 2023)
(5)	8. Did he use to	a car	?	
	a. drive	b. driving	C. drove	d. driven
()	9. Ali didn't	to swim in	the sea.	
			C. used	d. uses
	10. Where	you use 1	o live when you v	vere young ?
	a. do	b. did	c. are	d. were
5	Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of t	he word(s) in brackets:
	1 (III) T	(ao) to primaru s	chool for six years.	Snarkia Kafi Sakr 2024)
				ed) to study hard?
				2018 ? (Gra Bolak 2023)
	4. Sameera Mous			
	11 201110010111000			
		E. W	riting	
6	Write a paragra	ph of about NI	NETY (90) word	s on :
•			dy Yacoub"	
	** **** * ** *** ****		*** ****************************	THE STREET, THE SHEET SHEET AND PARTIES.
	****** **** *** ****** ******** * ***		,	

	********* ******* * ****** * ***		. ,,.,	* ** * * * * * * * * * * * * * ****** *
	************************			*****

	***** ***** ****** ******* *******			. ,
	4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4	er so to tibibaba + +> 4+2+444 A344		,>,,,,,,,,
	*** * * *****),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
				1101 11777 17774 177 111 110 1 177 1417 141
			Chaptin Fatour	2023 / Suga - North Suga 2024)

أختيار طلاب الثروم الشريق

الاستماع في نهاية الكناب

and took them to the garden outside the house and mother followed her to see what she would do with put them under an orange tree. Salma's father and the books. They were surprised when they saw her nterested in reading. She chose many big books Salma's father thought that his daughter was standing on the books to pick some oranges. 2. When he was , he played in a junior competition. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: b. handball c. volleyball d. tennis d. five Ibrahim and Ahmed are talking about their c, eight b, nine . Ahmed loves playing. a football d. seven

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Salma's father happy at first?

2. Why did Salma need the books ?

Ahmed: My favourite sport is football. What about you?

Ahmed: Hello, Ibrahim.

brahim: (1)

brahim: Hello, Ahmed.

avourite sports.

Ahmed: Well, chess is a great hobby.

lbrahim: (2)

brahim: (3)

Ahmed: Yes, I won Alexandria chess competition last year.

brahim: When is the next competition?

Ahmed: Tomorrow.

What does the underlined word "them" refer to?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. Salma is years old now.

..... when they saw her c. eighteen d. eighty standing on the books. 5. Salma's parents were b. ten a. eight

(Al-Ashar - Favoum Zone 2023) c. angry d. lazy a. surprised b. happy

1. do - job - does - manager - What - a - nursing? 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

2. Most famous people were born poor families.

1. Some words me like "too" and "two" when I

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

d, confuse

c. mean

b, keep

hear them.

a, learn

The person who gives money to help people or places

is called a.....

a. scientist

c. into

b. patron c. surgeon d. senior

4. he use to play tennis when he was young?.

5. They didn't to the club three days ago.

b. going

g. went

2. I - a school - Last week, - did - project.

3. isn't - anything - A hero - of - scared.

4. think - teachers - heroes - are - that - I - all .

d. Doing

c. Did

b. Do

a. Does

d. goes

"An Egyptian hero"

then, went into her father's library and asked him if

she could borrow some books.

Ten years ago, Salma who was eight years old

4. Read the following, then answer the questions:

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

تدريبات طبقا لنموذج امتحال محافظة بورسعيد الاختياري

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to 	Ola : (5)	20 A 20 A 20 B 20 B 20 B 20 B 20 B 20 B
complete the following dialogue:	a. We can go to school.	
Ola and Mona are talking about heroes.	b. We can use the internet.	iet.
Ola : Hello Mona! Nice to meet you.	c. We don't need more time.	ime.
Mona:(1)	d. I like my school.	
1, too	Mona: The internet is just a way that helps	y that helps
c. I'm fine d. You are good	teachers do their job better.	tter.
Ola : Can I ask you a question ?	• Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the	e word(s) in the
Mona: (2)	brackets from a, b, c or d:	
4 4	6. My favourite team (win) the match last Friday.	n) the match last
Old :(3)		b. won
a. What do you want to be?	vinning	d. winning
b. What do you think about teachers?	7 Marriago ologiani	a tavi driver five
c. Why are teachers heroes?		(asing) to be a taxi alivel live
d. Where do teachers work?		
Mona: I think that all teachers are heroes.	d. uses b. use c.	c. is using d. used
Olo · (4)	8. I used to play basketball, but I (didn't) r	:I(didn't)
	a. don't b. wasn't c. did	did d. is
b. What do you mean?	9. A police officer (visit) the school today.	he school today.
c. What do you have?	a. visits b.	b. are visiting
d. What are you doing?	c. visited d.	d. is visited

d. used	(didn't) now. d. is	l today.	ing	_	
c. is using	. 70	(visit) the school today.	b. are visiting	d. is visited	
b. use	basketball, b. wasn't	9 0 0 0 0			
a. uses	8. I used to play basketball, but I a. don't b. wasn't c. di	9. A police officer.	a. visits	c. visited	

anything.

Mona: I mean without teachers, we wouldn't learn





Listening

on lesson 1 SB page 32

Dalia: Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history . Can I ask you some questions?

Dad : Of course, what do you want to know? Dalia: Where did you live when you were

a child? Was it in Luxor?

Dad: No, I moved to Luxor when I was a teenager. When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

Dalia: Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

Dad : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents . We

used to live in my grandparents' house.

Dalia: What time did you usually get up?

Dad : Very early! On a school day, I got up at about 4.30 am!

Dalia: Really? Why did you get up so early?

Dad : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me

an hour to get there.

Dalia: How did you travel to school?

Dad : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then. Dalia: What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

Dad : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.

(1) تاريخ العائلة ﴿ (2) قَرية



on lesson 2 SB page 33

Life in Antarctica(1)

Why did you come to work in Antarctica?

I used to work as a scientist at a university. Then I saw a job advertisement of for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and I thought it looked interesting.



....... (1) القارة القطبية الجنوبية | (2) إعلان عن وظيفة

b What is daily life like in Antarctica?

Some things are the same as home! We usually get up at about 7 am.

We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 am and finish at 5 pm. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

What is different about life in Antarctica?

At the moment it is winter⁽³⁾ so it is dark⁽⁴⁾ all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy⁽⁵⁾. Only 20 people are working here now. I miss⁽⁶⁾ my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience⁽⁷⁾!

(3) فصل الشتاء (4) مظلم (5) عاصف (6) يفتقد (7) تجربة رائعة

· on lesson 2 SB page 33

Hi!

How are you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play? What did your favourite toy use to be? What did you use to eat? I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon!

Max

(Listening

Lesson 1 WB page 93

My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through⁽¹⁾ an attractive park⁽²⁾ on a school trip. There are three



teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large lake . I am in the foreground , with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle and Lamia is on the right. My twin cousins Azza and Randa are in the background . Azza has a dark blue jumper and a striped school bag.

(5) المنتصف / الوسط	(4) المقدمة	(3) بحيرة	(2) منتزه رائع	(۱) ِ يمشى خلال
	(9) وقلم/مخطط		(7) أزرق داكن	



Based on Units 1,2&3

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.
نم بتقییم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت علی● غیر جید ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

d. wore

b. wearing c. wear

very hot. a. wears • ممتاز • جید جدا جید • غیر جید

	d. carpet	p out the	d. maps		d. had		d. use	use it is
the	c. castle	on the windows to keep out the	c. floors	, please?	c. having d. had	o to school?	c. uses	today beca
e yourself in	b. mirror c. castle	on the win	a. carpets b. curtains c. floors d. maps	a cup of tea, please?	b. has	u to gc	a. used b. using c. uses	a jacket
6. You can see yourself in the	a. lamp	7. He put light.	a. carpets	8. Can I	a. have	9. How did you to go to school?	a. used	10. Fadu isn't a jacket today because it is

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4. Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90)words on:

"A person you are proud of "

d. terrible

4. Our computer is broken. Can you......... it?
a. mix b. repair c. do d. text
5. Shall I help you........ these bags? - No, thanks.
a. sail b. pump c. carry d. infect

Rahma:(5)	
2. Choose the correct answer from a, b,	, b,
1. My parents tell me that is very im	y ir
a. infection b. pollution	ion
c. smoking d. education	tion
2. The is the area outside a city, wh	, wh
are farms and lots of nature.	
a. infection b. charity	7
c. countryside d. city	
3. That story is; you should read it	ad it
a. fantastic b. bad c. boring	
4. Our computer is broken. Can you	
the state of the s	

ere there

portant.

Heba is telling Rahma about her last weekend.

Complete the following dialogue:

: Where did you go last Friday?

3ahma: (1)

Heba

Heba

Rahma: I went to my uncle's farm by car.

Heba

Rahma: I helped my uncle with his work.

: How long did you stay there?

: Did you enjoy there?

Rahma: (4)....

Heba



Into the past

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 95:101

Unit Objectives:

• Reading:

Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia

· Writing:

A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site

• I Istenina

A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate

Speaking:

Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism

• Language :

Past continuous

· Life Skills:

Self-management; Critical thinking

- Values :

Coexistence values; Responsible behaviour

· Issues:

Environmental and developmental issues



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

historic (adj)	تاریخی	statue (n)	تمثال
arch (n)	قوس / قنطرة	stadium (n)	استاد [ریاضی]
castle (n)	قلعة / حص	ruins (n)	بقایا / آثار
mosque (n)	مسجد	awesome (adj)	رائع / مدهش
museum (n)	متحف	entrance (n)	مدخل
pyramid (n)	هرم	view (n)	منظر طبيعي / رؤية
theatre (n)	مسرح	ancient (adj)	قديم جدًا / عتيق
temple (n)	معبد	facts (n)	حفائق

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

facts - awesome - Ruins - Stadium - Temple

- 1. Cairois the home of the Egyptian football.
- 2. are incomplete ancient buildings.
- 4. Karnak ... is a great ancient building.

Lesson 4

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

touch (ed) (v) properly (adv)		walls (n) complete (d) (v) , (ad	حوائط / أسوار يكمل / كامل (dj)
straight away (adv)	في الحال/على الفور		پسین راتس طریق
packed (adj)	معبأ	picnic (n)	نزهة [في الهواء الطلق]
culture (n)	ثقافة	finally (adv)	في النهاية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمى	pool (n)	حمام سباحة
objects (n)	أشياء	Muslims (n)	المسلمون

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

Roman (adj)	روماني [من العصر الروماني]	race (n)	سباق
hill (n)	تل	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح / يفسر
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصي / يرشح
guide (n)	مرشد	review (n)	مقال نقدي
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	amazing (adj)	مدهش

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Leptis Magna	Djemila
دينة لبدة العظمى (موقع أثرى في ليبيا)	مدينة جميلة [موقع أثرى في الجزائر]
دينة البتراء (في الأردن) Petra	المسرح الجنوبي (في الأردن] The South Theatre
نزيرة فيلة (في أسوان) Elephantine Island	أهرامات دهشور The Pyramids of Dahshur
The Roman Theatre	معبد الكرنك [مدينة الأقصر] Karnak Temple
مسرح الروماني (في مدينة الإسكندرية)	National Stadium الاستاد الوطنى
دينة أبيدوس (موقع أثرى في سوهاج) Abydos	the Sacred Lake البحيرة المقدسة

Different countries & cities

دول ومدن مختلفة

Mali	دولة مالي	Baalbeck	مدينة بعلبك [في لبنان]
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Jerash	مدينة جرش (في الأردن)
Lebanon	دولة لبنان	Djenne	مدينة جني (في مالي)
Jordan	دولة الأردن	Libya	دولة ليبيا

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

stadium	a place where you can watch a sports match	استاد ریاضی
arch	an entrance to another placea curved (half circle) part of buildings	قنطرة
mosque	a place where Muslims pray	مسجد
castle	a place which has very strong walls	فلعة
ruins	not a complete buildingthe broken parts that are left of a building or complete.	حطام / أطلال / آثار ity:
historic	concerning history or connected with the past	تاريخي
awesome	amazing very good / great	مدهش/مذهل

UNIT FOUR

guide	a person who can show you round a place	مرشد سیاحی
ancient	very old	فديم / أثرى
view	what you can see from the top of something	منظر طبيعي - رؤية
touch	put your hand (or another part of your body) on	يلمس something

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms ar	nd Antonyr	ns	ضادات	مترادفات ومت
Word a	الكلم	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
strong	فوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف
national	فومى	local	international	عالمي/دولي
ancient	فديم	very old	modern/new	حديث
go in	يدخل	enter	go out	بخرج
amazing	مدهش	awesome - wonderful	bad	سيئ

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية			
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
– ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل تكون الصفة من الفعل	building interesting amazing	مبنی شیق مذهل
- ic	تكون الصفة من الاسم	historic	ثاريخي
- ance	تكون الاسم من الفعل	entrance	مدخل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's go in, it's getting cloudy. "Go in" means "..... a. protect c. recommend d. pack b. enter 2. To get the adjective from the word "history", we add the suffix "......". b. - ful C. - icd. – ance a. – ing d. modern a. old b. awesome c. national 4. "Weak" and "....." are opposites. d. tinu a. good b. strong c. lazy

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 historic historical
 - تاريخي / مهم تاريخيًا (متعلق بالأماكن والمباني التاريخية) * historic (adi)
 - This building is very old. It's historic.
 - * historical (adj)

تاریخی (متعلق بالتاریخ ودراسته)

I've read a historical book.

(SB page 37)

- 2 ruin
 - * ruin (v)

يخرب - يُدمر

- Azza ruined her mobile. It works no more.
- * ruin (s) (n)

بقايا المبنى - الأطلال

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing.

(SB page 36)

3 so that + Jeló + can/could + inf. ...

لکی

▶ ⁸ We must protect historic places **so that** people **can** visit in the future.

(SB page 37)

4 recommend

یوصی ہے / یُزکی

بتبعها اسم أو فعلا مضاف له ing-

- - I recommend visiting the Egyptian Museum.
 - I recommend a visit to the Egyptian Museum.

(WB page 96)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepos	oositions	
leave straight away	يغادر على الفور	entrance to	مدخل إلى	
drop litter	يلقى القمامة	from the top of	من على قمة	
a day out	يوم بالخارج	interested in	مهتم بـ	
It was great fun.	لقد كانت ممتعة جدًا.	في الوقت المناسب [قبل الموعد المحدد] in time		
It's a good idea to + (inf.) إنها فكرة جيدة أن		excited about	متحمس بخصوص	
It's a long drive	جولة طويلة بالسيارة	for the whole day	ليوم كامل	
It is easy to	إنه من السهل	walk for a long way through مشی علی امتداد الطریق من خلال		
It dates to	يرجع تاريخه إلى	مط] on time	في الوقت المحدد (بالضب	

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson (1) SB page 35

- The teacher is talking about visiting the Pyramids.
- It is important to plan the trip(1) properly
- 3. The teacher is talking about the rules of the trip.
 - 4. Students must arrive on time.
- 5. It's a long drive to Giza from the school.
 - Students must bring a packed lunch⁽²⁾.
- 7. Students must bring a hat and a bottle of water.
- 8. The pyramids are important to the history and culture[3] of our country.
- 9. Students mustn't climb them or sit on them.
 - 10. Students mustn't drop litter.
- 11. The teacher asks if there are questions about the trip.

Lesson [2] SB page 36

A. An amazing day out

- Maged had an amazing day out⁽⁴⁾.
- Maged visited Abydos last week. He went with his cousins.
- They saw amazing art, temples and ruins⁽⁵⁾ in the desert. 4. Maged is not usually interested in history.
 - 5. This place is awesome and really amazing for him.

B. Get a guide:

- 1. Laila is from Assiut.
- 2. The ruins at the Karnak Temple 6 were amazing.
- The place is big, so you need hours to walk around.

4. It's a good idea to get a guide(7)

The guide tells you about the history.

C. Go back to Roman times!

- 1. Samir is from Giza,
- 2. He visited the Roman theatre(8) in Alexandria.
 - He went with his cousins last week.
- 4. There are also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum there.

Lesson [2] 5B page 37

- 1. Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. 2. It is more than 2,000 years old.
- The first thing you see is the entrance⁽⁹⁾.
 - 4. The arch(10) is very tall.
- 5. You must buy a ticket before you go in.
- 6. The stadium is for Roman horse races⁽¹¹⁾,
 - 8. Jerash has three Roman theatres. You can watch races there today.
- 9. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre.
 - 10. 5.000 people can sit there.

11. There is an amazing view of the city from there.

(1) رحلة قصيرة إ) jál / tph (5)	(9) occi.
(2) وجبة غذاء معباه 🌣	(6) معبد الكرنك	(01) down / diche
वैक्रीकी (३)	ि व्यक्तिर	(11) سياقات ذيعا
(1) يوم بالذارج	(7) مرشد (8) المسرح الروماني	ت ذيها.

تلويه :) الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة ففرات انشائية اخرى: * A visit to a tourist place * The Pyramids * A famous ancient city * Protecting historic places



Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 1SB page 35

Teacher: I'm sure you're all excited about visiting the puramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan our trip properly, so I need to talk to you about rules. On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that we can leave straight away. It's a long drive to Giza from the school. We are going to be away from "school for the whole day , so you must bring a packed lunch . It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle





🗘 يتحدث إلى

🔒 في الوقت المحدد

- 🛂 على القور

🤫 جولة طويلة بالسيارة

6 بعیدًا عن

السوم کامل - 8، وجبة غذاء وعبأة

- 9- يلقى القوامة

of water. Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history and culture of our country. We must help to protect them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter". We must bring all of our rubbish home with us. So, are there any questions about the trip?

Listening skill

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise It is a long ... to Giza from the school.

b. dive c. drive

Reading

on Lesson 1SB page 35



You mustn't eat or drink. You must be quiet.



You must listen to the teacher. You mustn't be noisy⁽¹⁾ in class.



You mustn't touch the stones(2). You must put your rubbish(3) in the bin⁽⁴⁾.



You must have a shower⁽⁵⁾ before uou swim. You mustn't run near the pool (6)

(1) صاخب / مزعج (2) أحجار (3) قمامة (4) سنة المعملات (5) دُش (6) حمام سباحة

on Lesson 1 WB page 95

It is a long walk to the temple so you must all listen carefully. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it **safely**⁽¹⁾. However, you must stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run there. When we arrive at the

temple⁽²⁾, you mustn't **touch**⁽³⁾ any of the **buildings**⁽⁴⁾ because it is very old. We can eat our **picnic lunches**⁽⁵⁾ after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget to write about what you see!

(1) بأمان (2) معبد (3) يلمس (4) مبان (5) وجبات الغداء الخاصة بالنزهة

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

An amazing day out!(1) ★★★★★

I visited Abydos last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins in the desert.
I'm not usually very interested in (2) history, but this place is awesome!
It is really amazing!



Maged, Cairo

Get a guide⁽³⁾ $\star \star \star \star$

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around it. It's also a good idea to set a guide to tell you all about the history. Laila, Assiut

Go back to (6) Roman times! $\star \star \star \star \star$

I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It is easy to (7) imagine what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues and the ruins of (8) a temple in the museum there. It was great fun (9).

Samir, Giza

(4) يتجول (5) إنها فكرة جيدة ان	(3) يحصل على مرشد	(2) ممتم بـ	(1) يوم بالخارج	
(9) لقد كانت ووتعة جدًا	(8) بقایا من	(7) إنه من السمل أن	(6) يرجع / يعود إلى	7150-0000000-10000150-1000-1000-1000-100

on Lesson 2 SB page 37

The City of Jerash By Azza

Jerash is a Roman⁽¹⁾ city in Jordan⁽²⁾. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance(3) to the city. The arch(4) is very tall. You must buy a ticket(5) before you go in.

The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium(6) is for Roman horse races(7). You can watch races there today.

Jerash has three Roman theatres(8). The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

This **temple**⁽⁹⁾ is on a hill. There is an amazing view⁽¹⁰⁾ of the citu from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic (11) places ground the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.



questions:

- Extracting information

استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. How old is the city of Jerash?

- It is more than 2,000 years old. Practise 2. What can you see from the temple?

(6) استاد ریاضی	(5) تذكرة	(4) قنطرة / قوس	(3) مدخل	(2) دولة الأردن	(1) رومانی
		(10) منظر طبیعی			(7) سباقات

on Lesson 2 WB page 96

My trip to Petra

I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than two thousand years old! You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through (2) the old city and the views from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be

careful! Our guide explained how old the temples are: they are really ancient. I really enjoyed our day there and recommend a visit!







• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ I	(ey	voca	bu	lary
-----	-----	------	----	------

1	. A lot of Muslims	go to to	pray.	
	a, entrances	b. castles	c. mosques	d, markets
2	. Salah El-din buil	It the to	protect Cairo.	
	a. stadium	b. hospital	c. castle	d. arch
3	3. The arch can be	a/an to	another place.	
	a, entrance	b. subject	c. scene	d. project
4	. It isn't a comple	te building. They'r	e just	
		- 1 3		d. castles
5	. You can enjoy w			
	a. cinema	b. stadium	c. theatre	d. hospital
SB,	WB & Previous Exa	ms		
6	. We can see big	in the Eg	yptian Museum.	
	a, statues	b. stations	c. gardens	d. parks
			(0	Cairo - El-Mostaqbal 2024)
7	. 👫 It's a good ic	dea to get a/an	to tell you	u about the history.
	a, guide	b. policeman	c. engineer	d. driver
			(Cairo - Al-Basateen 2022)
8	. 🖙 I really enjoy	ed our day in Petr	a and recommen	ded a/an!
	g. view	b. visit	c. entrance	d. arch
				(Beni Suef – Beba 2024)
9	. The Pyramids of I	Dahshur are	, I went there	e last year and
	I loved them.		,	rhiera - Damanhour 2024)
	a. awesome	b. terrible	c. boring	d. bad
10	. You can enjoy w	- '		
	a. museum	b. library	c. stadium	d. castle
			(Monofia - Tala 2023	l / Giza - Hawamdia 2024)

El-Moasser Exercises

Speaking

11. It's important	tohisto	oric places from thi	ieves.
a. destroy	b. delete	c. protect	d. sell
12. You should	well when	you visit historic plo	ices in other countries
Definitions			
13. A/An	is an entrance t	o another place.	
a. view	b. race	c. arch	d. fact
14. The "	is the person who	o can show you rou	nd a place.
a. doctor	b. guide	c. nurse	d. teacher
Language Notes	, Expressions 8	k Prepositions	
15. The Great Pyro	amid is an impor	tant mor	nument.
16. I'm interested	readin	g short stories.	
a. on	b. at	C. in	d. of
	a. destroy 12. You should a. behave Definitions 13. A/An a. view 14. The " a. doctor Language Notes 15. The Great Pyro a. historical 16. I'm interested	d. destroy b. delete 12. You should well when a behave b. enter Definitions 13. A/An is an entrance to be race 14. The "" is the person when a doctor be guide Language Notes, Expressions & 15. The Great Pyramid is an importable historical be historic 16. I'm interested reading well when a doctor be guide	12. You should well when you visit historic place. a. behave b. enter c. imagine Definitions 13. A/An is an entrance to another place. a. view b. race c. arch 14. The "" is the person who can show you rou a. doctor b. guide c. nurse Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions 15. The Great Pyramid is an important mor a. historical b. historic c. historian 16. I'm interested reading short stories.

Asking and answering questions about historic places:

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الأماكن التاريخية:

Questions



Answers



مهارة التحدث

- 1. What can we learn from historic places ?
 د. ماذا يمكننا أن نتعلم من الأماكن التاريخية ؟
- 2. How should we behave when we visit historic places in other countries?

 الأماكن التاريخية للبلاد الأخي ؟
- 3. Which historic places did you visit and you loved?
 - ٣. أى الأماكن التاريخية التي قمت بزيارتها وأعجبتك ؟

- VIII
- We can learn about the history of our country and other countries.
 بمكننا أن نتعلم عن تاريخ بلدنا والبلاد الأخرى.
- We should protect them so that people can visit in the future.
 - ينبغى علينا أن نحميها حتى يتمكن الناس من زيارتها مستقبلا.
- The Pyramids of Dahshur are awesome! I went there with my family last year and we loved them.
 - أهرامات دهشور رائعة. ذهبت إليها مع أُسرتي العام الماضي وأعجبنا بها.

القواعد التي يجب اتباعها عند زيارة مكان ما Rules you must follow on visiting a place القواعد التي يجب اتباعها عند زيارة مكان ما باستخدام الجمل التالية :

- داخل المتحف، يجب عليك عدم ملامسة الأشياء. In a museum, you mustn't touch the objects.
- يجب أن تضع المخلفات الحاصة بك في السلة. . . You must put your rubbish in the bin.
- 3. In a temple, you mustn't run.

داخل المعبد، لا يجب أن تجري.

4. In a temple, you mustn't forget to write about what you see.

داخل المعبد، لا يجب أن تنسّى أن تكتب عما ترى.

5. You must protect the historic place so that people can visit it in the future, too. ريجب أن تحمى المكان التاريخي حتى يستطيع الباس زيارته في المستقبل أيضًا.



مهارة الكتابة

مكان تاريخي قديم قمت بزيارته An ancient historic place you visited

- لقد ذهبت إلى معبد الكرنك الأسبوع الماضي. .Last week, I went to the Karnak Temple
- I went there with my family.

لقد ذهبت إلى هناك مع أسرتي.

3. It is one of the most important historic places in the world.

إنه أحد أهم الأماكن التاريخية ذات الأهمية في العالم.

4. It's a famous place in Luxor.

إنه مكان مشهور بمدينة الأقصر.

- 5. You need a few hours to walk around it. تحتاج إلى ساعات قليلة للتجول حول المعبد.
- 6. It's a good idea to get a guide.

إنها لفكرة جيدة أن ترافق مرشد.

- يمكن للمرشد أن يخبرك بكل شيء عن التاريخ. . T. A guide can tell you all about the history,
- 8. You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples. يمكنك مشاهدة الكثير من الأشياء الرائعة، مثل التماثيل القديمة والمعابد.
- 9. You mustn't touch any of the statues and the ruins of a temple there. يجب عليك ألا تلمس أي من التماثيل وبقايا آثار المعبد هناك.
- كانت بقابا الآثار في معبد الكرنك مذهلة. .10. The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing
- 11. We really enjoyed our visit!.

لقد استمتعنا حقًا بزيارتنا !.

المسرح الروماني Roman theatre

1. I visited the Roman theatre in Alexandria yesterday.

لقد قمت بزيارة المسرح الروماني في مدينة الإسكندرية أمس.

2. It is easy to imagine what life in Roman times was like there.

إنه من السهل أن تتخيل كيف كانت الحياة في العصور الرومانية هناك.

3. There were also statues and the ruins of a temple in the museum.

كان يوجد أيضًا تماثيل وبقايا آثار معبد في المتحف.

4. It was great fun.

كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

III Language

Remember

1. must + inf. بجبأن

We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do.

تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شئ ما.

ex. - You must arrive on time.

2. mustn't + inf. يجبالا

We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.

تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى [يجب ألا] للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة (المنع أو الحظر) لفعل شئ ما.

ex. - You mustn't talk in the library.

3. We use the infinitive without "to" after must / mustn't:

لاحظ أنيا نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد (must / mustn't).

ex. - You must listen to the teacher.

- You mustn't climb the pyramids.

4. Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question:

Must + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. * Must I park here? - Yes, you must.

- No, you mustn't.

(B) Wh-question:

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

ex. * What must I do to my parents ? - You must obey نطبع them.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB . WB & Previous Exams

1. You eat or drink in the school library.
a. can b. must c. mustn't

(Cairo El-Maadı 2024) d. should

UNIT FOUR

2. Students	follow their s	chool rules. F	ayoum - East Favoum 2023)
a. are	b. have	c. must	d. had
3 I vis	it my uncle today i	? - No, you mustn't.	
a. Should	b. Can	c. Must	d. Will
4. 176 What mus	st or mustn't you	in a histor	ic place?
a. doing	b. does	c. do	d. did
El-Moasser Exercise	S		
5. You	park here. It's not	allowed.	
a. must	b. mustn't	c. shouldn't	d. haven't
6. Eating fast is	bad for you. You	eat more s	lowly.
a. must to	b. must	c. have	d. will have
7. You	talk to your classn	nates during lesson	
a. can	b. must	c. mustn't	d. haven't
2. Complete the	sentences with t	he correct form o	of the word(s) in
brackets:			
SB , WB & Previous I	Exams		
1. What	(can't) I do befo	re the exam? - You	ı must revise well.
		(F	ayoum - East Fayoum 2024)
2. You (r	nust) touch the stat	tues in the museum.	(Catro El-Salam 2024)
3. Students	must (ar	rives) at school on	time.
4. We You must	n't (runn	ing) in a museum.	
El-Moasser Exercise	es		
5. We	(mustn't) look afte	er our health.	
6. I (no	ot must) make noi	se during the lesso	on.
7. You must	(been) care	ful when you cross	the road.
8. Must I come	early ? - Yes, you	(mustn't).	
9. Noran mustn	't (drives) carelessly.	
10. A: Why mustr	n't I (par	king) here ?	
B: Because it's	s against the law.		

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs E-m.

80 Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & E-mails

استعجارا والمساولي

	Step 1 Vocabulary	Speaking Speaking Speaking	Step 3 Writing Step 3 Step 3 Step 3 Step 3 Step 4 Step 5 Step
	Read and complete:	Complete the following dialogue:	Write a paragraph on:
pa	1. A: Shall we go to the?	Hani is suggesting going to the Citadel: Hani : Hi Nader. Shall we go to the Citadel?	"A historic place you visited"
USIA	विविक्	Nader: (1)	
noá a	B:Yes, that's a good idea.	Hani: (2)	
c bjac	2. A:Who the citadel?	Hani : Great! (3) ? Nader: Salah Al-Din Al Ayoubi built it.	
HOTSI	B: Salah Al-Din Al Ayoubi.	Hani: Why did he build it?	
H A	3. A:Why did he build it?	Hani : To protect Cairo! Is it a historic building?	
	S: To . Cairo!	Nader: (5) (Benna Delengal 2023	Sharkia Hebia 2023,
	1. A: Can I ask you some	lping a tourist	"The Karnak Temple"
	questions?	Tourist: Excuse me. Can I ask you some	
əidi	بالتاكيد	questions?	
Ten	2. A: Is the Karnak Temple	Tourist: (2)?	
Jet	from here?	Sama : The Pyramids are in Giza	
Kan	B:Yes, it is.	Tourist: Are they far from here?	
ЭЦІ	3. A: How can I go ?	Tourist: How can I go there?	
	همان	Sama : (4)	
	b: by train,	Sama The Ancient Fauntians huilt them	(Cairo - New Cairo 2022)

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

Complete the following dialogue:	
A tourist is asking Emad about the Karnak Temple	in Luxor.
Tourist: Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?	
Emad : (1)	
Tourist: Where is the Karnak Temple?	
Emad : (2)	
Tourist: (3)?	
Emad : Yes. It is far from here.	
Tourist: (4)?	
Emad : By train.	
Tourist: Thank you so much.	
	Beheira Shoubrakheit 2022)
Read the following, then answer the question	
Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more tha	-
When you go there, the first thing you see is the er	_
The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before y	
enjoyed watching sport. This is stadium for Roman	
watch races there today. Jerash has three Roman	
theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people	
temple is on a hill. There is an amazing view of the	
I think it is important to learn about historic place	
We must protect them so that people can visit in t	ne ruture, too. A El Mahalla El Kubra 2024)
	N El Mahalla El Kubra 2024)
a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:	
1. The underlined word "there" refers to the	
a. North Theatre b. South Theatre c. stadium	d. temple
2. There are three Romanin Jerash. a. Theatres b. Races c. Entrances	d. Cities
a. Theatres b. Races c. Entrances 3. The underlined word "watch" means "".	d. Cities
a. play b. take c. make	d. see
1 3	u. see
b. Answer the following questions:	
4. Give a suitable title for the passage .	
5 What can you say from the temple 2	1
5. What can you see from the temple?	
6 Why do you think it is important to protect histo	oric places?

3	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
•	1. Good students should follow the school (Gharbia East Tanta 2024)
	g roles b rules c lines d ruins
	2. Ayman is interested in horse
(a theatres b temples c columns d races
•	3. Egypt has a lot of sites which date back to the pharaohs.
	(Sharkia - Fakus 2024)
	a. ancient b. modern c. recent d. new
•	4. We visited the at the Karnak Temple yesterday. It was great fun.
ŀ	a rules b. ruins c. pyramids d. tickets
•	5. I'd love to see that film. The says it is very funny.
	a. review b. lesson c. history d. research
•	6. I that you do more exercises regularly.
	a. touch b. comment c. recommend d. forget
	7. People wear sunglasses to their eyes from the sun. (Gharbia Kotom 2022)
	a. affect b. protect c. infect d. give
٠	8. Be careful! You eat healthy food. (Alexandria Montazah 2023)
	a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
•	9. 1 In the museum, you touch the objects.
	a. must b. can c. mustn't d. don't
•	10 . All the students must to their teachers at school.
	(Beheira - Kafr El-Dwar 2024)
	a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened
4	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
	1. You (mustn't) put your rubbish in the bin. (Sohag - Juhainah 2024) 2. 1 Must we (following) the rules?
	3. 1/1/3 You mustn't (runs) in a museum. (Gharbia Samanoud 2022)
	4 (Can) I get on a train with a ticket? - Yes, you must.
	(Giza - Kerdasa 2024)
K	Write an email of about NINETY(90) words:
岩	
Ī	To your friend Omar about an amazing day out. Your name is Hussien and your email address is hussien@gmail.com. Your friend's email
	address is omar@gmail.com.
	datess is ornar@gmail.com.
	New message × Va.
	← → C & Secure Notices
5	From:
	To:
П	
	Subject:
	Subject:



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

**			
	Museum objects	أشياء توجد بالمتحف	
tool (n)	أداة	mask (n)	قناع
vase (n)	زْهرية (إناء للزينة)	figure (n)	تمثال (لشخصية بارزة)
bowl (n)	وعاء / سلطانية	ring (v), (n)	يرن / خاتم
pot (n)	إناء [من الفخار]	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
coin (n)	عملة معدنية		
	Materials	مواد خام	
papyrus (n)	نبات / ورق البردي	wood (n)	خشب
clay (n)	صلصال	metal (n)	معدن
	Museums in Egyp	متاحف فی مصر <mark>اد</mark>	
Museum of Islamic	متحف الفن الإسلامي Art:	Museum of History	متحف التاريخ
Museum of Arts	متحف الفنون		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

coin - figures - papyrus - vase - clay

- 1. These bowls are made of
- 2. The Ancient Egyptians used for writing.
- 3. The tomb مقبرة contains many golden

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 97

web page (n)	صفحة على الإنثرنت	designs (n)	تصميمات
magazine (n)	مجلة	equipment (n)	معدات
opening times (n)	أوقات العمل	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
price (n)	سعر	model (n)	نموذج / مثال مجسم
doorbell (n)	جرس الباب	cover (ed) (v), (n)	يغطي / غطاء

sculpture(n)	تمثال منحوث / فن النحت	except (prep)	باستثناء / ما عدا
ticket officer (n)	موظف حجز التذاكر		عدَّاء / متسابق
customer (n)	زبون / عميل	call (ed) (v)	ينادي / يتصل تليفونيًا

Lesson 4	SB pages 40 WB page 98
----------	------------------------

			* **
insects (n)	حشرات	senet (n)	(السينيت) لعبة فرعونية قديمة
mirrors (n)	مرايا	chemical (n)	مادة كيميائية
mix (ed) (v)	يخلط/ يمزج	mosquitos (n)	بعوض/ ناموس
ingredients (n)	مقادیر / مکونات	wind (n)	رياح

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
ring	يرن/يدق	rang	rung
hold	يمسك	held	held
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
keep away		kept away	kept away

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

coins	• small, flat pieces of metal, usually round in shape that we use as money • pieces of money made of metal
figure	a model of a person / a picture of someone نموذج أو تمثال [بشرى]
mask	something people wear to cover or protect their face فناع
necklace	jewellery you wear around your neck عفد / فلادة
tool	a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things أداة / آلة
vase	a pot used for holding flowers [إناء للزينة]
clay	a type of mud (earth and water). It is soft when it is wet, but becomes hard when it is dry, and you can make things with it
design	a pattern used to decorate something تصميم
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants that was used in ancient Egypt ورق البردى
senet	an Ancient Egyptian game [السينيت (لعبة فرعونية قديمة]

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms ar	d Antonym	S	بادات	مترادفات ومتض
Word a	الكلم	المرادف Synonym	Antonyn	المضاد
huge	ضخم	enormous	tiny (حجم	ضئيل (صغير ال
adult	بالغ	grown-up	child - kid	طفل
certainly	بالتأكيد	surely - definitely	probably	من المحتمل

Prefixes & Suffixes		وناهية	مقاطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
un-	تعطى العكس	unpopular	غير شاثع
– ment	تكون الاسم	equipment	معدات
– er	تكون الاسم	officer runner	موظف عداء
- ic	تكون الصفة	Islamic	اسلامي



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

with "	sure about someti ".	ning, we can star	t our sentence	
a. Certainly	b. Probably	c. Finally	d. Firstly	
2. The synonym	of the word "adult	"is"		
a. kid	b. grown-up	c. old	d. child	
3. To get the oppo	osite from the word	"popular", we add	the prefix "	
a. dis-	b. un-	c. im-	d. in-	
4. "Enormous" a	nd "" are:	synonyms.		
a. huge	b. weak	c. tiny	d. tall	
5. To get the nou	n from the word "e	equip", we add th	e suffix "".	•
a. – ance	b. – ment	c. –ous	d. –er	

General Notes on Reading & Listening

11 tool - instrument

* tool

عدة (أدوات بسيطة تستخدم لعمل مهمة)

- A hammer is a tool.
- * instrument

جماز (أكثر تعقيدًا) / آلة موسيقية / أدوات طبية للإسعاف

- A piano is a musical instrument.
 - The dentist used an instrument to pull out my tooth.

2 made of - made from

* made of

مصنوع من (شئ لا يتغير بعد التصنيع)

- These bowls are made of clay.
- * made from

مصنوع من (شئ يتغير بعد التصنيع)

Glass is made from sand.

(WB page 98)

3 (be) used for + (v + ing) / (be) used to + inf.

يُستخدم في

- Papyrus was used for writing.
 - Clay was **used to make** pots for cooking.

(SB page 40)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Ехр	ressions	Preposition	ns
paint around th	eir eyes	protect from	يحمى من
	يقومون بالطلاء حول أعينهم	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
travel home	يسافر عائدًا إلى أرض الوطن	keep away	يُبعد
mix ingredients	بمزج/يخلط مقادير	on the web page	على صفحة الإنترنت
What's on ?	ما الشئ المعروض؟	walk into the museum	يمشى في المتحف
look good	يبدو جميلا	on the floor	على الأرضية
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	take off my shoes	أقوم بخلع حذائي

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson [3] SB page 39

- . Last Tuesday, Ahmed went to the Museum of Islamic Art¹¹.
 - 2. Ahmed went with his family,
- 3. While waiting to go into the museum, Ahmed saw Amir.
- 4. Ahmed's parents were buying the tickets.
 - Amir and Ahmed found some tall doors. They were looking around the museum.
- 7. The doors had amazing designs⁽²⁾ on them.
- 8. Ahmed wanted to take a photo.
- They stayed in the museum for two hours.
- 11. Amir found Ahmed's bag which he left⁽³⁾ in the museum. While they were travelling home, Amir phoned Ahmed.
 - 12. Amir arrived while Ahmed was taking off⁽⁴⁾ his shoes.
- 3. He gave Ahmed his bag.
- Lesson [4] WB page 98
- 1. Chess pieces are usually made of wood. People use them to play a game.
 - 2. Sunglasses are made of plastic. They protect your eyes from the sun.
- 3. Windows are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away insects(5).
- 4. The mixer(6) is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix ingredients(?) to cook.

Lesson (4) SB page 40

- Objects from the past can help us.
- They help us to understand what life was like.
 - In Ancient Egypt, people used mirrors.
- They used mirrors to paint around eyes. The pain helped to protect their eyes.
 - The paint kept away⁽⁸⁾ insects.
- 7. The mirrors were metal.
- 8. The mirrors had interesting designs.
- 9. The Ancient Egyptians used pots⁽⁹⁾ and bowls⁽¹⁰⁾.
- 10. They were made of clay(11). The clay came from the River Nile.
- 11. People were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls.

12. Ancient Egyptians liked games like senet⁽¹²⁾

- Senet boxes have 30 squares.
- 14. This box is made of wood and is about 3500 years old.
 - Some people didn't have senet boxes. They played by drawing squares on the floor.

(1) الفن الإسلامي	(5) حشرات	(9) لواني من المخار
(2) تصمیمات	(९) झाव	क्रिट्वे (10)
d) (3)	(7) azgulo / adley	CITY OF CITY
(4) <u>رئام</u> (دئاء)	(8) Hat / inig	(13) जिल्ले क्युंक क्युंक क्युंक

تَلُوسُ : ﴿ الجملِ السابِقَةِ نساعدكَ على التعاملِ او كتابةَ فقرات انشائية اخرى: *Objects from the past * Ancient Egyptian objects *The Museum of Islamic Art * Different materials

200





(a) Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Boy:

Last Tuesday, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad!

While my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided what we wanted to see first.



While we were **looking around** the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were **travelling home**, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was **taking off my shoes**! He gave me my bag.

· منحف الفن الإسلامي . يتجول على الأرضية 4 يئتقط صورة 5 يسافر غائدًا إلى المنزل ه أقوم بخلع حذائي



on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Ticket officer(1): Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer (2) : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is

open⁽³⁾?

Ticket officer: Certainly⁽⁴⁾. We open from 9.30 to 6.30 every day except⁽⁵⁾

Friday. We close⁽⁶⁾ then.

Customer : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one

child is, please.

Ticket officer: Of course. Adults⁽⁷⁾ are 150 pounds and children under 12

are 75 pounds.

Customer : Can I buy the tickets⁽⁸⁾ at the museum?

Ticket officer : Yes, or you can buy them **online**⁽⁹⁾.

Customer : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

(1) موظف حجز التذاكر (2) زبون / عميل (3) مفتوح (4) بالتأكيد (5) ما عدا (6) يغلق (7) البالغين (8) تذاكر (9) عبر الإنترنت

Listening

on Lesson 4 WB page 98



1. These are made of wood. People use them to play a game.



2. These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect your eues from the sun.



3. These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep awau insects.



4. This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix ingredients " when theu are cooking.

🕕 تجمی عیناك من 👙 یبعد 🚯 یمرج / پخلط مقادیر



on Lesson 4 SB page 40

Objects from Egypt's past

Objects (1) from the past can help us to understand (2) what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt⁽³⁾, many people used mirrors⁽⁴⁾ to help them paint (5) around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good (6): the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away⁽⁷⁾ insects⁽⁸⁾. The mirrors were metal (9) and had interesting designs (10). Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots⁽¹¹⁾ and bowls⁽¹²⁾ for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay (13), which came from the River Nile (14). While some people were mixing (15) ingredients (16) for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?



(8) حشرات	ونمي/عصي (7)	(6) يبدو جميلًا	(5) يلون	(4) مرایا	(3) مصر القديمة	(2) يفهر	(1) اشیاء
(16) مكونات/مقادير	(15) يخلط	(14) نهر النيل	(13) علصال	(12) أوغية	(11) أواني من الفخار	(10) تحمیمات	(9) معدن

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet(17). Senet boxes have 30 squares(18). This box is made of **wood**⁽¹⁹⁾ and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor. What games are popular(20) in Egypt today?



Answer

the following questions:

فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير -Understanding reference Learn 1. What does the pronoun "They" in the first paragraph refer to?

It refers to objects from the past.

Practise 2. What does the pronoun "they" in the last paragraph refer to?

(17) لغبة فرعونية قديمة

(18) مریمات

(19) خشب (20) محبوب/مشهور

EXERCISE on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

a. mixed

1. Coins are made of c. metal d. clay b. plastic g. wool 2. The Pharaohs were the first to write on d. figure c. metal b. clay a. papyrus 3. I bought a new to hold some flowers in my room. d. garden a. bowl b. mask c. vase 4. She is wearing a nice on her neck. d. coin c. necklace b. shirt a. ring SB , WB & Previous Exams 5. 🖾 Can you tell me the of the ticket, please? d. pound c. price a. coin b. prize (Qalubia · Shebein El Qanater 2024) 6. WB Bees and ants are important....... (Sharkia Belbeis 2024) b. planes c. insects d. guides a. birds (Sharkia - East Zagazig 2024) there. d. patients b. customers c. designers a. figures

8. 1 People the ingredients in big bowls in Ancient Egypt.

b. painted

c. fixed

d. repaired

UNIT FOUR

9 In the museum	n, there are more t	han 2 000	
a. animals		c. objects	
a. doctor	sells tickets b. officer on this building a	c. engineer e really wonderf	d. driver ul.
a. designs	b. pages	c. objects	d. subjects
Definitions			
12 are p		ade of metal.	
a. Cans	b. Coins	c. Pots	d. Bowls
13. A is o	pot used for hold		
a. mask	b. vase		d. mirror
14. A is of things.	piece of equipme	nt you can use to	make or repair
a. tool	b. type	c. table	d. mask
▶ Language Notes	Expressions & I	Prepositions	
15. We should pro	tect ourselves	pollution.	
a. on		c. at	d. in
16. Papyrus was u	sed writi	ng in ancient Egy	ypt.
a. on	b. at	c. for	d. of
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Remember			

Questions 0 **Answers** 1. How can I help you? - I want to know what times the museum is open. ١. كيف يمكنني مساعدتك ؟ - أريد أن أعرف ما أوقات فتح المتحف. 2. Hello, can you tell me what - Certainly./Of course. It's open times the museum is open? from 9:30 to 6:30 every day except Fridays. It's closed then. - بالتأكيد/بالطبع. إنه مفتوحا من السباعة التاسعة "٢. مرحبًا، هل يمكن أن تخبرني عن مواعيد العمل لديكم بالمتحف ؟ والنصف إلى الساعة السادسة والنصف كل يوم ما عدا يوم الجمعة. إنه مغلق في ذلك الوقت.

- 3. I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults and one child is, please.
 - وطفل من فضلك.
- 4. Can I buy the tickets at the museum?
 - هل يمكنني شراء التذاكر من المتحف ؟
- 5. Thank you for your help.
 - ٥. شكرًا لك لمساعدتك.

- It is 150 pounds for adults and children under 12 are 75 pounds.
- إنها بمائة وخمسين جنيها للبالغين وبخمسة وسبعين [٣. أريد أن أعرف كم تكلفة التذكرة لفردين بالغين جنبها للأطفال تحت سن اثنتا عشرة سنة.
 - Yes, or you can buy them online.
 - نعم أو يمكنك شرائها عبر الانترنت.
 - You're welcome.
- على الرحب والسعة.



ممارة الكتابة

جمل تساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية ورسالة البريد الإلكتروني في الورقة الامتحانية.

A visit to the Museum of Islamic Art زيارة إلى متحف الفن الإسلامي

- 1. Last week, I went to the Museum of Islamic Art in Cairo.
 - لقد ذهبت إلى متحف الفن الإسلامي بالقاهرة.
- 2. I went there on a school trip.

- لقد ذهبت إلى هناك في رحلة مدرسية.
- هو أحد أعظم المناحف في العالم. . . 3. It is one of the greatest museums in the world.
- لقد وجدنا حوالي ٤٥٠٠ قطعة أثرية في ٢٥ قاعة. . 85 halls. غطعة أثرية في ٢٥ قاعة. .
- 5. We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. لقد مكثنا في المتحف لمدة ساعتين قبل أن نعود إلى المنزل.

أشياء من مصر في الماضي Objects from Egypt's past

- 1. In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors.
 - في مصر القديمة، استخدم الكثير من الناس المرايا.
- 2. They used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes.
 - استخدموا المرايا لمساعدتهم في الطلاء حول أعينهم.
- 3. The paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun.
 - ساعد الطلاء على حماية أعينهم من الشمس.

4. It also kept away insects.

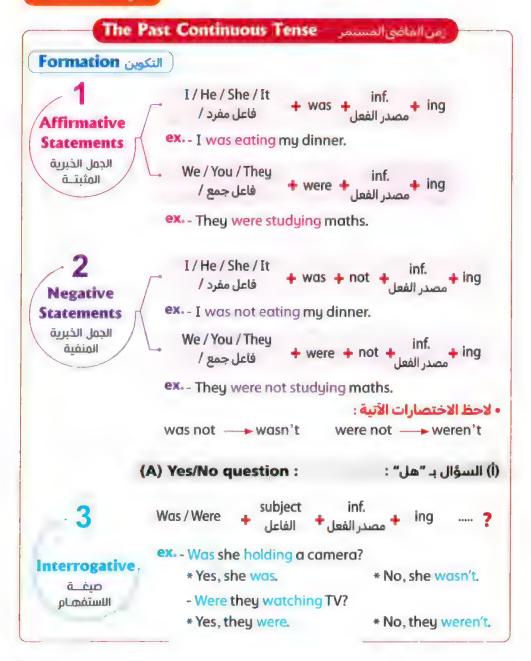
قام أيضا بإيعاد الحشرات.

5. The mirrors were made of metal.

- صنعت المرايا من المعدن.
- 6. They had interesting designs on them. كانت لديهم على المرايا تصميمات مثيرة للاهتمام.

III Language

Remember



(B) Wh-question:

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word was / subject inf. + lng + ?

were + الفاعل + were

- ex. What were you doing at 5 o'clock yesterday?
 - * I was doing my homework.
 - What was she doing yesterday evening?
 - * She was brushing her teeth.

Usage الاستخدام

♦ يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في وقت معين في الماضي.

ex. - I was watching TV at 6 o'clock yesterday.

 ◄ كما يستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر أيضًا للتعبير عن فعل كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر قصير فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex. - While I was doing my homework, the telephone rang.

• لاحظ الآتي :

While/As/Just as past continuous tense past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط زمن الماضي البسيط past simple tense

ex. - While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.

Past Simple Tense while/as/just as past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر بينما/أثناء زمن الماضي البسيط

ex. - I saw my friend Amir while we were waiting to go into the museum.

When past simple tense past continuous tense job limited a sixual

ex. - When I saw Ahmed, he was playing football.

Past Continuous Tense when past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط عندما زمن الماضى المستمر

ex. - Ali was reading a book when the light went out.

Add to your knowledge

• أضف إلى معلوماتك :

ا. لاحظ إذا لم يتبع (While) فاعل فيكون الفعل بعدها كالتالى:

ex.- While running, Reham fell down.

٢. لاحظ أن (During) بأتى بعدها اسم كالتالي :

ex.- During the film, he fell asleep.

٣. لاحظ عند وصف حدثين كانا بحدثان في نفس الوقت دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر تستخدم الترتيب التالي :

ex.-While Salma was eating, Mona was watching TV.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

- 1. They TV at 7 yesterday. (Cairo El Mostaubal 2024)
 - a. watches b. watch c. were watching d. are watching
- 2. As Zaki photos of the animals, he lost his phone. (Sohag Tahta 2024)
 - c. takes d. was taking a. took b. taking
- - a. watch b. watching c. was watching d. watches
- 4. It started to rain while they home. (El Fayoum Sonoray 2023) b. walk c. were walking d. walked a. walking
- 5. We were looking around the museum Amir found some tall doors.
 - a. while b. when c. as d. during

6. 10 When we	down for a	picnic, lots of rur	nners were running
through the park			(Minia - Beni Mazar 2024)
a. are sitting	b. sat	c. sits	d. sit
El-Moasser Exercises			
7 his hor	nework when the	phone rang?	
a. Did he do	b. Was he doing	c. Does he do	d. Is he doing
8. What was Sama	ryestero	day evening?	
a. did	b. do	c. doing	d. to do
9. While i	n the garden, I sa	w my friend.	
a. works	b. worked	c. work	d. working
10 his visit	t to the museum, I	ne met his friend	d Ali.
a. When	b. During	c. While	d. As
Complete the ser brackets: SB, WB & Previous Exa 1. When Mona arri	ms		he kitchen.
			(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)
2. 🖾 As we	(walk) into the	museum, we sav	v some huge statues.
3. Lots of birds	(fly) in the	e sky as we were	sitting
down on the bea	ch. (Cairo West E	ast Nasr City 2022 / L	<mark>Oakahl</mark> ia - Meet Ghamr 2024)
4. My mobile rang .	(during)	I was doing my	homework.
		(Ka	fr El-Sheikh – Qeleen 2022)
El-Moasser Exercises			
5. Hana (were) reading at 6	5 yesterday.	
6 (Is) the	y doing their hom	ework at 7 yest	erday ?
7. He (fall	s) down while he	was playing foo	tball.
8. She was cooking	while her father.	(read)	a book.
9. Adam and I	(be) studyin	g English yester	day evening.
10. Salma was read	ing a story when l	her son	(drop) the toy.

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

	Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 writing
	اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
-	Read and complete:	Complete the following dialogue:	Write a paragraph on:
	for some.	Basem is calling the Museum of Islamic Art for information.	"A visit to the Museum of Islamic Art"
	ر please ؛ , please	Basem: Hello! Is it the Museum of Islamic Art?	
	B: Yes, of course.	Man : (1) Basem : Can I ask for some information, please?	
	ou te	Man : (2)	
	B: We open from 9 am to 5 pm	Man : We open from 9 am to 5 pm every	
	every day except Friday.	day except Friday. Basem: (4)	
	3. A: How much is the?	Man: The ticket is 20 pounds.	
	B: It is 20 pounds.	Man : You're welcome. Sharka Belbees 2023)	(Minya – El Edwa 2023)
•	1. A: What are sunglasses	Omar is asking Ali about an object in his home.	"An object in your home"
	of p	about an object in your home?	
	مصنوع		
	2. A: do you use them?	Ali : Sunglasses are made of plastic.	
	B: I always use them.	100	
	3. A : Whu do people use them?	Ali : (3)	
	B:To their eyes from	Ali : People use them to protect their	:
	the sun.	Omar: What do you think of them?	(Cairo – El-Saveda Zeinab 2022)

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Apply

OUnderstand

O Create

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. What game did the Ancient Egyptians like? b. Basketball d. Senet a. Football c. Handball 2. How many squares do senet boxes have ? a. 60 b. 30 c. 40 d. 50 3. What is the senet box made of? a. Metal b. Plastic c. Wood d. Glass 4. Where did they draw the squares? a. On the wall b. On the floor c. On the door d. On the window Complete the following dialogue: Mona is calling the Museum of History. Receptionist: Good morning. The Museum of History. : Good morning. (1)? Mona Receptionist: We are open from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. Mond : (2)? Receptionist: No, we are open daily except Friday. : Can I buy the tickets online for the museum? Receptionist: (3) : How much does the ticket cost? Mona Mona : (5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 . She is wearing a nice on her finger. (Sharkia - Kafr Sakr 2024) b. shirt c. necklace d. coin a. ring 2. A/An is a model of a person or a picture of someone. c. ingredient d. figure a. face b. object

3. The main of koshari are pasta and rice.

b. squares

4. I can answer all the questions the last one.

b. except

c. pots

c. accept

a. ingredients

a. expect

d. coins

d. excepted

UNI	TFOUR	Understan	d Apply	Create	
	5. Peopl	e made	with clay 1	from the River Ni	le.
	a. bat	ts	b. pots	c. bits	d. beets
•	6. Th	ne Ancient Eg	gyptians used	to help t	hem paint around
	their	eyes.			
	a. coi	ns	b. pots	c. mirrors	d. rings
•	7. Th	nis	helps to keep a	way mosquitos.	
	a. des	ign	b. square	c. chemical	d. necklace
i	_			e light went out.	
	a. we	re reading	b. reads	c. are reading	d. read
٠	9. While	they were p		's father	
	a. coi	-	b. were comin		d. came
۰			t eight o'clock ye		? (Sohag Tema 2024)
		you do		b. do you do	•
	c. you	ı were doing		d. were you do	oing
4	Complet	e the senten	ces with the cor	rect form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
C	1. He wo	as painting	(while)	the phone rang.	(Monofia Iala 2024)
	2. I was	reading a bo	ook while mum	(cook).	(Assiut Sedfa 2022)
	3. What	(y	ou do) when I p	honed you ?	
	4. As I	(tak	e) photos, I dro	pped my phone.	
				(Dakahli	a – West Mansoura 2023)
	201 14		C. L A BUBICTO	((00)	
5	Write a	paragraph o		/ (90) words on	
ì			"A visit to the	museum"	
	******			\$44\$#();*#4 #1;*#1\$#\$#1##***** 1****	(**************************************
	***************		********* * * *************************		

	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	
	**************			***************************************	
	110,700.000.000.000.000				
	190000000000000000000000000000000000000				





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

tourism (n)	سياحة	local people (n)	المحليون (سكان البلد)
tourists (n)	سائحون	needle (n)	إبرة / مسلة [فرعونية]
environment (n)	البيئة	Pharaoh (n)	فرعون
damage (d) (v)	يدمر/يتلف	debate (n)	مناقشة / مناظرة
company (n)	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF	pollution (n)	تلوث

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:
 - company Pollution Tourism tourists environment
 - 1. We should be kind to who visit our country.
 - 2, can bring a lot of money to Egypt.
 - 3. I look forward to working in a big
 - 4.is a serious problem in our community.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 99

holiday companies (n)	شركات السياحة	oil company (n)	شركة بترول
drop (ped) (v)	ىلقى / يُسفط	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط/خطة
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	injure (d) (v)	بصيب /بجرح

Famous people and places

أشخاص وأماكن مشهورة

Stone Circles of Senegambia	الدوائر الحجرية بسينيغامبيا (في السنغال)
Cleopatra's Needle	مسلة كليوباترا
Thutmose III	الملك تحتمس الثالث

Famous rivers

أنهار مشهورة

the River Gambia	نهرغامبيا
the River Thames	نهر التايمز (في إنجلترا)

Countries & Cities

دول و مدن

			روں و سب
Senegambia	مدينة سينيغامبيا	لإمارات العربية المتحدة United Arab Emirates	
Senegal	دولة السنغال	Wassu [في غامبيا]	واسو (مدينا
England	دولة إنجلترا	Gambia	دولة غامبيا

Losson 6

SB page 42 WB page 100

report (n)	تقرير (مكتوب)	the British (n)	البريطانيون
stone circles (n)	الدوائر الحجرية (مكان أثري)	weigh (ed) (v)	یزن
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع / يقتفي أثر	storm (n)	عاصفة
label (led) (v)	يلصق / يرفق [بطاقة]	earthquake (n)	زلزال
diagrams (n)	رسوم توضيحية	later (adv)	ا فيما بعد
sign (n)	لافتة / علامة	nearly (adv)	تقريثا
across (prep)	عبر	monuments (n)	آثار

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

P	resent المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid	paid
sink	يغوص / يغرق [للأشياء]	sank	sunk
bring	يحضر/يجلب	brought	brought

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

company	a business that makes money by producing or selling things or services
debate	when different people with different ideas talk about a subject مناقشة أو مناظرة
damage	have a bad or harmful effect on something so that it is broken or spoiled

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms a	nd Antonym	ومتضادات	مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word a	الكلما	المضاد Antonym			
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree/refuse	يرفض	
sink	يغرق	go down	float	يطفو	
strange	غريب	unusual	usual	عادي	
more	أكثر	extra	less	اقل	

Prefixes & Suffixes					
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة ي		
dis-	تكون العكس	disagree	لا يوافق		
- ion	تكون الاسم	pollution	تلوث		
– able	تكون الصفة	valuable	فيم		
– ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	driving	الفيادة		
- ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	beautiful	جميل		



General Notes on Reading & Listening

11 needle

- إبرة خياطة * needle (n)
 - My mum used a needle and thread to sew my torn shirt.
- مسلة (حجر تاریخی) * needle (n)
 - Cleopatra's Needle has beautiful designs on it. (WB page 100)

2 sink - drown

- يغرق / يغوص للأشياء * sink / sank / sunk
 - MB The ship nearly sank in a storm.
- * drown / drowned / drowned يغرق (للأشخاص)
 - The child drowned in the sea as he couldn't swim. (WB page 100)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expre:	ssions	Prepositions		
		walk up	يصعد لأعلى	
الفصل	يقوم بمناظرة أو مناقشة في	in other ways	بطرق أخرى	
bring money to	يجلب مال إلى	pay for	يدفع لـ	
give work to	يوفر عمل لـ	plan for	يخطط / خطة لـ	
follow the sign	يتبع اللافتة / العلامة	make for	يصنع شيئًا من أجل	
behave well	يتصرف تصرفاً حسنًا	good / bad for	مفید / ضار لـ	
make pollution	يسبب تلوث	think of	يفكر في	
drop litter	يلقى القمامة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	



Lesson [5] WB page 99

- 1. We visited the **beach**⁽¹⁾ last month.
- 2. We decided it was a great place to build a new hotel.
- 3. The hotel will give work to(2) a lot of people.
- 4. We are a big company⁽³⁾, so we can ask people to work.
- 5. They will work in the summer.
- 6. This is the time when the hotel will be busy.
- There isn't much water near the beach.
- 8. There is a lake on the way.
- 9. We can use water from the lake for the hotel.

Let me know what you think of our plan.

Lesson (6) SB page 42

- 1. This is a report⁽⁴⁾ on the Stone Circles.
- 2. There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia.
- 3. They follow⁽⁵⁾ the River Gambia for 350 km.
- The river goes across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.
- 5. The Stone Circles are very important.
- 6. They tell us about the people who made them.
- 7. The oldest stone circles are around 2.300 years old.
- 8. The youngest are around 500 years old.
- 9. People were building the circles for more than 1.800 years.

10. Tourists can visit them, but they mustn't damage⁽⁶⁾ them.

- 11. Money from tourism⁽⁷⁾ helps to pay for⁽⁸⁾ local people.
 - 12. Local people look after the stones.
- 13. It is important to protect the stones.

-- Lesson (6) WB page 100

- 1. Cleopatra's Needle⁽⁹⁾ is a large stone.
- 2. It is an important stone with beautiful designs on it.
- You can see it next to the River Thames in London.
- 4. The Ancient Egyptians made it for pharaoh (10) Thutmose III.
 - 5. It is about 3,500 years old.
- 6. The stone is more than 20 meters high.

7. It weighs (11) about 200.000 kilograms.

- 8. The British made a special (12) ship for the stone in 1877.
- 9. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm.
- 10. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

(1) कार्यः)	(S) <u>Liting</u>	(9) مسلة كليوباترا
(2) yeur aut. L	(9) řesí	آرا (10) فرع و ن
(5) My(25)	(٦) السياحة	CIP) Allo
(१) खेल	(8) يدفع ا	(12) معيز / خاص

تنويه: الجمل السابقة نساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Stone Circles of Senegambia * Cleopatra's Needle



Reading and Listening

(Listening



Amira: What do you think, Hana?

Is tourism good for historic places?

Hana: Yes, Amira, I think it is. Tourists bring money to an area . This

helps the local people".

Amira: I don't think so. A lot of the money goes to big companies , not

local people.

Hana: Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment

and the local people.

Amira: I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter

and damage places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins .

Hana: I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well. They

know it's important to protect historic places.

السياحة تاريخى سائحون منطقة السكان المحليون شركات البيئة قمامة يدمر/يتلف بقايا الآثار القديمة بقصرف/ بسبك



on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Fady: Do you think this plan for(1) a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

Baher: I don't think so⁽²⁾. It only has jobs for people in the city.

Fady: I don't agree(3). More tourists in the area can help the local people.

Baher: Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

Fady: I see what you mean(4). It's important to protect the environment.

--- (1) خُطة لـ (2) لا أعتمَد ذلك (3) لا أوافق (4) افهو ما تقصده

on Lesson 5 WB page 99

While we were visiting the beach last month, we decided it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will give work to (1) a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. This is the time when the hotel will be busy. There is not much water near the beach at the moment (2), but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. Let me know (3) what you think of (4) our plan.

Answer			
the following			
questions:	9		

Critical th	inking skill	مصارة التفكير النقدى
Learn	1. Do you think this	plan for a new hotel is a good idea?
	- Yes, I think so	

پوفر عمل لـ

(2) في هذه اللحظة

(3) دعنی أعرف

(4) ىقكر في

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

Report on the Stone Circles of Senegambia

Where are the stone circles (1)?

• There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They follow (2) the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

Why are the stone circles important?

 The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

How old are the stone circles?

 The oldest stone circles are around 2.300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1.800 years.



Can tourists visit them?

 Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage them. Money from tourism helps to pay for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones (3).

(1) الدوائر الحجرية (مكان أثري) <mark>(2)</mark> يتبع / يقتفي أثر <mark>(3)</mark> أحجار

on Lesson 6 WB page 100

Report on Cleopatra's Needle

Where is Cleopatra's Needle?

• Cleopatra's **Needle**(1) is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames(2) in London, England.

How old is it?

• The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh⁽³⁾ Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.



How big is it?

• The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs⁽⁴⁾ about 200,000 kilograms.

How did it get to this country?

• The British⁽⁵⁾ made a special⁽⁶⁾ ship for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank⁽⁷⁾ in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

(1) مسلة (2) نهر التايمز (في إنجلترا) (3) فرعون (4) يزن (5) البريطانيون (6) خاص (7) غِرقُت

on Lesson 7 WB page 101

What do these signs mean?



1. You mustn't drink this.

> ا- يجب عليك ألا تشرب هذا.



2. You mustn't touch this.

٢- يجب عليك ألا تلمس مذا



3. You must turn right.

٣- يجب عليك أن تتجه



4. You must watch out for cows.

> ٤- بجب عليك الحذر من البقر اثناء القيادة



on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. Cleopatra's is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.

d. Mask c. Pyramid b. Needle a. String

2. is a great problem for the environment. We should solve it. d. Pollution c. Solution b. Tourism a. Population

UNIT FOUR

	3 is a a. Needle	title of an ancien b. Pharaoh	t Egyptian king. c. Tourist	d. Runner			
	4is or to Egypt.	ne of the most in	nportant activities	which brings money			
	a. Diagram	b. Tourism	c. Rubbish	d. Pollution			
S	B , WB & Previous E	xams					
	5. We must stop	. We must stop pollution. It the environment.					
	a. saves	b. pays	c. adds	d. damages (Cairo - Helioplis 2024)			
	6. Money fro	m tourism helps	tofor loc				
	after the stone	e circles.	(Multidisciplinary - I	Beheira - El-Delengat 2021) d. injure			
	a. travel	b. pay	c. add	d. injure			
	7. 60 Ali's uncle	works for a big o	ii in the t	Inited Arab Emirates.			
	a. work	b. job	c. company				
				(Cairo - El-Norha 2023)			
E	I-Moasser Exercises						
		the school					
			c. follow				
			y at 5 in the evenin				
	The second secon		nt c. tourism	d. company			
	10. Plastic doesn't	:in wat	er.				
	a, drown	b. sink	c. injure	d. include			
			about what the wo				
	_	b. subject	c. report	a. title			
	Definitions						
	is broken or sp	oiled.		something so that it			
			c. bring	-			
	a subject.		ople with different				
	a. deal			d. patron			
	anguage Notes						
	14. A little boy fell						
	a. sank	b. drowned	c. brought	d. taught			
			on and harm the e				
	a. make	b. give		d. pay			
	16. How much did			1			
	a.on	b. to	c. for	d. with			



مهارة التحدث

ا. مناقشة/مناظرة حول تأثيرات السياحة: : • A debate about the effects of tourism أ

Stimulus



Response



A: Is tourism good for historic places?

هل السياحة جيدة للأماكن التاريخية ؟

A: Why do you think it is good? لماذا تعتقد إنها جيدة ؟

A: Why do you think it is bad? لماذا تعتقد إنها سيئة / ضارة ٢

A: I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well in historic places.

أفهم ما تقصد ولكن معظم السياح يتصرفون بطريقة جيدة في الأماكن التاريخية. B: Yes. I think it is good.

نعم، أعتقد أنها جيدة.

B: No, I don't think so. لا، لا أعتقد ذلك.

B: As tourists bring money to our country.

لأن السياح يقومون بجلب المال إلى بلدنا.

B: Because some tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

لأن بعض السياح يلقون القمامة ويلحقون أضرارًا بالأماكن بطرق أخرى، مثل الجلوس على بقايا الآثار القديمة.

B: I hope all tourists protect our monuments.

أتمنى أن يحافظ جميع السياح على سلامة معالمنا الأثرية.

▶ 2. Asking for opinions, agreeing and disagreeing :

٢. السؤال عن الرأي، الموافقة وعدم الموافقة:

Asking for opinion

Do you think visiting historic places is fun?

هل تعتقد أن زيارة الأماكن التاريخية ممتعة ؟

Replies

Agreeing:

الموافقة

- Yes, I think so.

– نعم أعتقد ذلك

- I agree.

- اتفق معك

Disagreeing:

الرفض

- I don't think so.

- لا أعتقد ذلك.

- I don't agree with that...

- لا أتفق معك في ذلك ...

- I don't agree.

- لا أوافق.

- I see what you mean, but ...

- أفهم ما تعنى ولكن،....

Pop Quiz on Speaking

Complete the following dialogue:

Adham is talking to a tourist at a hotel.

Adham: Are you visiting Egypt on business or on holiday?

Tourist: (1)

Adham: (2)?

Tourist: I come from London.

Adham: (3)?

Tourist: Big Ben and the Queen's palace are the most famous places in London.

Adham: What do you like most in Equpt?

Tourist : (4)

Adham: I hope you will enjoy your stay in our country.

Tourist: (5) (Monofia Monof 2023 / Giza Al-Warrag 2024)



مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips:

نصائح للكتابة:

When you write a report:

عند كتابة تقرير بجب مراعاة الآتي:

- Include subheadings for each paragraph.
- أن يتضمن عناوين فرعية لكل فقرة.
- Label maps, pictures, photos and diagrams.

أن ترفق بطاقات وصفية لخرائط، صور، ورسومات التوضيحية.

• Use a bullet point (•) for each fact.

أن تستخدم النقطة [٠] لكل حقيقة.

Cleopatra's Needle

مسلة كليوباترا

1. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone.

مسلة كيلوباترا حجر كبير الحجم ذو أهمية.

2. There are many beautiful designs on the Needle of Cleopatra.

يوجد العديد من النقوش الجميلة على مسلة كيلوباترا.

3. The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III.

قام قدماء المصريون ببناء المسلة للفرعون تحتمس الثالث.

4. The stone is more than 20 metres high.

ببلغ ارتفاع المسلة أكثر من ٢٠ مترًا.

5. It weighs about 200,000 kilograms.

تزن حوالي ۲۰۰٬۰۰۰ کيلو حرام.

6. The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877.

أقام البريطانيون سفينة خاصة لنقل المسلة في عام ١٨٧٧.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

1	Listen and choose	the correct an	swer from a , l	o, c or d:
		ماع في نهاية الكتاب).	الصحيحة (نصوص اللست	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
	1. What's Cleopatra	's Needle ?		
	a. A small stone		b. A large sto	
	c. A large statue		d. A small sta	atue
	2. What can you see	-		1 h 40
	a. Diagrams	b. Ships	c. Designs	d. Views
	3. Where's Cleopatro			
	a. In England	b. In France	c. In Egypt	d. In Germany
	4. Where's the River	Thames?		
	a. In London		c. In Cairo	d. In Athens
2	Complete the follo	owing dialogue	e:	
	Ali is doing research	ch about the St	one Circles of S	enegambia.
	Nour: What are you	u doing, Ali?		
	Ali :(1)			
	Nour: Where are th	e Stone Circles	of Senegambia	?
	Ali : (2)			
	Nour: Senegal and			
	Ali: They are in A	frica.		
	Nour : (4)			
		y tell us about th	ne people who r	nade them and how
	they lived.			
	Nour : Can anyone	visit them?		
	Ali : (5)	It is for fr	ee.	(Gharbia - Mahalla 2024)
3	Choose the correct			
•	1. The ancient Egyp	tian made this s	tone for	Thutmose III.
	a. manager	b. guide	c. patron	d. Pharaoh
•	2. According to the	, you sh	ould turn right t	to get to the museum.
	a. point	b. diagram	c. storm	d. report
•	3. Smoking can	your heal	th.	
	a. damage	b. plan	c. weigh	d. bring
•	4. You should	the names	of places on the	map.
	a win			



Reading Comprehension

Extracting information

🦰 تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة[استخراج المعلومات Extracting information) وهنا تحتاج لإستخراج معلومات من النص

اقرآ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question:

with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone River Thames in London, England.

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III and it is about 3,500 years old.

- Where is Cleopatra's Needle?
- Where can you see Cleopatra's Needle?
- Or Where is Cleopatra's Needle located?

🎾 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومة من النص.

🚱 مفتاح الحل لابد من قراءة الفقرة جيداً لاستخراج المعلومة



A telephone conversation

🧲 بختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة. ﴾ اقرآ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Soha is booking a ticket to visit the Egyptian Museum. Ticket officer: Good morning, the Egyptian Museum. How can I help you?

: Good morning, (1) Soha

Ticket officer: We are open from 9.00 am to 6.00 p.m. Soha

Ticket officer: Yes, we are open daily except Friday.

: Can I buy the tickets online Ticket officer: (3) Soha

: How much does the ticket cost? licket officer: (4) Soha

: Can I get my children with me? **Ficket officer:** Sure, you're welcome. Soha

👏 التحدى تريد [إجراء حوار عبر الهاتف] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

🥠 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين الموظف.





Correction notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
 التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
 اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review	◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة
must / mustn't → (inf. مصدر الفعل)	يستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد (must/mustn't)
was / were → (inf.+ing)	في (الماضي المستمر) نستخدم [was/were] وبعدهم الفعل مضاف له ing
ماضی بسیط، ماضی مستمر → While	نستخدم الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مسـتمر وقطعـه حدث أخــر زمنه ماضى بسيط بعد While/As/Just as
ماضی مستمر، ماضی بسیط → When	تستخدم When وبعدها ماضي بسيط

Learn		◄ تعلم
Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 As we [walk], we saw our friend.	were walking	نستخدم ماضی مستمر بعد (As)
② While I was studying, the phone [ring].	rang	نســتخدم الماضى البســيط مع الحدث القصير
3 You mustn't [climbs] the fence.	climb	نسـتخدم (المصـدر) بعــد (mustn't)
4 I was reading when my father [arrive].	arrived	نستخدم ماضی بسیط بعد [when]

Practice				◄ تدرب
Write the Reason : للقاعدة المطلوبة	ـ استيعابه	، يؤكد	بب الإجابة	▶ معرفة الطالب لس
• As I was going home, Amir [phor	ne] me.	pl	honed	,
2 Must I [parking] here?			park	
You mustn't [touches] anything in the museum.		t	ouch	
I saw my friend while I [run] in the street.		was running		
Write the Correction :				▶ اكتب التصحيح
You mustn't [eating] at the library.			ر) بعد	نسـتخدم (المصـد [mustn't]
2 As we were travelling, we (see) an accident.		, , ,	سيط مع	نســتخدم ماضي بس الحدث القصير
3 The teacher was [talks] when the bell rang.			ــتمر مع	نســـتخدم ماضي مس الحدث الطويل



Expressing rules using must/mustn't Language

Test 655 and Tonit 4 Unit 4

Hacut, 3rti |+ الا يجب ٢٠١٤٠٠٠٠ + عاعل must use

- You must listen to the teacher.

- You mustn't eat or drink in a museum.

زمن الماض المستمر 2. The past continuous tense.

(We - You - They) + were + inf. + ing (I - He - She - It) + was + inf. + ing - مدهش

- They were having lunch. - I was studying my lessons.

While / As / Just as + past cont. past simple.

<u>ع</u>

عَمَد / مُللدة

necklace

coin

clay

شكل - تمثار

figure

ring

معنة معدنية - While Salma was watching **TV, the** doorbell rang.

- The light went out as Mona was reading a book.

مجوهرات

ewellery

except runner

designs

عداء / متسابق

<u>alal</u>

Speaking

السؤال عن معلومات عبر الهاتف 1. A telephone call asking for information

How can I help you?

Hello, can you tell me?

- Certainly. / Of course. It's

I'd like to know what time

- Can I buy ?

A debate about the effects of - Thank you for your help.

مناظرة حول تأثيرات السياحة tourism

A: Is tourism good for historic places?

B: Yes, I think it is good. B: No, I don't think so.

ستاد رياض سلطانية Ome بقايا / آثار ورق البردي مَاعَة متحف Omit 2 Vocabulary awesome museum pyramid papyrus mosdue stadium theatre historic temple statue castle ruins pow mask

Questions collected from previous exams تدریبات محمعة من اختیزات المحافظات عل الوحدة

10. While they into the zoo, they saw an angry lion. a. were walking b. walk c. walked d. walks 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. You (Palywbia - West Shobra Elkheima 2024) 2. They (Palywbia - West Shobra Elkheima 2024) 2. They (Charbia - Zefta 2022) 3. I was listening to music while he (talk).	4. We must (to help) the poor. (Qalyubia - El Khanka 2023) 5. The phone rang (during) we were eating. 6. Drivers (Must) smoke at petrol stations. (Fayoum - Tamia 2023) 7. While Ali was watching TV, he (fall) asleep. 8. I was watching a film when my father (Suez 2024) 8. I was watching a film when my father (comes). (Comes). (Suez 2024) 9. While I (study) my lesson, my father (alled me.) (Giza - Giza North 2022)
1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Egypt has a lot of sites which date back to the pharaohs. 2. I love going to the places such as museums and ancient ruins. 3. These bowls are made of so in the color of the	5. are not a complete building. a. Ruins b. Castles c. Statues d. Arches (Ismailia - Ismailia 2023) 6. We should go to the

Test

on unit 🦺



Understand

Apply

Create

A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في المنحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. The Ancient	Egyptians were ver	ry	
a. bad	b. evil	c. clever	d. stupid
2. The Ancient	Egyptians used	for maki	ing food.
a. pots	b. bowls	c. pots and b	owls d. plastic plates
3. Pots were m	nade of		
a. mud	b. clay	c. wood	d. metal
4. Clay was ta	ken from the		
a. sea	b. beach	c. lake	d. River Nile

B. Language Functions

2	Complete	Alban	following	dialogue:
	Complete	me	TOHOWHIS	ulalogue.

A guide is showing some tourists the Karnak Temple.

Tourist: Excuse me. What is this tall stone called?

Guide : (1)?

Guide : The needle is nearly thirty metres high.

Tourist: (3)?

Guide: They're hieroglyphic writings.

Tourist: Who built it?

(Gharbia - Santa 2023)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. **They** can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to **protect** their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The

hoose the correct answer from a his ordi

mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. While some people were mixing ingredients in bowls, other people used stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

	ned pronoun "The	ey" refers to	
	b. objects		d. mirrors
2. The underlin	ned word "protec	r t "means "	<i>n</i>
a. make	b. attack	c. help	d. keep safe
3. You can loo	k at yourself at th	ne	
a. bowls	b. mirror	c. pots	d. clay
b. Answer the fo	llowing question	s:	
4. Give a suita	ible title for this p	assage.	
5. What did th	e Ancient Egyptic	ans use mirrors for ?	
6. What do yo	u think of the And	cient Egyptians ?	
). Vocabular	y & Structure	
Choose the cor	rect answer from	ma,b,cord:	
1. A/An	is a business th	hat makes money b	y producing or
selling things o	r services.	t	Gharbia East Tanta 202
		c. earthquake	Gharbia East Tanta 202
a. monument	b. company		Gharbia East Tanta 202 d. diagram
a. monument 2. We must	b. company	c. earthquake toric places around	Gharbia East Tanta 202 d. diagram
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you	b. company the hise b. suspect what you n	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean ?	Gharbia East Tanta 202 d. diagram the world.
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you	b. company the his b. suspect	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean ?	Gharbia East Tanta 202 d. diagram the world.
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you a. explain 4. Many tourists g	b. company the hist b. suspect what you n b. plan go to Luxor to enjo	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean ?	d. diagram the world. d. affect d. recognize
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you a. explain	b. company the hist b. suspect what you n b. plan go to Luxor to enjo	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean ? c. know	d. diagram the world. d. affect d. recognize d. beaches
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you a. explain 4. Many tourists g a. pyramids	b. company the hist b. suspect what you n b. plan go to Luxor to enjo	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean? c. know oy visiting the	d. diagram the world. d. affect d. recognize d. beaches (Behira - Edko 202
a. monument 2. We must a. connect 3. Can you a. explain 4. Many tourists g a. pyramids	b. company the hist b. suspect what you n b. plan go to Luxor to enjo	c. earthquake toric places around c. protect nean ? c. know oy visiting the	d. diagram the world. d. affect d. recognize d. beaches (Behira - Edko 202)

	6. Tourists often	travel by car. This i	makes more	
	a. pollution	b. tourism	c. history	d. holiday
•	7. A	is a kind of jewelle	ery.	
П	a. table	b. chair	c. desk	d. necklace
٥	8. What	when I phone	d you ?	
П	a. were you de	oina	b. you were doir	ng
ı	c. are you doi:		d. did you do	
	_		Isaum mu mother he	ought me some juice.
T	a. read	h is reading	c. was reading	d reading
	10. we mustn't	the River	Nile. It's very dange	
				(Sharkia - Hehia 2024)
	a. pollute	b. polluted	c. polluting	d. pollutes
5	Complete the s	entences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets:
	1. (1	s) she doing her ho	omework at 7 yester	day?
	***************************************	,		Palyoubia – El-Obour 2024)
	2 Decina an ava	Im HOH	(must) copy from	other students
	2. During an exc	iii, gou	(Shar	kia – Minia El-Kamh 2024)
	2 4-7	(read) my book		
	3. AS 1	(read) Thy book		ria – West Alexandria 2022)
			,	
	4. You must	(listening)	to the teacher duri	ng lessons.
1		E. W	riting	
6	Write a parag	raph of about NII	NETY (90) words or	: 04 2 2 3
•			ace you visited"	
П				******
П				***** * ** ******* * ** *** * * **** * *
1	*** * ** ********* ******** *			As 1
	44 441-77-4 4 4517-50-51-61-6-4-4	() (
	TITE PERSONNELLE PROPERTY AND	.,,, ,,, ,,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
				*16 ** (47 ** ** (5) 1**)))
			414124*7717** 4247414171* 7 \$121127***1**	
	** * ******** * * ** ******** **		****** * 11 43114141444444444	**** ******** / * *** *** !>*!******* /******

أحتيار طناب الأزمر الشريف

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

d. India

d. India

d. tower

The mirrors were made of metal and had an interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. These objects were made of clay which came from the River Nile.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. How can objects from the past help us?

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use for making food?

3. What did the Ancient Egyptians use mirrors for ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to a. years b. objects c. design d. mirrors 5. In Ancient Egypt, mirrors were made of a. glass b. wood c. metal d. clay

5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
1. at - Karnak Temple - The ruins - the - amazing - were.

2. boxes - 30 - have - squares - Senet.

3. the history – learn – to – our country – <u>It's</u> – important – of.

4. Senet – Ancient – liked – playing – Egyptians.

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about:

"The Ancient Egyptians"

 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. show us that we use many of the same objects today! Fourist: Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions? b. schools c. mosques d. markets 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Objects from the past can help us to understand to make them look good. The paint helped them to 1. People made with clay from the River Nile. 4. Read the following, then answer the questions: help them paint around their eyes. This wasn't just In ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to d. drunk what life was like many years ago. They can also d. rang d. pens A tourist is asking Sama about the Pyramids d. of 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: c. temple Samy is interested watching TV. c. Jordan 5. A lot of muslims go to to pray. While Samy was eating, the phone c. drank b. tables c. pots c. ring Sama : The pyramids are in Giza. 3. Pupils mustn't dirty water. C. at Tourist: How can I get there? . Jerash is a Roman city in . b. ringing b. drinks b. Japan 2. The is very tall. b. arch b. in Fourist : (2) Sama : (3)... a. stadium a. banks d. boxes a. drink a. rings Sama 4

تدريبات طبقا لنموذج امتحال محافظة بورسفيد الاختياري

· Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to	rom a, b, c or d to	Tourist: Thank you so much.	ch.
complete the following dialogue:	odne:	Emad : (5)	
A tourist is asking Emad about the temples of Luxor.	it the temples of Luxor.	a. No, thanks	b. Pardon me
Tourist: Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?	you some questions?	c. I'm sorry	d. You're welcome
Emad :(1)		• Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the	of the word(s) in the
a. No, he can't.	b. Yes, of course.	brackets from a, b, c or d:	d:
c. Yes, they can.	d. You're right.	6. You mustn't (to stop) here.	stop) here.
Tourist: Where are the temples?	es ?	a. stopped	b. stop
Emad : (2)		c. stops	d. stopping
a. In Luxor	b. For two hours	7. Hala (read) a story when her son	ory when her son
c. By train	d. At six o'clock	dropped the toy.	
Tourist: (3)	■ 日本	a. was reading	b. reading
a. Are they modern?	b. Are they far?	c. reads	d. is reading
c. Are they ancient?	d. Are they high?	8. In a library, you	(must) eat or drink.
Emad : Yes, they are far from here.	here.	a. must to	b. mustn't
Tourist (4)		c. should	d. doesn't
a. How are uou doina?	a?	9. What were you doing when I (phone)	when I (phone
b. What can you see?		a. phones	b. phoning
c. How can I get there?	re ?	c. was phoned	d. phoned
d. Why did you go there?	here?		
Emad : You can take a train.			



Helping you, helping me

SB pages 44:53

WB pages 102:108

Unit Objectives:

· Reading:

An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; A Little Princess; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project

· Writing:

A blog post on how to help your community

Listenina:

Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions

Speaking:

A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions

Language:

who, which, that, where

• Life Skills :

Participation; Collaboration

· Values :

Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness

• Issues :

Community participation



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cooking (n)	الطبخ	stranger (n) مبن	شخص غ
tidying up (n)	ترتيب - تنظيم (الأشياء)		راثع
washing up (n)	غسل (الأواني)	smile (d) (v), (n) بتسامة	يبتسم – ا
taking out the rubbish		distance (n)	مسافة
putting away my clothes	وضع ملابسي في مكانها الد	messy (adj) (غیر مرتب	فوضوی (:
looking after my brother	الاعتناء بأخي	irandom (adj) (غير مقصود	عشوالي (غ
kindness (n)	حسن المعاملة - طيبة/ء	ية apartment (n)	شقة سكنر

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

random - smile - tidy - fantastic - strangers

- 1. I'm lucky because she helps me to up my room.
- 2. Heba doesn't speak in front of She's shy.
- 3. I like the on my grandmother's face.
- 4. They gave all the players tests to check their health.

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

	•		
teenager (n)	مراهق	sort (n)	نوع
floor (n)	طابق - أرضية	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
lift (n)	مصعد (أسانسير)	stairs (n)	درجات الشلم

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

shopkeeper (n)	صاحب (متجر / محل تجاري)	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
care (d) (v), (n)	يهتم - عناية / اهتمام		مندهش
shape (n)	شكل	check (ed) (v)	يتحقق - يفحص
acts (n)	أفعال / أعمال	advertisement (n)	إعلان
Random Acts of	f Kindness Day (n)	tips (n)	نصائح
	يوم أفعال الخير غير المخططة	thief (n)	لص

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غبر المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
المعتاد put away	بضع شئ في مكانه	put away	put away
take out	يُخرج	took out	taken out
sit down	يجلس	sat down	sat down

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

fantastic	extremely good; excellent	راثع
give back	return something to someone	بعيد
kindness	the quality صفة of being kind, generous, helpful towards other people العطف/الطيبة	
make friends	become friends with someone for the first time	
messy	not tidy / very untidy [ب	۔ فوضوی (غیر مر <i>ت</i>
put away	put something in the place where you usually k when you are not using it	eep it یضع شیء فی م
random	done or happening by chance and not according thappening without a plan	o any plan: عشوائی
run after	run quickly to catch or stop someone or something	بلاحق/يطارد
shopkeeper	a person who owns and runs a shop	صاحب المحل
smile	the shape of your mouth that shows you are ha	ابتسامة ppy
tidy up	make a place look better by putting things in the places	eir correct يُرتب الأشياء
lift	a machine that carries people up or down in a t	

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms o	ind Antonyms	يتضادات	مترادفات وه	
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
tidy	مرثب	clean	messy/untidy	غير مرتب
full	مملوء	filled	empty	فارغ
heavy	ثقيل	massive	light	خفیف
borrow	يستعير	take	lend	بسلف
lucky	محطوظ	fortunate	unlucky	غير محظوظ

Prefixes & Suffixes				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examp	أمثلة les	
-er	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	stranger	شخص غريب	
-ness	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	kindness	طيبة / عطف	
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	careful	حريص	



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 lift - left

* lift (n) وصعد (أسانسير)

I take the lift to the seventh floor.

* lift (v) يرفع I'm sorry, I can't lift this heavy bag.

* left (adv)

اليسار Nahed is sitting on the left.

*left (v) (past - p.p of leave) غادر

Ayman left for Amman last Monday. (SB page 45)

2 wash - wash up

* wash (v) يغسل

When he gets up, he washes his face.

* wash up (v) يغسل (أطباق) My mum is washing up in the kitchen. (SB page 45)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
What sort of?	ما نوع؟	tidy up (a room	يرتب (غرفة)
take the lift to	يأخذ المصعد إلى	put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد
get ready for	بستعد لـ / يجهز لـ	take out	بخرج (شیء)
do the cooking	بطبخ	get on the bus	بصعد إلى الأتوبيس
give back	يعيد شيئًا في مكانه	on the third floo	فى الطابق الثالث or
give a seat to	يعطى مقعد إلى	go down to	ينزل / يصل إلى
do/practise randor غير مخططة (عشوائية)	m acts of kindness بمارس / بقوم بأعمال خير	run after	يلاحق / يطارد
for no reason	بدون سبب / مبرر	care about	یهتم ب



Lesson (1) SB page 45

- 1. Hala has to make her bed every day.
- 2. She has to tidy up(1) her bedroom once a week.
- 3. Her mother isn't happy because she is messy⁽²⁾. 4. She always tidies up once a week.
- She has to put away⁽³⁾ all her clothes.

- 1. Munir and his sister take turns⁽⁴⁾ to wash up.
- 2. Munir washes up on Mondays and Wednesdays.
- 4. Sometimes, Munir helps his grandmother do the cooking. 3. His sister washes up after dinner on Tuesdays.

- 1. Adam helps with different things at home.
- 2. His most difficult job is taking out⁽⁵⁾ the rubbish.
 - 3. He usually takes out the bins in the evening.
 - 4. His flat is on the third floor.
- 5. He has to go down to the street in the lift(6).

- 1. He has to look after his brother after school.
- 2. They play games and Nader gives his brother a snack(7).
 - 3. He doesn't have to do any homework yet. He has to get his bag ready for school.
- 5. Nader makes sure his brother has the right books.

Lesson [2] SB page 46

- Photo (1)
- 1. The airl looks sad to be alone(8). 2. She is new in the school.
- 3. She doesn't have any friends yet.
- 4. Students should try to make friends⁽⁹⁾ with her.

Photo (2)

- 1. A man forgot his bag.
- 2. Someone should run after him to give him the bag back. 3. They should look inside the bag to find his name.

Photo (3)

- 1. The woman looks really tired.
- 2. Someone should make her a cup of tea.
 - 3. She should have a rest.
- They should take the children outside to play with them. Photo (4)
- 1. The girl shouldn't carry all those things.
- 2. Someone should carry some of the things for her.

Lesson (2) SB page 47

Random acts of kindness

- 1. In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California.
 - 2. They wanted to make the world better.
- 4. The idea was to practise random(11) acts of kindness. 3. Anne Herbert wrote down(10) her idea.
- (8) across ((withing) (7) get & shipte (8) space (9) shipte (10) is 20. 5. A random act of kindness is a kind thing you do. (3) پختاج شيء في مكانه (4) يتبادل اللحوار ; (5) إذراح (II) adipti

الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Random acts of kindness

* Helping at home

* Doing the housework

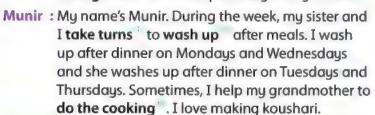




(Listening

on Lesson 1SB page 45

Hala: I'm Hala. I have to make my bed 'every day and tidy up my bedroom' once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away all my clothes.



Adam: I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out our rubbish.

I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift. The bins are heavy when they are full!

Nader: I sometimes have to look after my brother after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready for school and I make sure he has the right books.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise Hala has to put away all her . . . once a week.
a. books b. bins c. clothes d. toys

ارتب سريري ارتب حجرة النوم الخاصة بي يستغرق وقت طويل يتبادل الأدوار يغسل الأواني يطبخ يخرج القمامة في الطابق الثالث ينزل/يصل إلى يعثني بـ يجهز دڤيبته لـ يتأكد













on Lesson 1 WB page 102

We're going on a **boat**⁽¹⁾ today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear **sunglasses**⁽²⁾ and a hat. Boats are **fun**⁽³⁾ but they can be **dangerous**⁽⁴⁾. Dina uses a **wheelchair**⁽⁵⁾, so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving, but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally, if you see a dolphin, you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

(1) قارب (2) نظارة شمسية (3) متعة (4) خطير (5) كرسي متحرك





· On Lesson 2 SB page 46

Aya: The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school.

They should try to make friends with her.

Samir: A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.

Aya: The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest.

They should take the children outside and play with them.

Samir: She shouldn't carry all those things.

Someone should carry some of the things for her.



(1) يكون صداقات (2) يلحق (3) يُعيد الحقيبة (4) يأخَذُ قَسطًا مِن الراحة



On Lesson 2 SB page 47

Random(1) acts(2) of kindness(3)

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better(4). One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down (5) her idea: Practise⁽⁶⁾ random acts of kindness.

A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason⁽⁷⁾. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example (8), buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers: for example, give your seat to 9 someone on a bus. Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world (10), people do kind things for (11) the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile on (12) a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic idea?



(1) عشوائی

(2) أفعال

(3) طبية / عطف

(4) تجهل العالم أفضل

(5) يدون

(6) بهارس

(7) بدون سبب / فبرر

(8) على سبيل المثال

(9) اثرك مقعدك إلى

(10) في جميع أنحاء العالم

(11) يقوم بأعمال لطيفة لـ

(1<mark>2</mark>) يرى إبتسامة على

Choose

the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

Learn 1. The word "...." means happening without a plan. a kindness b. random c. stranger d. smile

Practise 2. The word "..." means very good. b. horrible c. fantastic d. bad a. terrible

on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Do you want to start running(1)?

Follow⁽²⁾ these tips⁽³⁾!

• Start running short distances (4).

Don't run too far, but go a bit further⁽⁵⁾ each day.

· Go with a friend if you can-it will help!

Don't run if your legs hurt⁽⁶⁾.

• Drink lots of water after a run, but not before!

• Eat healthy⁽⁷⁾ food.

Don't eat a lot of sweets.





• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

► Key vocabulary

1. My uncle lives i	n a big	in Alexandria.	
a. shop	b. apartment	c. factory	d. castle
2. The teacher wa	s very angry whe	n he found the clo	ISS
a. tidy		c. clean	_
		up after	they made a model
for the project. a. do		c. make	d. take
4. Munir has to Wednesdays.	up the dis	shes after dinner o	n Mondays and
a. wash	b. tidy	c. look	d. take
5. He is asking abo the city.	ut directions. He se	ems to be a/an	to this part of
a. shopkeeper	b. stranger	c. actor	d. waiter
6. Ali has to	his toys awa	y when he finishes	playing with them.
a. put	b. take	c. go	d. make
SB , WB & Previous Exa	ams		
7. Karim is a happ		ays has a	on his face!
a. sad	b. smell	c. smile	d. small
			(Giza - Omraniya 2024)
		_	nim leaving the bank.
		c. shopkeeper	
9. What is the			
a. distance	b. rail	c. road	d. way
	(Cairo - East Nasr City 2	022 / Luxor – Luxor 2024)
El-Moasser Exercises			
10. We study numb			
a. shops	b. ships	c. shapes	d. sheep
11. You can put a/c			
a. purse		c. advertisemen	_
12. My father gave			-
a. tips	b. tabs	c. tapes	d. trips

Definitions

- 13. A /An is a machine that carries people up or down in a tall building.
 - b. needle c. bin a. plane
- 14. The man who owns and runs a shop is called a/an
 - a. shopkeeper b. nurse
- c. engineer
- d. builder

d. lift

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- 15. You should ready for the next exam.
 - a. make
- ·b. get
- c. do
- d. give
- 16. We should care our environment.
- b. around
- c. out
- d. about



ممارة التحدث

▶ 1. A discussion about jobs in the house :

ا. مناقشة عن المهام في المنزل :

Questions



Answers



- 1. Do you have to do jobs at home?
 - ١. هل أنت مضطر لأداء مهام في المنزل؟
- 2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home?
 - ٢. ما نوع الأعمال التي يجب عليك القيام بها في المنزل ؟



- Yes, I have to do some jobs at home.
- نعم، إنتى مضطر الأداء بعض الوظائف في المنزل.
- I have to do the washing up, tidying up and looking after my little sister.
- بجب على غسل الأواني وترتيب الحجرات والاعتناء بأختى الصغيرة.

> 2. Discussing random acts of kindness:

٢. مناقشة الأعمال الخيرية العشوائية (الغير مخطط لها) :

Questions



Answers



- 1. Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why?
- ١. هل تعتقد أن الناس يجب عليهم أن يقوموا دومًا بأعمال الخير الغير مخطط لها ؟ لماذا ؟
- 2. What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day? ماذا تود أن تفعل في يوم أعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها)؟

- Yes, I think so because we should all do acts of kindness to help each other.
- نعم، أعتقد ذلك لأنه ينبغي علينا أن نقوم جميعًا بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها) لمساعدة بعضنا
- I'd like to give my seat in the bus to older people.
 - أود أن أعطى مقعدى في الأتوبيس إلى كبار السن.

III Language

Necessity التعبير عن الضرورة بجب أن / من الضروري أن / لابد أن have to / has to Usage الاستخدام We use (have to / has to) to talk about things that other people say are necessary. نستخدم (have to / has to) للحديث عن الأشياء التي يعتبرها الناس ضرورية [إلزام خارجي]. التكوين Formation I / You / We / They / inf. have to المصدر اسم جمع **Affirmative** ex. - [5] I have to walk to school. الإثبات He / She / It / inf. has to المصدر اسم مفرد ex. - He has to buy the book. [[تعبر عن الضرورة في المضارع] inf. I / You / We / They / don't have to المصدر اسم جمع Negative He / She / It / inf. النقي doesn't have to المصدر اسم مفرد ex. - Mu mother doesn't have to go to work today because it's a holiday. [تعبر عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع] (A) Yes / No questions: (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" : I / you / we / they / Do 4 + have to اسم جمع ex. - Do you have to finish your work tonight? * Yes, I do. * No, I don't. nterrogative he / she / it / Does 4 + have to صفية اسم مفرد الاستفهام ex. - Does Bassem have to travel to Hurahada? *Yes, he does. *No, he doesn't.

(B) Wh - questions:

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word do + subject + have to ?

ex. - When do you have to arrive at work?

Remember

Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

• إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن .

الاستخدام Usage

We use (should / shouldn't) to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do. نستخدم (should / shouldn't) عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشباء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقبام بها.

التكوين Formation

should

- ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»
- Subject الفاعل + should + inf.
- ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables daily.

shouldn't

- لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء عير جيد أو غير مفيد»
- المصدر Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf.
- ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and sweets.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A. Yes / No question:

أ. السؤال بـ (هل) :

Should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex.- Should we eat lots of fish? * Yes, you should. * No, you shouldn't.

B. Wh - question:

ب. السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام :

Question word + should + subject الفاعل + inf. کلمة الاستفهام

ex. - What should I eat? - You should eat healthy food.



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams 1. 1. At the weekends, I get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. (Giza - Kerdasa 2024) a. don't have to b. not have to c. don't have d. have not to 2. Mong to wear a uniform at school. (Oalvobia - El Quater - 2023) a have b. has d. should c. must 3. What does she to wear for the party? (Kafr-El-Sheikh - East Kafr-El-Sheikh 2024) a. having b. has c. have d. had 4. WB You run if your legs hurt. a. should b. shouldn't c. could d. doesn't 5. 1772 You start running short distances. a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. should d. have 6. Does your best friend walk to school? (Cairo - El-Mokatam 2023) a. has to b. haven't to c. have to d. hasn't to **El-Moasser Exercises** 7. What game do you have? a. practised b. practising c. to practise d. practise 8. What should I to come first? a. do b. does c. doing 9. Should I drink lots of water after a run? – Yes, you b. shouldn't a. should c. couldn't d. had 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: SB, WB & Previous Exams 2.(Do) Ahmed have to get up early? (Minia – Beni Mazaar 2024) 3. We You (not have) to sit when the boat stops. El-Moasser Exercises 4.(You) have to look after your baby brother at the weekend? 5. Does Nader (has) to get up early? 6. What (you have) to do?

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

	Step 1 V	focabulary न्यान् जिल्लाम्	Speaking اختبر مدى إثقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
	Read and co at hom at hom B: Yes, I h at hom to have to B: I have to and tid 3. A: How of	Read and complete: 1. A: Do you have to do at home? B: Yes, I have to do some jobs at home. 2. A: What sort of jobs do you have to do at home? B: I have to do at home? and tidying up. 3. A: How often do you have to	Complete the following dialogue: Rehab is asking Hend about jobs she does at home. Rehab: Hi, Hend. Do you have to do jobs at home? Hend: Hi, Rehab. (1) Rehab: (2) Hend: I have to do the washing up and tidying up. Rehab: Does it take a long time to do? Hend: (3) Rehab: (4) Rehab: Ooes your sister help with you? Hend: (5)	"Jobs you do at home" "Dobs you do at home" (Dakalilla Aga 2023)
"Random acts of kindness"	1. A: What is of kindle B: It is a k do for s do for s acts of B: No. It's 3. A: Can you for rand for rand people	1. A: What is the random acts of kindness? B: It is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no acts of kindness? B: No. It's very 3. A: Can you give me an for random acts of kindness? B: Can you give me an for random acts of kindness?	Rana and Reem are talking about random acts of kindness. Rana: Good evening Reem! What are you doing? Reem: (1) Rana: What's this book about? Reem: (2) Reem: (3) Reem: (1) Reem: (1) Reem: (1) Reem: (2) Reem: (1) Reem: (2) Reem: (2) Reem: (2) Reem: (3) Reem: (4) Reem: (6) Reem: (7) Reem: (7) Reem: (8) Reem: (9)	"Random acts of kindness" (Sohag - Tema 2024)

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

Farah and Hala are at school.		
Farah: Do you have to study ton		
Hala: (1)I have Farah: What about your brother	e a geography te	est tomorrow.
Hala: No, he doesn't, but he has		
Farah : Where do we have to go f		
Hala: (3)	or the flext lesso	11:
Farah: The laboratory! (4)	?	
Hala: Yes, we have science the r		
Farah: Are you good at science?		
Hala: (5)	(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2024
Read the following, then answ	er the question	ns:
Mohamed likes doing random		
	acts of killidifess.	rrieg are killa triffigs
that we do for someone, for no rec	son. We can do t	hem for the neonle
that we do for someone, for no rec	ison. We can do t	them for the people
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to s Mohamed usually helps his mo	ison. We can do t trangers. ther with the hou	them for the people usework. He
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to s Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi	ison. We can do t trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to s Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the	ison. We can do <u>t</u> trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He at not because he	shem for the people usework. He gives his seat to old e has to, but because
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso	trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He at not because he on's face. Now Feb	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17th is Random
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the v	trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He at not because he on's face. Now Feb	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the wanday.	trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Feb world, people do	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17th is Random
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to someone Mohamed usually helps his mosometimes shares his breakfast with people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from	trangers. ther with the hou th his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Feb world, people do	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old e has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to someone. We know we know we can also be kind to someone we wanted usually helps his mosometimes shares his breakfast with people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness Day. All over the wanted way. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" red was a smile on a person was a smile on a person he was a smile on a person was a smile on	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Febroard, people do ma, b, c or d: means "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old e has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to someone Mohamed usually helps his mosometimes shares his breakfast wipeople on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" real bad b. terrible	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Febroard, people do ma, b, c or d: neans "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024
we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" rabad b. terrible 2. The Random Acts of Kindness	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he world, people do ma, b, c or d: neans "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mosometimes shares his breakfast wipeople on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer fro 1. The underlined word "kind" rabad b. terrible 2. The Random Acts of Kindness a. April 17 th b. February 17 th	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he o's face. Now Feb world, people do a commanda from a b commanda from a command	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024 " d. good d. July 17 th
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to some knows shares his breakfast with people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness Day. All over the wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness Day. All over the wants to see a smile on a person Acts of Kindness and both terrible and both terrible and both terrible and person Acts of Kindness and April 17th both February 17th and the wants of Kindness and April 17th both February 17th and the wants of Kindness and April 17th both February 17th and the wants of Kindness and April 17th both February 17th and the wants of Kindness and April 17th both February 17th and February 17th a	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Febrorld, people do ma, b, c or d: neans "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024 " d. good d. July 17 th
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" ran a. bad b. terrible 2. The Random Acts of Kindness a. April 17th b. February 17th 3. The underlined pronoun "the a. Mohamed"	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he o's face. Now Febrorld, people do ma, b, c or d: neans "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024 " d. good d. July 17 th
we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" ran a bad b. terrible 2. The Random Acts of Kindness a. April 17th b. February 17th 3. The underlined pronoun "the a. Mohamed c. random acts of kindness	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he or's face. Now Feb world, people do a common control of the control o	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024 " d. good d. July 17 th
that we do for someone, for no red we know. We can also be kind to so Mohamed usually helps his mo sometimes shares his breakfast wi people on a bus. He likes doing the he wants to see a smile on a perso Acts of Kindness Day. All over the viday. a. Choose the correct answer from 1. The underlined word "kind" ran a. bad b. terrible 2. The Random Acts of Kindness a. April 17th b. February 17th 3. The underlined pronoun "the a. Mohamed"	trangers. ther with the houth his friends. He at not because he n's face. Now Febrorld, people do ma, b, c or d: means "	them for the people usework. He gives his seat to old has to, but because bruary 17 th is Random kind things for the (Sohag • Tahta 2024 " d. good d. July 17 th

Choose the correct	answer from	a,b,cord:	
1. He can't walk at a	III. He needs a		(Behira Damanhoia 2024
a. boat	b. hat		
2. Karim's cousin is	and n	ever puts his bo	oks away.
a. messy	b. active	c. serious	d. tidy
			(Behira - Abo Homos 2023
3. This building is	s very tall, but w	e can go to the	top in the
a. stairs	b. left	c. lift	d. attic
4. Mum made a cake	e. It tasted		very much.
a. terrible	b. fantastic	c. horrible	
			(Cairo - Heliopolis 2024
5 med	ans something	is happening w	ithout a plan.
		c. Friendly	
6. Please, can yo		ck the book you	borrowed?
a. take	b. give		d. spend
7. I usually	my baby brot	her when my po	arents are away.
		c. tidy up	
8. Does she have to			1
a. got	b. get	c. gets	d. getting
9. You drir			orts.
	b. does		d. mustn't
10. What does Ahme			
a. has to	b. have to	c. had to	d. having to
			(Cairo - Zaytoun 2023)
Complete the senten	ces with the co	rrect form of the	e word(s) in brackets :
1. I have to			
2. He (not	has) to speak I	oudly.	
3. Where (y	ou do) have to	study your lessor	rs? (Favoum - Itsa 202-
4. Everyone	(shouldn't) d	o a random act	of kindness.
•		(Alexa	ındri <mark>a - El-M</mark> ontazah 2024)
Write a paragraph o	of about NINE	TY(90) words or	n: 🕮 📑 🔞
William balagraph			
	"Jobs to do		

,,, (,, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			* 1+1+++1+++ A+ 4+3 ++ +415 * * * * *
	(=(+)(17777 777*****************************	. 4 4123 - 1201122424 A. 1 . 42444414	
			(Giza - Kerdasa 2023





Vocabulary

WB pages 104 & 105

Key Vocabulary

volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	متطوع / ينطوع	behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك
donate (d) (v)	يتبرع	beggar (n)	منسول
boarding school (n)	مدرسة داخلية	community (n)	مجتمع / جماعة
cruel (adj)	فاسى	disabled (adj)	عاجز/مْقْقد
servant (n)	خادم / خادمة	owner (n)	مالك/صاحب

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

beggar - servant - boarding school - owner - cruel

- 1. The works in someone's home.
- 2. The asks people for food and money.
- 3. The new of the hotel changed its name and design.
- 4. You shouldn't be with young children.

S8 pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

maths exams (n)	اختبارات رياضيات	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضي
maths teacher (n)	معلم رياضيات	volleyball team (n)	فريق الكرة الطائرة
schoolbooks (n)	كتب مدرسية	identify (ied) (v)	يتعرف على
secondary school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	local (adj)	محلي

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

princess (n)	أميرة	role (n)	دور
die (d) (v)	يموت	café (n)	مقهی - کافینریا
headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة	recommend (ed) (v)	یوصی / یزکی
generous (adj)	کریم / سخی	directions (n)	اتجاهات

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Presen	المضارع 🕇	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
meet	يقابل	met	met
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cruel	very unkind	قاسى
boarding school	a school where the students can liv school year)	مدرسة داخلية
behave	act or do something in a certain w	يتصرف/ يسلك
beggar	a poor person who lives by asking other p	متسول eople for money or food
servant	a person who works in another per cleaning, etc.	rson's house, cooking, خادم / خادمة
community	a small area and the people who li	مجتمع/جماعة ve in it
disabled	 when someone can't use a part of the bo not able to use part of the body v disease 	ody in the way most people can vell, often after an injury or عاجز / مُقعد
donate	 give something useful to a person give money, food, clothes, etc. to help a 	
pick up	collect something from a place	يلتقط / يجمع
princess	the daughter of a king or queen	أميرة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms			مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym		
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	terrible - tasteless [الطعم]		
polite	مؤدب	respectful	eفح/غير مؤدب impolite / rude		
generous	کریم - سخی	hospitable	mean بخيل		

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادثة وناهية				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Example	أمثلة ٥	
dis –	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disabled	معاق	
– ar	تعطى الاسم من الفعل	beggar	متسول	
– er	تعطى الاسم من الفعل	owner	مالك	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

					_	_	
①	Choose	the	correct	answer	from a	, b	.cord:

1.	We can get the no	oun from the verb "o	own" by adding the	suffix "".
	a. – ion	b. – er	c. – or	d. – ness
2.		b. volunteer	ne same meaning. c. disabled	d. sick
3.	To change the wo	ord "abled" to its ar	itonyms, we add th	e prefix "
	a.un-	b. in-	c. dis-	d. im-
4.	"Rude" and "poli	te" are		
	a. synonyms	b. antonyms	c. prefixes	d. suffixes
5.		the word "generou		
	a. hospitable	b, mean	c. polite	d. national

General Notes on Reading & Listening

disabled - the disabled - unable

- * disabled عاجز اعاقة عاجز
 - غير قادر على استخدام أحد أعضاء جسمه بطريقه حبدة بعد جراحة أو مرص أو حادثه
- That man can't use his hands well. He's disabled.
- * The disabled خمتدي الإعاقة (تعامل كاسم جمع)
 - The disabled have a private gate to get into the cinema.
- * unable (adj) غیر قادر (غیر قادر علی عمل شیء ما) **
 - ▶ She can't speak English = She is **unable** to speak English. (SB page 49)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Ехр	ressions	Pro	epositions expositions
work as	يعمل في وظيفة كـــــ	pick up	يلتقط
left behind	ترك خلفه	take off	تقلع الطائرة
behave well	بسلك/بتصرف بطريقه جيدة	take off	بخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)
behave like a prin	تتصرف كما لو أنها أميره cess	cruel to	قاس [تجاه / على]
get lost	يضل الطريق	polite to	مهذب [تجاه/مع]
pass the exam	يجتار الامبحان	come out	يخرج / يظهر
ask for money	يطلب مال	come into	يدخل
ask for direction	يسأل عن الاتجاهات	act out	يمثل

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson (3) SB page 48

- 2. He helped her pass her maths exams.

1. Mr Othman is Amal's neighbour (1)

- 3. He was a maths teacher, but he doesn't work now.
 - 4. Her aunt Dalia is a person who is kind to her.
 - 5. She bought her trainers (2)
- 6. Her little cousin Rana helped her last week.
- 8. Amal's father gave her the watch for her birthday. She was sad because she lost her watch.
 - 9. She lost the watch in the garden.
- 0. She took it off when she was playing and it fell. 11. Rana found it under the plant.

Lesson (3) SB page 49

- 1. He works as a volunteer (3) for a charity (4)
- 2. The charity helps to clean the local (5) beach.
 - 3. At the weekend, they pick up (6) the rubbish.

- It is good to help people in the community (?).
 - 2. Fatma visits a home for old people.
- 3. These people are disabled (8)
- It is difficult for their families to look after them.
- She worked as a nurse when she was young. 5. The woman who Fatma visits is Mrs Nahla.
- Your helpful neighbours * Working as a volunteer

Ahmed

- 1. Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals.
 - 2. It looks after old and sick animals.
- 3. People donate (9) money to buy food for animals. They help to feed horses and camels.
- Lesson [4] SB page 50

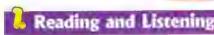
- 1. Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school (10) calls her 'A little Princess" by Frances Hodgson. a little princess.
- 3. Sara's father dies and the headteacher (11) becomes cruel (12). 4. The headteacher makes Sara work as a servant (13) 2. They call her a princess because her father is rich.
 - 5. Sara decides to behave (14) like a real princess.
 - 6. She is always kind and polite to everyone, 7. One day, Sara finds a coin in the street.
 - 8. She can't find the owner of the coin.
- She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. 10. She comes out and sees a **beggar**⁽¹⁵⁾
 - She gives the beggar most of the cakes.
- Sara thinks that a real princess should be kind. She is poor, but she is kind to beggars.

(1) çi((9) ہلتقط	(11) acyjo flacywb
(2) دڏاء رياص	(L) Hocios	ة (12) قاس
0 (3)	(8) ¢6	رد (۱۱۹) حادمة
ायु63 ,	ي المحتياجات الخ	
Ŧ	6	1
्री, क्यान क्यान	اصة (9) يتبرع	(14) يتصرف/يسلك
(5)	10)	(\$3)
ر) وردلی (۱۶) مدرسة داخلية	Jamin (1)

الحمل السابقه بساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائيه احرى:

* The story of A Little Princess * Voluntary work





Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Amal: Our neighbour(1), Mr Othman, is the person who helped me pass my maths exams (2). He is 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher (3) before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks " from when he was teaching at secondary school .







Mr Othman **Aunt Dalia**







My aunt Dalia is a person who is always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers 'that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match

My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch '. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday . The place where I lost it was the garden . I took it off when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under the plant . Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach if the watch.

Listening skill

مصارة الاستماع

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Practise Mr Othman helped Amal to pass her

> b. science a. English

c. maths

أجتاز امتحانات الرياضيات الخاص بي معلم رياضيات كتب مدرسية مدرسة ثانوية حذاء زياضي فريق الكرة الطائرة مباراة 🗀 ساعة يد

ا عيد ميلاد ا حديقة

البد البخلع ساعة البد

(13) نبات 👊 يصل إلى

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 49

I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend(1), we go to the beach and pick up(2) the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!



Samir

(1) في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع (2) ينتقط

It is good to help people in the community. I visit a home for (3) old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who we visit and talk to⁽⁵⁾. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.

Fatma

I work for (6) a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work any more. People donate money⁽⁷⁾ to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite animal.





(3) موطن اـ

(4) یعتنی ہے

(5) يتجدث إلى

(6) يعول لصالح / لدي

(7) يتبرع بمال اـ

Ahmed

Choose
the correct
answer from
a. b. c or d:

Extracting	g information			1	استخراج المعلومات
Learn	1. Mrs Nahla	works as a	whe	n she w	as young.
	g. nurse	b. teacher	c. serv	ant	d. doctor
تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context					
Practise	2. The word "	" mear	is wond	erful.	

c. grateful

b. fantastic

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

A Little(1) Princess(2)

a. terrible

by Frances Hodgson Burnett. Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school(3) calls her "a little princess" because her father is veru rich⁽⁴⁾. After Sara's father dies⁽⁵⁾, the headteacher⁽⁶⁾, Miss Minchin, starts being cruel⁽⁷⁾ to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant(8). Sara has to work very hard and does not



d. dirtu

get much food. However, Sara decides to⁽⁹⁾ behave⁽¹⁰⁾ like a real princess, so she is always kind and **polite**(11) to everyone.

(6) مدير المدرسة	(5) يموت	رنهٔ (4)	(3) مدرسة داخلية	(<u>2)</u> امیره	(1) صغير السن
	(11) مؤدب	(10) يسلك / يتصرف	(9) يقرر أن	(8) خادم	(7) قاس

UNIT FIVE

One day, Sara finds a coin in the street. She can't find the owner. She goes to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees (12) متسول / شحات a beggar⁽¹²⁾ and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see (13) كريم / سخى that this girl is cold and hungry, Sara thinks that a real princess (14) خياز (١٥) غريب should always be kind and generous (13) like this. When the baker⁽¹⁴⁾ sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange⁽¹⁵⁾. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks. فدوم ما بشير اليه الخمير - Understanding reference Learn 1. What does the pronoun "her" in the first paragraph refer to? Answer - It refers to Sara. the following - Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية questions: Practise 2. What is the main idea of the passage?

on Lesson 4 WB page 105

I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was **enough**⁽¹⁾ to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very **surprised**⁽²⁾. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!



(1) كافِ (2) مندهش



Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

	for a cha		
	b. volunteer		
5. Always be frier	ndly and don't be	to others	
a. cruel	b. helpful	c. careful	d. useful
SB , WB & Previous Ex	ams		
6. My uncle	visiting new p	laces in Cairo.	(Cairo - Nasi City 2024)
a. advised	b. recommende	d c. trained	d. owned
7 The	where I meet m	ny friends sells deli	cious ice-cream.
a. café	b. temple		
		(Co	airo - Dar El-Sal <mark>am 2</mark> 023)
	is the daughter		
a. prince	b. ruler	c. maid	d. princess
El-Moasser Exercises			
9. My parents ad	vised me to	well at school.	
a. go	b. take	c. behave	
10, He is	. He gives poor pe	ople more money	than usual.
a. rude		c. dirty	
11. My father bou	ght me new	to help me rur	and play football.
a. jacket		c. skirt	d. blouse
▶ Definitions			
12. A is o	person who work	s in another perso	n's house, cooking,
cleaning, etc	•		
a. volunteer	b. beggar	c. trainer	d. servant
	is a small area a		
	b. community		
	school is a school v		
a. high	b. abroad	c. boarding	d. private
▶ Language Notes			
15. When I	lost, I ask for di		1.1
a. come	b. look	- 3	d. have
16. We usually go	to the beach and p		
a. out	b. up	c. for	d. at



مهارة التحدث

Talking about voluntary work:

الحديث عن العمل التطوعي:

Questions



Answers



1. What are some other ways we can help in the community?

 ١. ما هي بعض الطرق الأخرى التي يمكننا من خلالها مساعدة المجتمع ؟

2. Which charitable work would you like to do? Why?

ما العمل الخيرى الذي تود القيام به ؟ ولماذا ؟

We can help to clean our local beaches, help the disabled whose families can't look after them.

يمكننا المساعدة في تنظيف شواطئنا المحلية ومساعدة ط ذوى الإعاقة الذين لا يمكن لعائلاتهم أن ترعاهم.

I like working as a volunteer for a charity which helps old people because those people really need help. أحب العمل كمتطرع في مؤسسة خيرية تساعد كبار

السن لأن هؤلاء الأشخاص يحتاجون المساعدة حقًا.



مهارة الكتابة

العمل لدى مؤسسة خبرية Working for a charity

يمكنك التحدث عن العمل لدى مؤسسة خيرية باستخدام الجمل الثالية :

- 1. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean local beaches. أنا أعمل كمتطوع في جمعية خيرية تساعد في تنظيف الشواطئ المحلية.
- 2. We go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind at the weekend.
 نذهب إلى الشاطئ ونقوم بجمع القمامة التى تركها الناس خلفهم فى العطلة الأسبوعية.
- 3. We pick up lots of plastic bottles.

نقوم بجمع الكثير من الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

'A'week is enough

مراجعة ال<mark>منهج</mark> والتمكن منه فه اسبوع واحد فقط





Remember

حمل وضمائر الوصل - Relative clauses / pronouns

التكوين Formation

﴿ جمل الوصل هي الجملة التي تحتوي على إحدى ضمائر الوصل (who / that / which / where) والتي تستخدم لتوضيح ما نتحدث عنه سواء كان (شخص، شي أو مكان):

who / that [الذي / التي / الذين]	• تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى [الذي / التي] مع الأشخاص [العاقل] : Mr Zaki is the teacher who / that helped me the most when I started at this school. • يأتى بعدها فعل عندما تحل محل الفاعل العاقل ويأتى بعدها جملة عندما تحل محل المفعول العاقل.
which / that [الذي / التي / الذين]	 تستخدم هذه الضمائر بمعنى [الذي / التي] مع غير العاقل [الجماد والحيوان] : يأتي بعدها فعل عندما تحل محل الفاعل الغير عاقل ويأتي بعدها جملة عندما تحل محل المفعول الغير عاقل. The present that/which I bought for my grandmother is in my bag.
where حيث (للمكان)	• بستخدم ضمير الوصل (where) بمعنى [حيث] مع الأماكن : • يسبقها مكان ويأتى بعدها جملة. • Alexandria is the city where both my big sisters are studying.
where = + which + حرف جر = which + حوف جر	• تستخدم (where) مع المكان ولا يأتي بعدها حرف جر، ولاحظ الأتي : I don't want to leave the house where I was born. I don't want to leave the house in which I was born. I don't want to leave the house which I was born in.

• لاحظ: تستخدم (which) فقط وليس (where) عند وصف المكان:

This is the villa which we bought last month.

(Not: Where we bought ...)



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB. WB & Previous Exams

1. [53] Mr Sabri is	s the teacher	taught my	sister.
a, which	b. when	c. who	d. where

UNIT FIVE

	2. This is the	e museum	the school visi	ted last year.
	a. who		c. when	-
		(0	Giza - Al-Warrak 2023	3 - Damietta - Kafr Saad 2024)
	3. 🛌 4 I saw Ahi	med in the park	we often	play football.
	a. what	b. which	c. where	d. who
	4. This is the boo	okI boug	ht yesterday.	(Shursta - Belbys 2024)
	a. when	b. where		d. which
	5. The perso	n is sittii	ng next to me is	called Tarek.
	a. whose	b. who	c. when	d. which
	El-Moasser Exercise	es ·		
	6. She prefers to	watch movies	make her	happy.
	a. who	b. where	c. when	d. which
	7. Mr Ayman is	the teacher	helps me a la	ot.
	a. where	b. when	c. that	d. whose
	8. This is the mo	irket I wo	ork in.	
	a. who	b. when	c. where	d. which
	9. The students	did their	best were not th	ne ones who
	played all the			
	a. when		c. where	
				cond was Dr Zewail.
		b. where		
		use in I li	_	
		b. which		
			orrect form of th	ne word(s) in brackets:
5	B, WB & Previous I	xams		
	1. This is the pres	ent (whe	re) my friend gav	e me. (Minia - Samalut 2024)
	2. My aunt D	alia is a person	(which) is	always very kind to me.
		place (w		
	4. 🖟 🗓 It was the	watch (t	his) my father ga	ve me for my birthday.
E	l-Moasser Exercise	s		
	5. Alexandria is	the place	(that) we spend	d our summer holiday.
		ool is the place		
	7. Is this the car	(who) yo	ou bought?	
	8. Yasser likes th	e house	(who) he was bo	rn in.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & E-mails

	Vocabulary كتبر إتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	Speaking Speaking اختبر مدى إلقائك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing न्दार, बरक्ष क्विंग्डिंग्डिंग्डिंग्डिंग्डिंग्डिंग्डिंग्ड
~ -	Read and complete : 1. A: What should I do to do عمل تطوعي ?	Complete the following dialogue: Sandy wants to join a charity and asks her friend Ahlam about her opinion. Sandy: Hello Ahlam. I want to ask you for	Write a paragraph on : "Working for a charity"
	B: You should join a charity. 2. A: How can I a charity?		
	B: You can go there and ask them.	Sandy: (3) Ahlam: You can go there and ask them to join the charity. Sandu: Do you know any charity in our citu?	
r)	S. A: I nank you very mucn. B: على الرحب والسعة	Ahlam: (4) , and I can come with you. Sandy: (5) Ahlam: You're welcome. (Assum: 14 Bridger, 2023)	(Dakadiba Manai U Nav 2022)
_	1. A:What is the of the story? B:"A Little Princess".	Ahmed and Malek are talking about a story called "A little princess". Ahmed: What are you reading, Malek? Malek: (1)	"A story you read"
2	2. A : What is the story about ? B : It is about a girl تسمی/تدعی		
ന	3. A: What do you of Miss Minchin?		(Giza - Abu El Nomros 2023)

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

			Ounderstand	Wabin	() Creat
1	Liston and share	the comment			
4	Listen and choose				
		تماع في نهاية الكتاب).	ة الصحيحة (نصوص اللس	علهك واختر اللجابة	استمع إلى م
	1. Mr Othman is our				
	a. neighbour			_	er
	2. Mr Othman helpe	_			
	a. geography		c. maths	d. English	
	Mr Othman was a a. secondary scho				
	c. primary school		b. nurseryd. preparator	uschool	
	4. The books he used			_	
	a. adventures				
				d. plugs	
L	Complete the follo	owing dialogue	•		
	A mother is buying	a birthday prese	ent for her son.		
	Seller: Welcome. C	Can I help you?			
	Mother: (1)	*************			
	Seller: What abou	it these jackets?			
	Mother: (2)	***************			
	Seller :(3)	?			
	Mother : He is weari	ng a small size.			
	Seller : (4)	···· ?			
	Mother : I will take t	he green one.			
	Seller: It is 300 por	unds.			
	Mother: (5)	\$\$4445000000000000000000000000000000000	(Alex	andria - Al-Anu	riya 2023)
	Choose the correct	answer from a	h cord:		
	 On the beach, do 				es.
		b. take	c. make	d. pick	
	2. When I don't know				
	a. beggars	b. directions		d. trainers	
	3. Choose a		_		
	a. role	b. rule	c. bag	d. watch	

•	4. We study hard to	our	exams.	
	a. get	b. pass	c. press	d. leave
•	5. I saw a	in the street ar	nd helped him w	vith some money.
	a. bigger	b. beggar	c. thief	d. foreigner
•	6 people	usually do bad	things to other	S.
	a. Foreign		c. Cruel	d. Kind
•	7. If you go to a	school, y	jou will stay day	g and night there.
	a. boarding	b. special		d. difficult
				(Beheria - Damanhour 2023)
0	8. 🗺 I gave the she	oes a	re too small for	me to my cousin.
	a. where	b. who	c. when	d. which
0	9. Nancy is the pers	on is	sitting next to n	ne.
	a. who	b. which	c. where	d. when
0	10. I visited the temp	ole in	there are many	statues.
	a. where	b. which	c. who	d. what
				(Cairo - Ain Shams 2024)
1	Complete the sent	tences with th	e correct form	of the word(s) in
0	brackets:	tenees with th		
ſ	1. He bought a bag	(who) is made of lea	ther.
		·		Damietta - Kafr Saad 2024))
	2. Those are the boy	ıs(w	hen) broke the v	vindow.
				(Assuit - Qusya 2023)
	4. I don't like places			
5	Write a paragraph			n: Calling Calculation
	M	Charity work <u>ı</u>	jou like most"	

	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		\$3434110101171111010004433444444444444444
	4940701070711411410104040754007700040404646463071			***************************************
	***************************************		***************************************	***************************************
	414,003,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,00	. 4) 4) 4 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9		·····

				(Menofia - Sadat 2023)





Key Vocabulary

donation (n)	تبرع	passport (n)	جواز سفر
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	social media (n) جتماعی	وسائل التواصل الا
share (d) (v)	بشارك/يتقاسم	blog (n)	مدونة
opinion (n)	رأى	newspaper article (n)	مفال في جريدة

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

opinion - blog - passport - share - donations

- 1. Charities need to help more people.
- 2. What's your about my new car?
- 3. The officer asked the tourist to see his to help him.
- 4. We always presents in festivals.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

suggest (ed) (v)	perhaps (adv)	ربما
suggestion (n) نراح	1	

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

canteen (n)	كانتين [مقصف]	geography (n)	مادة الجغرافيا
cold drink (n)	مشروب مثلج	laboratory (n)	المعمل
street corner	ركن /ناصية الشارع	Rod al-Farag Axis B	ridge
surprising events	أحداث مدهشة		كوبرى محور روض الفرج
pleased (adj)	مسرور	snow (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر جليد - جليد

100,000 = one hundred thousand	مائة ألف
1,500 = one thousand, five hundred	ألف وخمسمائة
10,300 = ten thousand, three hundred	عشرة آلاف وثلاثمائة
1,000,000 = one million	مليون
1,600,000 = one million, six hundred thousand	مليون وستمائة ألف

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماض Past	التصريف الثالث P.P.
give	يعطى	gave	given
let	يسمح	let	let

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات عمرادفات عم				
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	Antonym	المضاد
usual	عادي	ordinary / normal	unusual	غیر عادی
soft	ناعم	smooth	hard	صلب
possible	ممكن	likely	impossible	مستحيل
pleased	مسرور	happy/glad	sad	حزين
random	عشوائي	unplanned	planned	مخطط

Prefixes & Suffixes				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة	
– tion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	suggestion	اقتراح	
– ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	pleased	مسرور	
- y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	snowy	جليدي	
- ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	surprising	مدهش	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. "Smooth" and "....." are opposites.
 - b. hard a. soft
- c. happy
- d. delicious

UNIT FIVE

2. The antonym	of the word "possi	ble" is "".	
a. perhaps	b. impolite	c. impossible	d. horrible
3. The suffix "- tio	on" changes the w	ord "suggest" into	a/an
a. verb	b. adjective	c. noun	d. preposition
4. We can chang suffix "		' into an adjective	by adding the
ale	b. -y	ction	der
5. "Happy" has the	e same meaning as	4150545202422011120140	
a. smooth	b. pleased	c. rude	d. sad

General Notes on Reading & Listening

للحظ أن : الكلمات التالية لا تجمع إذا تبعها اسم وسبقت برقم

(hundred - thousand - million)

Fig. - Fareeda has donated two million pounds to charities in the city.

(SB page 51)

2 without + مسر / (inf. + ing)

ېدون

- Life would be impossible without computers.
 - I can't leave without saying "Goodbye".

(WB page 108)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressi	ons	Prepos	itions
give away	يمنح - يهب	go back to	يعود إلى
give an opinion	یعطی رأی	work for	يعمل لصالح
make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات	at first	في البداية
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	try to	يحاول أن
I made my family happy. لقد جعلت عائلتي سعيدة		on the street corner على زاوية (ناصية) الشارع	
I see what you mean	افهم ماذا تقصد.	decide to	يقرر أن
In my opinion	فی رأیی	on the way home fi	M TWO M F
as possible بقدر الإمكان/المستطاع			في طريق عودتي من

<u>a</u>



Lesson (5) SB page 51

Large charity donation

- 1. Fareeda Rashwan, aged, 32, is a businesswoman⁽¹⁾.
- She has donated two million pounds to charities.
- She wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it.
- The charities can decide to share the money between them.
- The important thing is to help as many people as possible. 5. They can give all the money to one charity.

Lesson (6) SB page 52

Hassan's blog⁽²⁾

- 1. Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness(3) every day for three days.
- 2. On Monday, Hassan bought his grandmother some cakes.
- 3. He bought them at the baker's on his way home.
- 4. She was surprised, but very happy.
- 5. On Tuesday, Hassan let⁽⁴⁾ some younger students go into the canteen in front of him.
- On Wednesday, he took a sandwich and a cold drink.
- 7. Hassan gave them to an old man.

ۼ

Helping (old people / disabled children)

* Working with charities

8. The old man often sits on their street corner

- 9. He gave him a big smile.
- 10. In his opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic.

Lesson (6) WB page 107

My helpful day

- On Saturday, Fady decided that he wanted to help everyone in his family.
 - First, Fady made his mother breakfast.
- 2. His mother was surprised⁽⁶⁾ because she usually makes it! Secondly, he helped his sister with her homework.
 - 4. She always does it after breakfast!
- After that, he took his grandfather a cup of tea in bed.
 - He likes to get up late on Saturday.
- Then Fady played football in the park with his little brother. He loves football.
- Finally, Fady helped his dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house.

He feels that he mode all his family happy!

الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخر		מיים נשמר
نعامل او كنابة فقرات انشائيا	(ट्राजिक्क (प्रकार)	
	(٥) مندهش	

Donation to charities







on Lesson 5 WB page 106

- 1. two million
- 3. one million, five hundred thousand
- 2. twelve thousand
- 4. two million, ten thousand

on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Amal: I think that the charities should share the money between them and help lots of different people.

Leila: I'm not sure(1). Amal.... I think it would be **better** if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

Amal: OK, but which charity then?

Leila: What about 31 a charity that helps children

... or old people?

Amal: I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people.

That's why I suggest that they share the money.

Leila: I see what you mean.4. OK, they should share the money

between two or three important charities.

(١) أنا غير متأكد (١) من اللَّفضل (٤) ماذا من / ما رأيك في ٤٠٠٠ (٨) فهمت ماذا تقصد



on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Large charity donation (1)

Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated two million⁽²⁾ pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman(3) saus that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide (4)



(1) تبرع (2) مليون (3) سيدة أعمال (4) يقرر



to share the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important thing is to help as many people as possible.

Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Answer the following questions:

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage?

- Charity donations.

Extracting information

استخراج معلومات

Practise 2. How much money did Fareeda donate to charities in the city?

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

Malak: I feel that famous people should work for a **charity**⁽¹⁾ at the weekend.

Rawia: I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for⁽²⁾ a charity.



Malak: I agree that it's important for them to **donate**⁽³⁾ money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.

Rawia: OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

Malak: I see what you mean. Perhaps⁽⁴⁾ they can help for a day or two in their holidaus.

Rawia: Good idea(5).

(1) مؤسسة / جمعية خيرية | (2) يعمل لصائح | (3) يتبرع | (4) ريما | (5) فكرة جيدة

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

Hassan's Blog

Random Acts of Kindness Project

 Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised, but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen⁽¹⁾ in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often



sits on our **street corner**⁽²⁾. He gave me a big smile. **In my opinion**⁽³⁾, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

Answer the following

questions:

1

- Extracting information

استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. What kind thing did Hassan do for somebody in his family?

 He bought his grandmother some of her favourite cakes on his way home.

Practise 2. What did he do for a stranger?

(2) ركن / زاوية الشارع (3) في رأبي

on Lesson 6 WB page 107

My helpful day

- On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.
- 1. First, I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it!
- 2. Secondly, I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!
- 3. After that, I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.
- 4. Then I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football.
- 5. Finally, I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

• I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes **quite messy**⁽¹⁾, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. **Twice**⁽²⁾ a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it **together**⁽³⁾ because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for **disabled people**⁽⁴⁾. We think it is important to help people in the **community**⁽⁵⁾.



(1) فوضوى إلى حد ما (2) مرتين (3) معًا (4) الأشخاص ذوى الإعاقة (5) مجتمع

• on Lesson 7 SB page 53 Nasser: Do you have to study this evening, Omar? Omar: Yes, I do. I have a geography test⁽¹⁾ tomorrow. Nasser: What about your brother? Does he have to study, too? Omar: No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom: it's really messy! **Nasser**: It's nearly $^{(2)}$ the end of break $^{(3)}$. Where do we have to go for the next lesson? Omar: The laboratory⁽⁴⁾! We've got science⁽⁵⁾. · (1) اختبار مادة الجغرافيا (2) تقريبًا (3) فسحة / راحة (4) عمور (5) مادة العنوم **Exercise** on Vocabulary • Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Key vocabulary 1. You can't leave your country without having your d. schoolbaa b. laptop c. passport a. suitcase 2. You can post anything about yourself on a on the internet. a. block b. blog c. log d. passport 3. to charities is a great act of kindness. b. Donation c. Presentation d. Decision a. Opinion 4. Facebook is one of the most popular media websites. d. mixed a. local b. magnetic c. social SB, WB & Previous Exams 5. We study countries, mountains and rives in b. science c. geography d. maths a. history (Cairo - New Cairo 2024) 6. Facebook and Tweeter are forms of a, social studies b, canteens c. social media d. transport (Alexandria - East Alexandria 2024) 7. In my opinion, random acts of kindness is fantastic. a. taking b. **making** c. doing d. having (Cairo - El-Nozha 2023) 8. 🗐 Our class to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.

a. decided

a. refuse

b. broke

b. donate

c. gave

c. suggest

9. Will I agree that it's important for famous people to money.

(Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)

d. completed

d. disagree

UNIT FIVE

El-Moasser Exercises 10. We do experiments in science lesson in the c. laboratoru d. classroom a. hall b. playground 11. There was a big charity on our street d. laboratoru a. canteen b. corner c. museum 12. At school, we buy foods and drinks from the c. hall d. canteen a. playground b. laboratory Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions 13. I went to my house at 7 o'clock. b. back d. peak a. pack c. pick 14. He gave all of his money to a charity before his death. d. off b. to c. awau 15. Don't worry. I what you mean. d. spend a. have b. see c. read 16. My brother works a big company.

c. for

▶ 1. Making suggestions :

a. off

Speaking

ا. تقديم الاقتراحات :

مهارة التحدث

d. about

A: I think it would be better if one charity gets all the money.

- أعتقد أنه من الأفضل أن تحصل مؤسسة خيرية على كل الأموال.

b. of

A: What about a charity that helps children?

- ماذا عن مؤسسة خيرية تقوم بمساعدة الأطفال ؟

A: Can you make a suggestion?

- هل يمكنك أن تقدم اقتراح ؟

A: I see what you mean. OK, they should share the money between them.

> - افهم ماذا تقصد. حسنًا ينبغى عليهم مشاركة الأموال قيما بينهم.

B: I'm not sure. I think that charities should share the money between them.

- لست متأكدًا. أعتقد أن المؤسسات الخيرية لابد وأن تتقاسم الأموال فيما بينهم.

B: I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people.

أتفق معك على أنه من المهم جدًا مساعدة الأطفال،
 ولكن أعتقد أنه من المهم أيضًا الاعتناء بكيار السن.

B: I suggest that charities should share the money.

- اقترح أن تتقاسم المؤسسات الخيرية الأموال.

B: This is what we try to do.

- هذا ما نحاول القيام به.

feel that, I agree that, I think that, I think that, I see what you mean. I see what you mean. I Expressing probability: I'm not sure. I Expressions for sequencing events:	أشعر أن أغقد أن ٣. التعبير عن فهم الفكرة : - أفهم ما تقصد. 8. التعبير عن الاحتمالية : - أنا غير متأكد.
I think that, I. Expressing understanding: I see what you mean. Expressing probability: I'm not sure.	عتقد أن ٣. التعبير عن فهم الفكرة : - أفهم ما تقصد. 8. التعبير عن الاحتمالية :
I think that, I. Expressing understanding: I see what you mean. Expressing probability: I'm not sure.	٣. التعبير عن فهم الفكرة : - أنهم ما تقصد. ٤. التعبير عن الاحتمالية :
I see what you mean. Expressing probability: I'm not sure.	– أنهم ما تقصد. ٤. التعبير عن الاحتمالية :
Expressing probability: I'm not sure.	£. التعبير عن الاحتمالية :
I'm not sure.	
	- أنا غير متأكد.
. Expressions for sequencing events :	
Finally, اخیرًا	,
Secondly, نانیا • Ther	er that, عد ذلك n,م
Pop Quiz on Speaking	
Complete the following dialogue :	
Basem wants some advice from Ali.	
Basem : I'm getting too fat.	
Ali: Yes, I think you got fat.	
Basem : (1)?	
Ali : Why don't you start running?	
Basem: (2) How can I sta	rt?
Ali : (3)	_
Basem: Short distances! (4)	
Ali : You can run for 15 minutes each da Basem : But what if my legs hurt?	ıy.



مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips:

نصائح للكتابة

 Remember to use the exclamation mark (!) to show exciting, unusual or surprising events.

تذكر أن تستخدم علامات التعجب (!) لتوضح اللحداث غير العادية أو المثيرة للدهشة.

- Remember to give reasons for your opinion.
- تذكر أن تبدي أسبابًا لرأيك.

- A blog is like an online diary.
- المدونة تبدو مثل مفكرة يومية على الإنترنت.
- · Add a title to your blog (and a picture if you want).

اضف عنوان لمدونتك (وصورة لو تريد ذلك).

Use simple sentences.

استخدم جمل بسيطة.

· Review for spelling, grammar and punctuation.

راجع الإملاء والقواعد النحوية وعلامات الترقيم.

- بمكنك الكتابة عن مشروع القيام بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لهما) باستخدام الجمل التالية :

مشروع القيام بأعمال الخير (الغير مخطط لها) Random acts of kindness project

- Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days.
 قرر فصلنا محاولة القيام بعمل خيرى واحد كل يوم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.
- First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes.
 أولاً، يوم الاثنين، لقد اشتريت لجدتى بعض من الكيك المفضل لها.
- 3. She was surprised, but very happy! القد كانت مندهشة ولكنها كانت سعيدة جدًا!
- 4. After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen in front of me.
 - بعد ذلك، يوم الثلاثاء، سمحت لبعض الطلبة صغار السن بالدخول أمامي إلى كانتين المدرسة.
- 5. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to a poor, old man sitting on our street corner.
 - أخيرًا، يوم الأربعاء، أخذت ساندوتش ومشروب بارد إلى رجل فقير كبير السن جالس على ناصية الشارع الخاص بنا.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

O Create Apply Understand Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. What did you take to the old man? d. a & b b. A cold drink c. A jacket a A sandwich 2. When did you take these things to the old man? b. Last Wednesdau a. Last Friday d. Last Sunday c. Last Monday 3. Where did the old man sit? - On the c. street corner d. wheelchair a road b. ground 4 What did the old man do? b. He gave me foods. a. He gave me a big smile. d. He gave me foods and drinks. c. He gave me drinks. Complete the following dialogue: Nora tells Dina about the film she had watched last night. Dina: Where did you go last night? Norg: (1) Dina: (2)? Nora: The film started at 6 o'clock p.m. Dina: (3)? Nora: Yes, very much. Dina: Who did you go with? Norg: (4) Dina: When did you return home? (Menofia - Tala 2023) Norg: (5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. 🗠 🖟 My parents money to a charity which helps disabled people. c donate d. lose h teach a leave (Giza - Haram 2024) 2. In my, that car is too expensive. c. decision d. blog b. reason a. opinion 3. I'm very to meet you. It's my first time to see you.

b. pleased

b. blog

4. WE Ais like an online diary.

a, tired

a. passport

c. cold

c. block

d hot

d. log

		home. I'm not		
	rhaps	b. Sure	c. Recently	
		ig projects. Sh	e is a	
a. pil			b. businessw	oman
c. ted	acher		d. clerk	
7. Give	me some ad	lvice to	me happy.	
a. ta	ke	b. like	c. make	d. do
8. The p			e is my neighbour.	
a. w		b. which		d. where
9. M	listory is a su	ubject	I find interesting	but difficult.
a. wh	10	b. which	c. when	d. where
10. ₩5T	hat is the ho	ouse	my grandmother	was born.
a. th	at	b. who	c. which	d. where
Comple	to the cente	nces with the c	orrect form of the	word(s) in bracks
I. Inis i	s the bakery	(tnat) n	ny brother works i	n. 'Sharkia - Ibrahimya 2
			(Alexandi	ria - Eust Alexandria 2
4. 🕮 T	his is the cho	arity(wh	ien) my family doi	
Write a	n email of a	bout NINETY	en) my family do (90) words :	nates money to.
Write a To your name is	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y	bout NINETY to tell him abo	ien) my family <mark>do</mark> i	nates money to. Example: kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email a	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	nates money to. Example: kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email a	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email a	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac New me + > C a: From: To:	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac New mer ← → C* a: From:	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac Po Newment ← → C a : From: To: Subject:	n email of a friend Hany Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac Po Newment ← → C a : From: To: Subject:	n email of a friend Hany s Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac Po Newment ← → C a : From: To: Subject:	n email of a friend Hany s Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo our email add	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's
Write a To your name is email ac Newme + > C as From: To: Subject:	n email of a friend Hany s Samy and y ddress is han	bout NINETY to tell him abo jour email addi y@gmail.com.	en) my family dol (90) words : out random acts of	kindness. Your l.com. Your friend's



Guessing the meaning

🧲 تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخميين المعني في النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Read and answer the question:

sometimes quite messy, so we usually tidy up every take out the rubbish. We do it together because the clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I evening before we go to bed. We put away all our I share a bedroom with my sister and we are bins are quite heavy.

The underlined word "messy" means not

The what is the opposite of the underlined word "messy"?

c. famous a. lucky

b. kind

🏇 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة في النص.

🤌 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التي بها الكلمة لكي تحدد المعني المطلوب بدقة



Speaking

Random acts of kindness

🧲 بختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

◄ اقرآ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen and Emad are talking about random acts of

Mazen: Can you tell me about some random acts of kindness?

Emad : Sure. (1)

Mazen: Do you mean for people you don't know? Emad : (2)

Mazen : (3) ...

Emad: Yes. I think we should all do this to each other.

Mazen : (4)

Emad: Because we should help each other.

Mazen: Can you give me an example of random acts of kindness?

Emad : (5) ...

التحدي تريد [الحديث عن أعمال الخير الغير مخطط لها] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها. 😚 مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك و بين الشخص الآخر المتحدث.





• الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطانب للقواعد اللغوية. - اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review			فاعدة	◄ نظرة سريعة على اا
have / don't have to → (inf. مصدر الفعل) has / doesn't have to → (inf. مصدر الفعل)	للتخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد (has to/have to) تعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة			
should / shouldn't → (inf. مصدر الفعل)	يستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد (should/shouldn't) لتعبير عن النصيحة			
who / that → أشخاص which / that → أشياء where / (which + حرف جر) → أماكن	عل ضمير الوصل (who/that) محل شخص عل ضمير الوصل (which/that) محل شئ عل ضمير الوصل (where) محل مكان مكن أن يحل (which) ومعها حرف جر محل مكان			
Learn				◄ تعلم
Sentence	Corre	ction		Reason
On holidays, we don't [must] go to school.	hav	e to		ستخدمhave to بعد لتعبير عن عدم الضر
② Do you have to [going] to work?	? g	0	have to	ستخدم المصدر بعد ٥
Cairo is the city [who] my father works.	wh	ere	الأماكن	ستخدم (where) مع
O Dina is the teacher [which] teaches us math.	who /	that	ا) مع	ستخدم [who/that لأشخاص
Practice				◄ تدرب
Write the Reason : للقاعدة المطلوبة	استيعابه	بة يؤكد	بب الإجا	◄ معرفة الطالب لس
She doesn't [has] to get up ed Fridaus.			ave	***************************************

Fridays.		nave	***********************
2 You shouldn't [watched] too m	uch TV.	watch	
3 That is the house [who] I wa	s born.	where	7171112343 444111 41114
This is the book [who] my fat gave to me.	her	which / that	
Write the Correction :			▶ اكتب التصحيح
Do you have to [studies] this evening?			نستخدم (المصدر) بعد (have to)
What should we [did] in the morning?		(shoul	نستخدم (المصدر) بعد (d
3 [Do] he have to work today?		ſh	نستخدم (Does) مع (e

anic

Speaking

مناقشة عن مهام في المنزل A discussion about jobs in اعبارات الوطل the house:

Yes, I have to do some jobs 1. Do you have to do jobs at at home. home?

I have to do the washing up 2. What sort of jobs do you have to do at home? and tidying up.

مناقشة الأعمال الخيرية العشوائية 2. Discussing random acts of kindness:

should always do random acts of kindness? Why?

we should all do acts of B: Yes, I think so because kindness to help each

Castodia de Unit 5 de faite festa

Language 1. Relative clauses ترتيب - تنظيم (who - which - that - where)

غسل الأواتي

washing up tidying up

Vocabulary

إخراج القمامة

taking out the rubbish

cola جملة + الفعل + الفاعل + جملة جملة المعال + حملة Iles / Illus / Ilego "day Italiel" Ahlaw Ris / Mrs / Riso "Male" own talé

abluzis |- This is the man who lives next door to Amgad.

عشوائي

random

messy

فوضوى / غير مرتب

وضع ملابس في مكانها المعتاد

putting away clothes

சேய் | - I need the tool which is next to the knife.

e!! - This is the place where Amgad usually works. occumb ciction school actions

donation

donate

smile

2. To say something is necessary

have to + Inf. years! Subject +

خادم

يتصرف / يسلك مجتمع / جماعة

community

behave servant

disabled

A: Do you think people - تعبر عن شئ ضروري أو شئ انت ملزم بفعله في المضارع. अहं - जेहंद | - People have to get their passports before

travelling.

businesswoman Jaci is mired

يشارك - يتقاسم

وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي

social media

उपक / प्रांक

kindness

3. To say something is not necessary

the inf Subject + doesn't have to + - تعبر عن شئ غير ضروري أو أنت غير ملزم بفعله في المضارع

Today is Friday. I don't have to get up early.

279

Suestions collected from previous exams Recall to the best of the bound of the best of th

10. This is the book I bought yesterday. a. who b. which c. where d. when (Sharkia - Abo Kabir 2022) 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form	1. This is the bakery	Iling? Iother doesn't (lawe t	7. What
1. The synonym of "smooth" is "	opinion? opinion? a. make b. do c. take d. give d. give 3. The person who owns and runs a shop is called a/an a. shopkeeper b. baker c. engineer d. vet d. "Rude" has the same meaning as polite b. impolite d. full	iter of the king b. princess ur friends at the	7. Which T-shirt do you me to buy? a. invite b. decide c. recommend d. beg (Qena - Farshout 2023) 8. The school is the place we learn. **Mma **Samaint 2024) a. which b. where c. who d. when 9. You shouldn't up late. 6. You shouldn't up late. 6. stayed b. stays c. stay d. staying

Test

on unit



• Understand R Apply

Create

A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. Fareeda Rashw	an is	years old.	
a. 32	b. 33	c. 23	d. 22
2. Fareeda Rashw	an is a / an	yekracaturinikanan •	
a. engineer		b. businessw	oman
c. pilot		d. doctor	
3. Fareeda donate	ed two	pounds to	charities in her city.
a. thousand			d. billion
4. She wanted the	charities to use	the money to	helpwho
need it.			
a. people	b. animals	c. schools	d. plants

B. Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad asks Marwan about his jobs at home.

: Do you help your family at home? Ziad

: When do you do that?

Marwan: (2)

: Do you tidy your room? Ziad

: You're very helpful. (4)?

Marwan: I also look after my little sister and play with her.

: (5)?

Marwan: I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.

(Bent Suct Nasser 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local beach. At the weekend, they go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. They always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

Fatma visits a home for old people who are disabled so it's difficult for their families to look after them. She goes there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special person who they visit and talk to. The woman who they visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. Fatma loves talking to **her**.

Ahmed works for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick and cannot work anymore. People donate money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. They help to feed the animals and look after them. This camel is Ahmed's favourite animal.

a. Choose the	correct answer fro	om a , b , c or d :	
1. The under	lined pronoun "he	er" refers to	* ** *10* \$
a. Fatma	b. Aya	c. Mrs Nahla	d. Sara
2. It isn't nice	e too	n the beach.	
a. collect i	ubbish	b. help to clea	n
c. leave ru	bbish	d. pick up plas	tic bottles
3. The under from a ple		p" means to	something
a. leave	b. collect	c. donate	d. lend
b. Answer the	following questio	ns:	
4. Give a suit	able title for this p	oassage.	
,	ur opinion about c	,	ich Ahmed works for ?
		ry & Structur	è
Choose the co	orrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
_	•	like a re	•
a. behaves	b. decides	c. makes	d. lies
			(Cairo - Helioplois 2024)
Ahmed works beach.	as a 1	for a charity that he	elps to clean the local (Menofia - Ashmoun 2023)
a. model	b. patient	c. volunteer	d. figure

•	3.		between Alexandr		
		a. date	-	c. distance	
•		-	ire clean and dry, s		
		a. tidy		c. put	
•	5.	A	act of kindness is		
		reason.			kalılıa - Mansoura 2024)
		a. messy	b. random	c. lucky	d. surprised
•	6.				
		a. strange	b. fantastic	c. terrible	d. horrible
•	7.	Try to	the birds and an		
		a. send	b. feed	c. sell	d. buy
•	8.	That's the city	I was bo	rn in.	
			b. why		d. which
,	9.	You	buy a ball. I will gi	ve you mine.	
		a. must		b. don't have to	
		c. should		d. mustn't	
-	10	. This is the docto	or save	d my wife's life.	in a laboration
		a. where	b. which	c. when	d. that
5	(Complete the ser	itences with the co	rrect form of the w	vord(s) in brackets:
	1	I work for o	charity	(where) looks after	r animals.
					thha Meet Ghami 2024)
	-	2. At home, I	(have) d	o mu homework.	
	_		on the bus, you ha		uina) a ticket
	4	1. Sne (not have) get up e	ung on nonaags. 4	the state of the s
6	1	Write a paragra	ph of about NINI	ETY (90) words or	1:
•		, ,	"Helping		
			** **** * ***	3 3443 1777 1 *** ******** ***	
	10.1	NIPP F 9 9100 PT 1 4 49444119404		, , ,,,,, , ,, ,, ,, ,, ,, ,,,,,,,,	
		**** ** * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	24 41 41917 77 24 44 4415		
					** ** ** ** * * * * ** * * * * * * * *
					*4 **1 * * 1 **491*** * ***** *
				. 111 1 17 1 1 111 1 1 1	(Avoid . El Radaey 2023)

تثنيار طناب الأزهو الشرية

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

agreed but he wasn't interested in doing his work well built. On his last day, the owner gave him the key as a house. The house appears beautiful but it wasn't well-He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that The owner of the company asked him to do one last ob; it was to build a beautiful house. The engineer reward "This new beautiful house is yours".

1. What did the engineer decide to do when he a. Answer the following questions:

Soha and Noha are talking about their friend Huda.

d. engineer

c. businesswoman

b. nurse

c. lost

b. spent

a. donated

2. Fareeda is a/an...

a. doctor

Noha: Our friend Huda hasn't come to school since

got older?

3. Was the engineer interested in building the house? 2. Why did the owner want him to build a house?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4. The underlined word "him" refers to

d. the house b. the key c. the engineer a, the owner

5. The engineer was when he built the house. d. careful 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences: b. awesome c. careless a. brave

2. everyone - to - Sama - polite - and - kind - is - always. . works – a chairty – as – Omar – a volunteer – for,

3. happens - kindness - What - Random - on - Acts - of - day ?

4. pounds - to - a charity - million - donated - Our company - two.

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about: "Jobs at home" Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: two million pounds to Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: d. decided

d. baker

An engineer worked hard for a building company. 4. Read the following, then answer the questions: When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax.

Soha: In front of the shopping mail.

Noha: We will visit her tomorrow. Where shall we meet?

Soha: When will we visit her?

Noha: (3)

Soha: Can I come with you to visit her?

Noha: No, she is at home now.

Soha:(2)....

Noha: She had an accident last week.

Soha: What a pity! (1)

last week.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

. The machine that carries people up and down is called a/an

b. kettle c. fridge

3. The stole the money and was taken to prison. 2. This is the house was built in 2017.

c. cleaner 4. What should I to come first? b. thief a. winner

5. This man doesn't know the area. He must be a/an c. stranger d. baker d. does c. did b. owner b. do a. doing a. kind

. Fareeda Rashwan has

charities in her city.

تدريبات طبقا لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد الاختياري

8. The tourists (which) visit Egypt always love 6. She (have) to wear the uniform at school. b.who c.which d.where d. why Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the a. had to b. having c. to have d. has c. I am not free today d. You're healthy 7. The new book (who) I bought is very d. shouldn't to b. Thank you Mena: The doctor says she will be better. c. where b. should 9. You (shouldn't) study hard. c. It sounds unhealthy. d. That looks terrible. a. That's great news. brackets from a, b, c or d: b. when the ancient temples. b. I don't mind. a. She is sorry d. who a. should to c. to should g. when interesting. Aya Aya Mena's mother had an accident and broke her leg. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to Mena: My mother didn't go to work yesterday. Mena: She fell down and broke her leg. c. When did she start working? b. Why didn't she go to work? Mena: Because she had an accident. c. Don't worry. She'll be okay. Mena: Thanks, Aya. You are so kind. They went to the hospital. complete the following dialogue: c. When did that happen? a. Why are you happy? d. You have a problem. d. What does she do? a. What happened? d. Did you see her? b. Are you okay ? :(3) a. I am busy. Aya



Different environments

SB pages 54 · 63

WB pages 109:115

Unit Objectives

- Reading:

A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report

Writing:

A profile about where you live; a paragraph on how to use less water; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate

· Listening:

Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism

Speaking:

Solving environmental problems; Suggesting solutions to a problem

Language :

(not) as + adjective + as; Present simple passive

· Life Skills:

Negotiating; Problem - solving

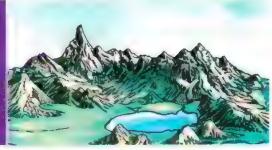
- Values :

Coexistence values

· Issues:

Environmental and developmental issues

XIS LINO



Vocabulary

Key Vocabular

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
drought (n)	جفاف	polluted (adj)	ملوث
flood (ed) (v), (n) فيضان	يفيض/ يغمر بالماء/	changing (adj)	متغير / متقلب
rubbish (n)	قمامة / مخلفات	presentation (n)	عرض / تقديم
water pollution (n)	تلوث الماء	line graph (n)	خط بیانی
green (adj) بيئة / ملائم للبيئة	متعلق بالمحافظة على ال	bar chart (n)	رسم أو مخطط بياني
environment (n)	البيثة	melt (ed) (v)	یذیب / ینصهر

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:
 - environment polluted chart green Climate change
 - 1. The canal is more than the river.
 - 2. affects the environment and causes some problems.
 - 3. It was interesting to be in a different
 - 4. Bikes are a form of transport.

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

recently (adv)	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	radio news program	nme (n)
warn (ed) (v)	يحذر `		برنامج إخباري إذاعي
electric (adj)	كهربى	attractive (adj)	جذاب
user (n)	مستخدم	comfortable (adj)	مريح
relaxing (adj) ئعصاب	يدعو للاسترخاء / مريح لا	fuel (n)	وقود
form (n)	نوع - شكل /نمط	transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

x-axis (n)	المحور السيني	cause (d) (v), (n)	یسبب - سبب
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	electricity (n)	كهرباء
y-axis (n)	المحور الصادي	conclusion (n)	خلاصة / استنتاج

rainfall (n)	— سقوط الأمطار	present (ed) (v)	يعرض/ يقدم
fires (n)	حراثق	serious (adj)	خطیر/جاد
countryside (n)	الريف	average (n)	معدل/ متوسط
graph (n)	رسم بیانی	yearly (adj)	سنوى
Contir	nents, countries an	دول ومدن d cities	قارات،
Australia	قارة / دولة أستراليا	Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية
Iraq	دولة العراق	Jordan	دولة الأردن
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	Europe	قارة أوروبا
Fam	ous places and rive	ن وأنهار مشهور <mark>ة ers</mark>	أماك
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل کلمنجارو	Mount Catherin	جبل سانت کاترین e
Mount Kenya	جبل کینیا	Jabal Mousa	جبل موسی

Conjuga	don or in egui	III VUINU	تصريف الافعال غير المنتظمة		
Prese	المضارع ent	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P		
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought		
show	سن/ يوضح	showed	shown		

Study these	رس هذه التعريفات definitions	ادر		
air pollution	dirt and dangerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic د الهواء	gerous chemicals in the air, often from traffic نلوث الهواء		
axis (x and y)	the lines that have numbers / information on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side)			
bar chart	a diagram or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts			
climate change	changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing	تغ		
drought	when there is no rain for a long time and everything is ver dry			
flood	a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before ضان	فيذ		
green	• connected to protecting the environment علق بالمحافظة على البيئة good for the environment	مته		
line graph	a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to each other			
melt	change from ice to water	بذو		
polluted	وث made dirty or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things	مل		
serious	لير bad or dangerous enough to make you worried	خد		

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات					
الكلمة Word		المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym		
usual	عادى	normal	unusual	غير معتاد	
dry	جاف	droughty	wet	مبتل	
polluted	ملوث	dirty	clean - unpollute	نظیف - غیر ملوث d	
flood	فيضان	flow	drought	جفاف	
noisy	صاخب	loud	quiet	هادئ	

Prefixes & Suffixes				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples		
– ous	تحول الاسم إلى الصفة	dangerous	خطير	
- ion	تكوِّن الاسم من الفعل	pollution	تلوث	
- ive	تكوِّن الصفة من الفعل	attractive	جذاب	
– ed	تكوِّن الصفة من الفعل	polluted	ملوث	
– able	تكوِّن الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	comfortable	مريح	
- ing	تكوَّن الصفة من الفعل	relaxing	مسترخ - مریح	

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressio dangerous place to liv العيش فيه		on a radio news p	ositions rogramme في برنامج أخباري في الإذاعة
make clean	يجعل نظيفًا	report for	یکتب تقریر ل
take home	يأخذ للمنزل	careful with	حذر بشأن
make a comparison	يقارن	on top of	على فمة
make a conclusion	يستنتج	present to	يعرض لـ
form of transport	وسيلة مواصلات	go with	تتماشي مع / يتوافق



Lesson (1) SB page 55

Two reports on a radio news programme for students. Report (1)

- 1. Jomana is reporting for(1) Student Radio in Cairo.
- 2. Volunteers are working to clean the river.
- 3. The volunteers⁽²⁾ are finding more rubbish in the water.
- 4. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted(3) than ever before.
- 5. They want the people who live in the city to help.

Report (2)

1. Karim is reporting from Alexandria for student FM.

- 3. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener⁽⁵⁾. 2. Alexandria started using new electric⁽⁴⁾ buses.
 - 4. People hope there will be less air pollution⁽⁶⁾ in the city.
- 5. The electric buses are cheaper to run.
- Some bus users liked the new buses.
- They were quieter than the old buses.
- 8. They also said that the seats were more comfortable.

Lesson [2] SB page 56

1. Today's presentation(7) is about climate change.

A changing world

- 2. Our planet(8) is changing.
- 3. The climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.
- 4. More droughts(9) mean worse fires than ever before.
- 5. Climate change⁽¹⁰⁾ means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.
- 6. Warmer and drier weather is melting(11) the ice on top of Mount Kilimanjaro.
- 7. The area of ice is smaller than 140 years ago.
- 8. Mount Kilimanjaro is the highest mountain in Africa.

9. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as

10. The ice is continuing(12) to get smaller. before.

(2) التلوث (3) مرض (3) فيلا يثلة (6) التلوث (7) عرض / تقديم التكبير المتاخ (11) يذوب / يصعر	(١) پکتب تقریر ا	(१) विद्याल क्षेत्रक प्रमुख	(%) श्रद्काक
(1) عرض / تقديم (1) يذوب / يصعم	Openhalo (2)	A	(01) Edy, Roils
	သရုစ (3)	(L) न(द) / खिटाई	راال يذوب ايصعر

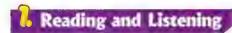
ألجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Helping the environment * The problem of pollution

* A new event

igia:

Report of news programme * Climate change







on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Girl: Hello, this is Jomana reporting for Student Radio in Cairo. Recently, volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more a canal rubbish in the water. They say the canal is dirtier and more polluted than ever before.

They are warning people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the river become cleaner.





<mark>یکٹب تقریر لے</mark> حذر بشان

Boy: This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for Student FM.

Today our city started using new electric buses. The buses will help

Alexandria be cleaner and greener. The buses will mean there is less
air pollution in the city, so they are greener and they are also cheaper
to run. I spoke to some bus users who said that the new buses were
quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable.



Listening - Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise The volunteers are finding more than before.

water b. rubbish

d ice

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

A changing world⁽¹⁾

Today's presentation⁽²⁾ is about climate change⁽³⁾. This means our planet⁽⁴⁾ is changing⁽⁵⁾. Here are two places that are different now.



c. food

(1) عالم متغير (2) عرض / تقديم (3) تغير المناخ (4) كوكب (5) يتغير

Australia

In this line graph⁽⁶⁾, the x-axis⁽⁷⁾ shows the uegr and the y-axis⁽⁸⁾ shows the change in temperature⁽⁹⁾. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter⁽¹⁰⁾ and drier(11). More droughts(12) mean worse fires(13) than ever before. Climate change means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

Mount Kilimaniaro(14)

This bar chart⁽¹⁵⁾ shows that warmer⁽¹⁶⁾ and drier weather is melting(17) the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area⁽¹⁸⁾ of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing to get smaller.

Answer the following

	main idea	إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
Learn	1. Give a suitable title for the	e passage.
	- A changing world	

Extracting information

Practise 2. There is less around Mount Kilimanjaro than before.

a. flood

b. drought

c. rain

استخراج الوعلومات

(6) خط بیائی (7) المحور السيئي

(8) المحور الصادي

(9) درجة الحزارة

(10) أكثر سذونة (11) أكثر جفافًا

(14) جبل ڪليمنجارو (15) رسم أو مخطط بيائي

(17) يذيب / ينصمر

(18) ونطقة/ وساحة

(16) أكثر دفثًا

(12) جفاف

(13) حراثق



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

- 1. Some places suffer from because of little rain.
- b. drought
- c. rubbish
- d. pollution
- 2. The High Dam protects Egypt from
 - a. sunset
- b. pollution
- c. flood
- d. relaxing
- 3. We should all protect the That's the place in which we live. a. school
 - b. environment c. climate
- d. presentation
- 4. Not many fish live in the river because it is very
 - a. comfortable
- b. green
- c. polluted
- d. clear

5. We made a			
a. country	b. mountain	c. presentation	d. class
SB , WB & Previous Exa			
6ice on	tops of mountain	ns is the result of c	imate change.
a. Melting	b. Sinking		d. Swimming
		· ·	lenia – Beni Mazar 2024)
7. 🖾 Drier weathe	er bad fir	res in Australia.	(Menofia Menouf 2024)
a. changes	b. shows	c. causes	d. gives
8. W Green mean	s connected to	the enviro	nment.
a. protecting	b. damaging	c. giving	d. recycling
9. Countries will us			
future.			(Fayoum - Etsa 2022)
a. yellow	b. white	c. green	d. red
El-Moasser Exercises			
10. This diagram	how we co	an plant a tree .	
	b. shows		d. learns
11. "" is th	e opposite of "flo	od".	
a. Rain	b. Drought	c. Sunset	d. Sunrise
12. Theshows how car prices have risen since the 1980s.			
a. temperature	b. graph	c. conclusion	d. fuel
Definitions			
13. A large amount		ers an area that w	vas dry before is
called		0 1	ها در دراد
a. conclusion			d. drought
14 means	_		.i ex
	b. Melt	c. Axis	d. Fix
Language Notes,	Expressions & P	repositions	
15 top of			al Ymaa
a. In	b. From	c. On	d. Into
16. I a con			
a. did	b. made	c. gave	d. thought



ممارة التحدث

Talking about climate change

الحديث عن تغير المناخ

Questions



Answers



- 1. What is climate change?
 - ١. ما هو التغيير المناخي ١
- 2. Is climate change as serious as pollution?
 - ٢. هل تغير المناخ يمثل خطورة مثل التلوث ؟
- 3. Should we be worried about climate change?
 - ٣. هل يجب علينا القلق حيال التغير المناخي ؟
- 4. How can we stop that?
 - ٤. كيف بمكننا وقف هذا ؟



- It's the changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans are doing.
 - التغيرات في مناخ الأرض بسبب الأشياء التي يقوم نها النشر.
- Yes, of course. It's a real problem.
 - نعم، بالطبع. إنها مشكلة حقيقية.
- Yes, we should. It's a very serious problem.
 - نعم. يجب علينا ذلك. فهي مشكلة خطيرة جدًا.
- We can change our lifestyle. For example, we can use green transport.
- يمكننا تغير نظام حياتنا، على سبيل المثال ، يمكننا استخدام وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة.



مهارة الكتابة

يمكنك المقارنة بين شيئين مختلفين باستخدام الجمل التالية :

A comparison between two things مقارنة بين شيئين

- Old cars are not as attractive as modern ones.

السيارات القديمة ليست جذابة مثل السيارات الحديثة.

- Modern cars are more expensive than old ones.
 - السيارات الحديثة أغلى من السيارات القديمة.
- 4. Old cars are not as comfortable as modern ones.

السيارات القديمة ليست مريحة مثل السيارات الحديثة.



تذکر Remember

- 1. Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة
 - ex. fast / big / happy / cheap / dirty / quiet.... etc.
- 2. Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة
 - ex. beautiful / interesting / polluted / serious / danerous / attractive ... etc.

1. Comparative adjectives : المقارنة بين النين في صفة

```
الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة (er ) للصفة وتأتى بعدها [1] .

Short

adjectives

ألصفات القصيرة الصفات القصيرة + er + than

- fast → faster / old → older

ex. - The countryside is quieter than the city.

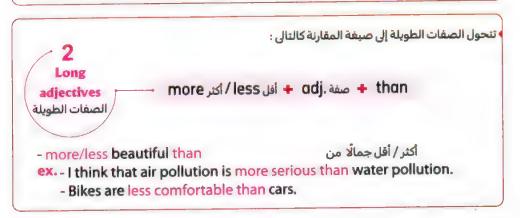
• لاحظ أن :

- large → larger / close → closer

: يُضَاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

- big → bigger / thin → thinner / hot → hotter / fit → fitter

: (e) للمنتهية بحرف الماكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (y) إلى (y) المساكن المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) إلى (y) الى (er) - easy → easier / happy → happier
```



as adjective dies as

أستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن التساوى في صفة معينة :

- ex. Droughts are as serious as floods.
 - Recycling is as important as using less electricity for the environment.
 - ♦ في حالة النفي تستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي في صفة معينة :

ex. - Australia isn't as hot as Africa.

تسيخ المقارنة غير المنتظمة - Irregular Comparative Forms

◄ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

	(1) Adjective	(2) Compara	tive
bad		worse than	أسوأ
far	יפיר	farther than further than	أبعد
1			أبعد
good	جيد	better than	أفضل
little	قليل [الكمية]	less than	أقل
many much	كثير (العدد) كثير (الكمية)	more than	أكثر

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

- 1. W Mount Catherine is a mountain than Jabal Mousa.
 - a. high b. higher
- c. highest d. as high
- 2. Soha is than Mona and came first.
- (Bent Sucf El Wasta 2024)

a. intelligent

a. føster

b. more intelligent

c. less intelligent

- d. as intelligent
- 3. 553 The River Nile is than before.

b. as fast

- a. more polluted b. polluted
- c. pollute
- d. polluter
- 4. 🛐 The ice on top of Mount Kilimanjaro isn't melting before.
 - anjaro isn c. fast as
- d. as fast as

5. The electric buses in Alexandria are the old buses. c. greener than d. greener then b. greener a. green (Qalyubia - El-Qanater - 2023) El-Moasser Exercises 6. Tamer likes reading he likes playing computer games. d. as much as c. much a. as much b. much as 7. The giraffe is the elephant. d. more tall a, taller than b. taller then c. tall 8. Today, the weather is yesterday. c, as hot as d. hotter a. as hot b. hot as 9. The shark is than the octopus. b. dangerous a. more dangerous d. dangerous than c. more danger 10. The dolphin isn't as the whale. d. big c. big as b. big like a. bigger 11. Messi is a than Ronaldo. b. good player a. better player d. player better c. more good player 12. Recycling is as using less electricity for the environment. b. important a. more important d. important as c. less important 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: SB. WB & Previous Exams 1. The plane is (as fast) than the train (Cairo - Ain Shams 2024) 2. [5] The River Nile is (much) polluted than it was before. 3. Will This new phone is (bad) than my old one. (Assuit - Manfalut 2023) 4. Australia is not (hot as) Africa. 5. Cars are (comfortable) than bikes. (Sharkia - El Qurein 2022) FI-Moasser Exercises 6. I think air pollution is as (serious) water pollution. 7. Which is (hot), Cairo or London? 8. The country is (quiet) than the city. 9. Swimming is (relaxing) than boxing.

Speaking & Writing Eorner

Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & E-mails

Step 1 Vocabulary	oulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر إتقانك لل	اختبر مدي إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	
Read and complete: 1. A: Do you know anything about	ete : w anything ?	Complete the following dialogue: Maged and Ayman are talking about climate change. Maged: Excuse me. Can I ask you some questions?	Write a paragraph on: "Climate change"
B: Yes, I do.	النعير المناحي	Maged: Do you know anything about climate change?	
A: 15 It a real problem on our کوکب گرگان ا B: Yes, it is.	roblem on our کوکب 1	Ayman: (2) Ayman: Yes, it is a real problem on our planet.	
3. A: How can we stop climate changes? B: By trees. act	e stop climate ما المارية عندانيا	Ayman: We can stop climate change by planting trees. Maged: Does that mean we should have more green areas? Ayman: (5)	(Alexandria – Gonirok 2023)
1. A: What is the about a about B: It is about air pollution. 2. A: What do you think air pollution? 3. A: Why should we use new as a why should we use new than the old buses.	s the about ? out air pollution. o you think air pollution ? بسبر ould we use new وسافلات الكهريائية و they are quieter e old buses.	about ? Jomana and Rody are talking about air pollution in the city. Jomana : What is the report about ? Rody : (1) ? Rody : I think old buses cause air pollution. Jomana : We should use new electric buses. Jomana : Why ? Rody : (4) Jomana : The seats are more comfortable, too. Rody : (5) (Sharkiya - Mashrool El Shouk 2022)	"How to keep the environment clean" (Solag - Tema 2024)

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand

Apply

O Create

1	Complete the following dialogue:
•	Ali is reading a book about the climate change.
	Mother: Ali, what are you doing?
	Ali : (1)
	Mother: What is this book about?

Ali :(2)...

: It means that the weather changes and becomes hotter.

Mother: Is it dangerous?

Ali

; (4)

: It is dangerous because it damages the environment. Ali

(Alexandria - El-Amria 2023)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our Egyptian environment is different from other places all over the world. It's very important for us to do our jobs freely everywhere. In fact we all enjoy our life in Egypt. So everyone can get his needs easily and daily without any problems. For example, students come to school every day happily to read, learn and write. Also, doctors do their jobs carefully and very well to help sick people at hospitals. What about the police officers, farmers and teachers? So we all should protect our country to live happily and safely. We need to keep our environment clean and (Bent Suef El Wasta 2024) healthy for ourselves and our children.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to d. farmers c. students b. teachers a. doctors 2. We need to keep our environment d. damaged c. unhealthy a. healthy b. dirty 3. The underlined word "daily" means "......". d. tomorrow b. every day c. yesterday
- b. Answer the following questions:

a. now

- 4. What is the main idea of the passage?
- 5. Why do students go to school?

6. Why do you think we should protect our country?

	Choose the corr	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
	1. There are a lot	of cars in the city t	hata	lot of air pollution.
	a. recycle	b. cause	c. melt	d. pollute
				lria - East Alexandria 2024)
•			– It is hot.	airo West Nasi Cit, 2024)
	a. weather			d. band
-		es warm, ice		
	a. boils	b. cools	c. freezes	d. melts
•			· ·	v there is a
	a. conclusion	b. pollution	c. flood	d. drought
			1	(Gharbia - Al-Santa 2022)
	a. Mountain	ge is a great prob		
			c. Climate	
I	a. snow	b. news	c. article	ng as fast as before. d. presentation
		n't cause any poll		a. presentation
Ī	a. Oil	b. Smoke		d. Rubbish
į		re floods		d. Nabbisii
Ì	a. as serious as		c. like serious	d. serious
d		as Jordan.		
	30.	b. hot	c. hotter	d. hot like
6	10. Maths is	than English.		
Ì	a. difficult	b. difficult than	c. as difficult	d. more difficult
4	Complete the sen	tences with the co	rect form of the	word(s) in brackets:
ì	1. The first train go			
	The moeta and go	***************************************	(rast) than th	(Minia – Maghagha 2024)
	2. Is today	(cold) th	an uesterdau?	(Beni Sucj. Nasser 2023)
				for you than sweets.
	3			(Menofiya - Quesina 2022)
	4. He is	(bad) than h	nis friend.	
5	Write a paragrap	h of about NINE	TY (90) words	on: Chillian Process
		ect of climate cha		
		*****	***************************	
	*** *** ****************************	*****************	*************************	
	********** ********* ****************			*************************************



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

canal (n)	قناة [مائية]	nature reserve (n	محمية طبيعية (
cotton (n)	قطن	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
ship (n)	سفينة	podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية
spotlight (n)	تسليط الضوء - ضوء كشاف	green energy (n)	طاقة نظيفة (لا تسبب تلوث)
sweets (n)	and the same of th	coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية
locate (d) (v)	يحدد موقع - يقع في	environment mat	شئون/أمور البيئة (ters (n
monuments (n)		Ministry of Touris	

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:

cotton - wildlife - nature reserve - podcast - located

- 1. Egypt is in North Africa.
- 2. Egypt is famous for its all over the world.
- 3. Animals and plants are examples of
- 4. Last month, I went to Ras Mohamed

-Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

The state of the s			
title (n)	عنوان / لقب	buildings (n)	مباني
article (n)	مقال	tourists (n)	سائحون
mosque (n)	مسجد	position (n)	وضع/مكان
main (adj)	أساسي/رئيسي	local (adj) (n)	محلى
focus (ed) (v), (n)	يركز - تركيز	name (d) (v), (n)	بسمی / یدعی - اسم
wheat (n)	قمح	sugar (n)	سكر
Pyramids (n)	أهرامات	pray (ed) (v)	بصلى
black honey (n)	عسل أسود	particular (adj)	خاص

Lesson 4 SB page 60 WB page 112

turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
coast (n)	ساحل	owner (n)	صاحب/مالك

UNIT SIX

respect (ed) (v), (n)	– بحترم - احترام	worker (n)	عامل
introduction (n)	مقدمة	scuba divers (n) بالتنفس	غطاسين باستخدام أنابيا
exactly (adv)	بالضبط/تمامًا	boat trips (n)	رحلات بالقارب
tourism (n)	السياحة	wind (n)	رياح
travel companies		scuba diving (n)	
= tourism companies	شركات السياحة (n)	الغطس في الأعماق [باستخدام أبيوب النيفس]	
recycling bin (n)	صيدوق إعادة تدوير	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
winner (n)	فائز	produce (d) (v)	ينتج/يصدر
	Famous place	أماكن مشهورة 😢	
The Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر	Al-Ahmadi Mosque	مسجد الأحمدي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

ضارع Present	الم	الماضي Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
grow	يزرع	grew	grown
know	يعرف	knew	known

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

canal	a long area of water made for ships or boats	قناة مائية
cotton	a plant used for making clothes	قطن
locate	find or discover the exact position of something	بحدد موقع
mosque	a building where Muslims can pray	مسجد
spotlight	a very bright, strong light that you can shine on a c area; also a focus on some information سليط الضوء	ertain ضوء کشاف - ن
tourism	the business of providing places to stay and things people who are on holiday	to do for السياحة
wildlife	animals and plants that live in natural conditions	الحياة البرية

Vocabulary Study

مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات ومتضادات مترادفات المتعادلات مترادفات المتعادلات مترادفات المتعادلات ال				
Word	الكلمة	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
connected	متصل	linked - related	disconnected غير متصل	
particular	خاص/معین	special - exact	general عام	
main	رئیسی / اساسی	major - essential	secondary / common ئانوي/عادي	

winner	فائز	hero - champion	loser	خاسر
focus	يركز	concentrate - spotlight	neglect - leave	يهمل
closed	مغلق	locked	open - unlocked	مفتوح

Prefixes & Suffixe	es	وناهية	مقاطع بادئة
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Examples	أمثلة
– er	يكون اسم الفاعل من الفعل	worker winner	عامل فائز
dis –	يكون عكس الصفة	disconnected	غير متصل
- tion	تكوَّن الاسم من الفعل	introduction	مقدمة
re –	تعطى معنى القيام بالفعل مرة ثانية	recycle	بعيد تدوير



General Notes on Reading & Listening

as a result = so

نتيجة لذلك

I studied hard. As a result, I succeeded.

(WB page 112) (SB page 60)

2 green energy

طاقة نظيفة (غير ملوثة للبيئة)

Green energy from the sun doesn't pollute the environment.

(WB page 112)

3 produce - product

* produce (v)

ينتج

- The hotel produces very little rubbish.
- * product (n)

مُنتج

I like dairy products.

(WB page 112)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
stop (inf. + ing)	يمنع - پوقف	famous / known fo	مشهور ہے Or
do water sports	يمارس رياضات مائية	spotlight on	تسليط الضوء على
make greener	يجعلها أكثر ملائمة للبيئة	(be) connected to	متصل ہـ
go scuba diving	يذهب للغطس	(be) located in	يقع في (مكان)
(be) made from	مصنوع من	stop from	يوقف (شخص) عن فعل شي



Lesson (3) SB pages 58 & 59

Lesson [4] SB page 60

A. Spotlight on(1) Port Said

- Port Said is located in⁽²⁾ the north-east of Egypt.
- . The city is known for⁽³⁾ its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- 3. Port Said is connected to⁽⁴⁾ Suez by the Suez Canal.
 - 4. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

B. Spotlight on Tanta

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- 2. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- 3. The city is known for its delicious sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

C. Spotlight on Minya

- 1. My home city is Minya.
- 2. It is located near the Nile.
- Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.
 - 4. The city is known for its delicious "black honey⁽⁵⁾".
- 5. The honey is made from sugar.
- Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the citu.
- 7. My city is very beautiful and interesting!

- 1. The podcast presenter says that today on **Environment** Matters⁽⁶⁾ we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast.
 - 2. Salma Fawzy is from the Ministry of Tourism⁽⁷⁾.
- She talks about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment.
- 4. The podcast presenter asks Salma if she is interested in helping both tourism and the environment.
 5. Salma says exactly tourism is very important to Egypt.
 - Sairing sugs exactly tourism is very important to Egyp 6. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world.
- The coast⁽⁸⁾ also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife.
- 8. The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.
- 9. Salma says the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves⁽⁹⁾.
- 10. We are also working with hotels and travel companies⁽¹⁰⁾. 11. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener.
 - 12. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

(1) نُسلبط الضوء على (2) ثقع في	(५) कांक्र, मम्मुक
(2) نقع في	(7) وزارة السياحة
(E) वजिंक ने	ارة السياحة (8) الساحل
ف بـ (4) متصل بـ	(9) محمیات طبیعیة
(S) framil Illimpe	(9) محمیان طبیعیة (10) شرکان السیاحة

* A famous Egyptian city * A spotlight on (Port Said / Tanta / Minya)

* Nature reserves

* Tourism in Egypt

: வூ



Reading and Listening



on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Spotlight on(1)... Port Said

- Port Said is located(2) in the north-east of Egypt.
- The city is known for (3) its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to⁽⁴⁾ Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

Spotlight on... Tanta

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton is grown in the greg.
- The citu is known for its delicious sweets.
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

Answer

the following auestions:

Extracting information

Legrn 1. Where is Port Said?

- It is located in the north - east of Egypt.

استخراج المعلومات

2. What is Tanta famous for?





- (3) معروف بـ
- (4) وتصل / ورثيط يـ

on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Mu home citu is Minva⁽¹⁾. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes (2), wheat (3) and sugar (4). The city is known for its delicious "black honey(5)".

The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient monuments (6) and buildings (7) are found in the citu. Mu citu is very beautiful and interesting(8)!



(1) مدينة المنيا (2) البطاطس (3) قمح (4) سكر (5) العسل الأسود (6) آثار (7) مباني (8) رانع/شيق

on Lesson 4 WB page 112

The North Hotel

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach⁽¹⁾ and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more⁽²⁾ tourists. However, the hotel owner said that last year, there were not as many turtles on the beach as usual⁽³⁾.

As a result⁽⁴⁾, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are **closed to**⁽⁵⁾ tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand, the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.

The South Hotel

The South Hotel is near the coast and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists **pay for** (6) the boat trips is used to help protect the coral reefs.

The East Hotel

The East Hotel is very new. Only **green energy**⁽⁷⁾ from the sun and **wind**⁽⁸⁾ is used at the hotel. The hotel also **produces**⁽⁹⁾ very little rubbish: most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on **local farms**⁽¹⁰⁾, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local **villages**⁽¹¹⁾.

(6) يدفع لـ	(5) يُغلق تجاه/نحو	(4) كنتيجة لـ	(3) كالمعتاد	(2) المزيد والمزيد من	(۱) على شاطيء جميل
	(11) قري	(10) مزارع محلية	(9) ينتج/نِصدر	(8) ریاح	(7) طاقة بظيفة





on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Podcast Presenter:

Today on Environment Matters' we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast?. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage the environment.



(1) في أمور/شئون البيثة (2) على ساحل البحر الأحمر (3) وزارة السياحة

(4) هل هذا صحيح ؟

(9) شركات السياحة

(10) قوانين/قواعد

(11) جوائز لـ

(7) جُزر ب مجمیات طبیعیة

من مختلف أنحاء العالم
 (6) ضروری ممام لـ

Podcast Presenter:

Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism and the environment, is that right?⁽⁴⁾

Salma:

Exactly. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs and lots of important wildlife.

The coral reefs are important for our sharks, dolphins and turtles.

Podcast Presenter:

So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

Salma:

Well, the islands on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves . We are also working with hotels and travel companies . We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

Podcast Presenter: Good idea!

Salma:

We also think that it's important to teach tourists about how to look after our special environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving.



Listening 1 - Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practise The coral reefs are important

a. wildlife b. building

c. prizes d. I

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ Key vocabulary

1. Ras Mohammed is a famous nature all over the world.
a. coast b. reserve c. desert d. oasis

2. The Red Sea is full of colourful

a. pets b. canals

c. coral reefs d. deserts

UNIT SIX

3. There are many ar			
a. monuments	b. coral reefs	c. tourists	d. sweets
4. The Ministry of	does its be	est to attract tour	ists to Egypt.
a. Education	b. Tourism	c. Industry	d. Police
SB , WB & Previous Exams	5		
5. SB Tanta is	in the north o	of Egypt.	
a. cought b	. located	c. grown	d. made
			o East Navi Car 2024
6. Port Said is connec			
	b. Canal		d. Coast
7. We know Giza			
a. libraries b	. waterwheels	c. pyramids	d. parks
El-Moasser Exercises			
8. Muslims go to the	mosques five tim	es to ev	very day.
a. own b	. recycle	c. pray	d. build
9. He bought the hou	ise yesterday. He	's thene	ow.
a. manager b	. worker	c. driver	d. owner
10 rubbish i	s the only way to	save our planet.	
a. Cycling b	. Throwing	c. Recycling	d. Burning
Definitions			
11 is a v	ery bright, strong	g light that you co	an shine on
a certain area.			ary - Tell El Kebir 2021)
a. Sunlight b			d. Candlelight
12. A is a bui			J. 1
a. mosque b		_	•
13. A/An is a	-	1	
a. canal b.	wildlife	c. mosque	d. park
► Language Notes, Exp			
14. Hany stopped			
		smoking	d. smokes
15. Egypt is famous		nt monuments.	1.4
		c. off	d. by
16. I was sick			-) A141 - 1
a. Because b.	. As a result	c. But	d. Although



مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about a city in your country: توجيه أسئلة واجاباتها عن مدينة في بلدك:

Questions





- 1. What is the name of the citu? Where is it located?
 - ١. ما اسم هذه المدينة ؟ وأين تقع ؟
- 2. Can you name a famous place in or near the citu?
- لا مكن أن تذكر مكان شهير بالمدينة أو بالقرب
- 3. What do people grow or catch around the city?
 - ٣. ما الذي يقوم الناس بزراعته أو اصطباده حول المدينة ؟
- 4. What is the city famous for? ٤. بما تشتهر المدينة ؟

Answers

- It is Port Said. It is located in the north-east of Egypt.
- إنها مدينة بورسعيد وتقع في الشمال الشرقي من مصر.
- The city (Port said) is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal.
- المدينة (بورسعيد) متصلة بمدينة السويس عن طريق قناة السويس.
- Many fish are caught in the sea in an area near the city (Port Said).
 - العديد من الأسماك يتم اصطبادها في البحر في منطقة قريبة من المدينة (بورسعيد).
- The city is famous for its port. تشتهر المدينة بميناءها.

Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Where you live or a place you know well

- 1. My home city is Tanta.
- 2. It is located in the north of Egypt.
- 3. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.
- 4. The city is known for its delicious sweets.

أين تعيش أو مكان تعرفه جيدًا

مسقط رأسي هي مدينة طنطا.

إنها تفع في شمال مصر.

بزرع الكثير من القطن في المنطقة.

تشتهر المدينة بالحلويات اللذبذة.

El Moasser

Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلان
- تمكنك من اتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع)

والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات



Language

The Present Simple: Active & Passive

Active

صيغة المبنى للمعلوم

صيغة الإثباد

I / You /
We / They / ♣ التصريف الأول ♣ / اسم جمع

He / She / It / مصدر + [s/es/ies] الفعل اسم مفرد

firmativ

ex. - My brother helps me.

 We know Tanta for its delicious sweets.

Passive

صيغة المبني للمجهول

نائب الفاعل مشعول الجملة + is + p.p. الذي حل محل are

ex. - I am helped (by my brother).

- لاحظ تحول ضمير المفعول (me) إلى (I).

ex. - Tanta is known for its delicious sweets (by us).

- لاحظ تحول ضمير الفاعل (we) إلى(us) .

صيغة النفي

I/You/ We/They/ + don't + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / + doesn't + مصدر الفعل السم مفرد

ex. - We don't play tennis.

- Omar doesn't eat sweets.

نائب الفاعل مm مفعول الجملة is + not + p.p. الذي حل محل are

ex. - Tennis isn't played (by us).

- Sweets aren't eaten (by Omar).

السؤال بـ (هل) No question / Yes

- ex. Do people speak English in Brazil?
 - Does Salma study maths and science?

ائك الفاعل نائب الفاعل المعلق + Am [مفعول الجملة + p.p. أ الذي حل محل الفاعل] Are

- ex. Is English spoken (by people) in Brazil?
 - Are maths and science studied (by Salma)?

السؤال بأداة استفهام Wh question

- ex. Where do you buy your clothes?
 - Who cooks lunch in your family?



- ex. Where are your clothes bought?
 - Who is lunch cooked by in your family?

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (by) بعد الفعل عندما يبدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام (who) في صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Exercises

on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Previous Exams

- 1. / Many fish in the sea near Port Said.
 - a. have caught b. are caught c. are catching d. catch

3. Who is the book	by?		(Dakahlia – Mansoura 2024)
a. writes	b. wrote	c. written	d. write
4. 7 Only green			
		c. using	
5. The homework			Quality 1 20 3
a. is written			d. is writing
6. 473 Giza is			
a. knowing	b. know	c. knew	d. known
	(Multidisciplinary	- Mınya - Beni Mazar .	2021 / Sharkia – Fakous 2024)
El-Moasser Exercises			
7. The car	repaired by t	he mechanic.	
	b. not		d. aren't
8. The letter is	by Maze	n.	
a. written	b. write	c. wrote	d. writing
9. The zoo is visited	d the	students.	
a. with	b. by	c. to	d. on
10. The gifts			
a. is given	b. give	c. gave	d. are given
11. Where is Port Sa	id?		
a. located	b. locate	c. locates	d. locating
12 cotton	clothes made	in Egypt?	
a. Have	b. Was	c. Are	d. Can
2. Complete the ser	ntences with	the correct form	of the word(s) in
brackets:			
SB, WB & Previous Exa	ms		
1. Manu ancier	nt buildinas an	d monuments are	e. (finding) in
Minya.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
2. What places	(be)	visited by tourist	s in Egypt ?
			ers. (Dametta Zarka 2024)
			diam's of
5. Cheese			Solar Il Meraste VOS
El-Moasser Exercises			
	anala) bu mash	on 7 Field	
6. What (_		
7. Tanta			ous sweets.
8. When is fruit usu			
9. Furniture isn't		_	or.
10. Lots of foods		(grow) in Delta.	

Speaking & Writing Corner

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Designation Count & Deliment J.

	Step 1 Vocabulary	Speaking	Step 3 Writing
	اختبر إتقائك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	احبر مدى إنقات لمهارة الكتابة
	Read and complete:	Complete the following dialogue:	Write a paragraph on :
	1. A: What is your	Ashraf is telling Ayman about his nome city. Auman: What is nour home citu?	"Your home city"
_	B: Tanta.	Ashraf : (1)	
มว อเ	2. A: Where is it	Ayman: Tanta! (2) Ashraf: It is located in the north of Eaupt.	
uou	B: It is located in the north of	Ayman: (3) ?	
_	Egypt.	Ashraf: It is famous for its delicious sweets.	
	3. A: What is the city for?	Ayman : Does It have famous places ? Ashraf : (4)	
	B: It is famous for its delicious	Ayman: Can I see photos of it?	
	SWeets.	Ashraf : (5) (Menofia – Ashmoon 2023)	1 191 1
-	1. A: Why is the plan for the	Aya and Reem are talking about the plan for	"How to help the environment"
	new hotel a good idea?	the new note: Aug - Do you think this plan for the new	
	B: Because from	hotel is a good idea, Reem?	
	Ž X	Reem: (1)	
	at the hotel. at the	Aya : (2) ?	
	2. A : Does the hotel very	Reem : Because green energy from the sun and wind is used at the hotel.	
	little rubbish ?	Aug : I garee with you. (3)?	
djə	B:Yes, it does.	Reem: Yes. The hotel produces very little rubbish.	
	3. A : Where are the fruit and	Aya:Where are the fruit and vegetables grown? Reem: (4)	
wol	vegetables grown at the hotel restaurant?	Aya : Local farms! Can tourists in the area help the local people?	
	مزارع محلية	ofly ochip	Bulun 2024)

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

1	Listen and cho	ose the correct a	nswer from a,	b, cord:
•		ع في نهاية الكتاب)	صحيحة (نصوص الاستما	استمع إلى معلمك واختر اللجابة اا
	1. The text is abo	out		
	a. Minya	b. Tanta	c. Cairo	d. Port Said
	2. Where is the c	ity located? - It is	located in the	of Egypt.
	a. north	b. south	c. east	d. west
	3. The city is kno	wn for its	ng 4	
	a. temples		b. delicious	
	c. ancient mor	numents	d. pyramids	
	4. What is grown	there?		
	a. Cotton	b. Rice	c. Wheat	d. Sugar
2	Complete the f	ollowing dialog	ue:	
100		-		line
		ed are talking ab	-	live.
		hmed! Where do y		
		amel! (1)		
		ocated near Cairo	*	
		own for the Pyram	_	ou live ?
		= 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0 = 0		
		visited by tourists		
		h 4 Z P 2 C 4 h 2 P 4 h 2 R h 2 R mere y 6 n 2 F 4 m 4 6 F 4 m 4 v 4 F 4 p y 4 p		
	Ahmed: Oh!I vi	sited Luxor Temple	e before.	
3	Choose the core	rect answer from	a b cord:	
•	_	mous for its natur b. oceans		Miner Surviva 202 -
	a. reserves		c. seas	d. rivers
•	_		_	d by scuba
	a. writers	b. travellers	c. divers	d. drives
			(Ka	fr El-Sheikh - Desouk 2024)

•	3 shou	ld look after the er	vironment whe	en they visit a country. andria - El - Montazah 2023)
	a. Drivers	b. Tourists	c. Guides	d. Owners
	4 Good teachers	on slow	learners in thei	r classes.
	a. spotlight	b. leave	c. let	d. light
•	5. Robinson Crus	oe's sank	in the sea beca	ause of a storm.
	a. shop	b. ship	c. flat	d. farm
•	6. Bread is made			
	a. wheat		c. sugar	d. sweets
•		nese is not an exam		
	a. Chicken	b. Turtle	c. Dolphin	d. Mouse
0	8. The old man	by the pol	iceman.	
	a. is helped	b. has helped	c. helped	d. help
0	9. The juice is	by Amir.		
	a. drinking	b. drunk	c. drank	d. drink
< 1	0. The book	by Hani.		(Giza - Haram 2022)
	a. is read	b. read	c. reads	d. has read
4	Complete the s brackets:	entences with the	e correct form	of the word(s) in
	1. Juice	(not drink) by Sal		Samuel Vilken (2)
	2 Cheese	(make) from m	ilk. Mexa	ndrae Tass Auxordia 2005,
	3. Cotton clothes	s (sell) all	over the world	18de 2022
		(is) these books		
5	Write a paragra	ph of about NINE	TY (90) words	on:
			ome city"	
			•	*** ** * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
	* * * *	** **	• **	**
		. , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
		y yw w 44.		





Key Vocabulary

riverbank (n)	ضفة النهر	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
plastic bags (n)	أكياس بلاستيك	volunteer (n)	متطوع
aim(ed) (v) , (n)	يهدف - هدف	vote (d) (v), (n)	بضّوت - تصویت
souvenirs (n)	هدابا تذكارية	suggestion (n)	اقتراح

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- · Complete the following sentences using the words in the box:
 - riverbank volunteer souvenirs vote
 - 1. He worked as a for a charity.
 - 2. I gave my to my classmate Omar.
 - 3. Tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 113

diagram (n)	رسم تحطیطی	solve (d) (v)	يحل (مشكلة)
washing (n)	غسيل	water bottles (n)	زجاجات المياه
school project (n)	مشروع دراسي	rubbish bin(n)	سلة المهملات
respond (ed) (v)	برد/بستجيب	recycling (n)	إعادة تدوير
plastic bags	أكياس بلاستيكية	event (n)	حدث هام
water (ed) (v)	یروی / یسقی	reuse (d) (v)	بعيد استحدام

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 114

global (adj)	عالمي	tonne (n)	طن [۱۰۰۰] کیلو جرام]
remind (ed) (v)	یْذکر (شخص)	coloured (adj)	ملون
including (prep)	متضمنًا / مشتملًا على	improve (d) (v)	يحسن
importance (n)	أهمية	school newspaper (n)	جريدة المدرسة
market (n)	سوق	swap (ped) (v)	یبادل (شئ بغیرہ)

figs (n)	تين	traffic (n)	المرور
collect (ed) (v)	يجمع	hope (d) (v)	بتمىي
billion (n)	بليون	mistake (n)	خطأ

Countries, Cities and places

بلاد، مدن وأماكن

Amsterdam	مدينة امستردام [عاصمة هولندا]	Marsa Alam	مدینهٔ مرسی علم (فی مصر)
Sidi Bou Said	مدینهٔ سیدی بوسعید (فی تونس)	South Korea	دولة كوريا الجنوبية
Netherlands	دولة هولندا	Sidi Barrani	مدينة سيدي براني (في مصر)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	الماضى Past	التصريف الثالث .P.P
lead	يؤدي إلى	led	led

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات Word and المرادف Synonym المضاد Antonym real - true unreal untrue - fake غيرحقيقي حقيقي problem مشكلة trouble solution حل respond answer - reply يسأل - يستفسر ask - inquire برد - بستجیب ينسى-بتجاهل ignore - forget remind يُذكر (شخص) make you remember

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية				
Prefix / Suffix	الوظيفة Function	Exampl	أمثلة es	
– ed	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	coloured	ملون	
- ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	recycling	إعادة تدوير	
un –	تعطى عكس الكلمة	unreal	غيرحقيقي	
ro	تعطى معنى القيام بالفعل مرة ثانية	rearrange	بعيد ترتيب	
re –	عدعی معنی اسیام باطعی طره دنید	reuse	يعيد إستخدام	

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

- O Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. The word "ask" and "" are antonyms.
 - a. respond
- b. respect
- c. expect
- d. accept

- 2. To get the adjective from the word "colour", we add the suffix "....."....".

 a. ous b. tion c. al d. ed
- 3. To get the antonym of the wood "real", we add the prefix "...".

 a. dis b. un c. im d. il -
- 4. The word "problem" has the same meaning as
 - a. solution b. production c. trouble d. sadness
- 5. When something is not real, then it's......
 - a.formal b.factual c.true d.fake

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- وَخُرِهُ (بنك) صَفَةَ نَهِرِ bank
 - ▶- People keep their money in banks.
 - She likes sitting on the **riverbank**.
- - ▶- Donia aims at being a famous surgeon.
 - He has achieved his aim to be a pilot.
- 3 event accident (WB page 113)
 - * event
 - Global Recycling Day is an event in March.
 - * accident قادثة
 - His uncle died in an accident. (WB page 114)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جرهامة

Expressi	ons	Prep	ositions
get warmer	يصبح أكثر دفتا	hope to	يتمنى أن
have a class vote on الدراسة على	یجری تصویت بحجرهٔ	lie on the beach	يستلقى على الشاطئ
solve a problem		respond to	يرد على / يستجبب لـ
try recycling water o	يجرب إعادة تدوير المنا	lead to	يؤدي إلى
It was great to + inf.	كان من الرائع أن	a form of	شكل / نمط من

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

Lesson (5) WB page 113

- . Our school project(1) this week is to think about rubbish
- 2. In our school, we have a rubbish $bin^{(2)}$ in every room.
 - 4. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week. The students always put their rubbish in the bins.
- 5. It goes to a special place in the city.
- 6. Most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. 7. We can recycle⁽³⁾ a lot of rubbish.
- 8. Students can now put the rubbish in a special bin so it can be used again.

--- Lesson [6] SB page 62

Students help to clean river by Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

- Last weekend, ten students from class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank⁽⁴⁾.
- 2. The riverbank was near the city centre.
- The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.
- 4. Mr Hassan said that the students were sad to find so much rubbish.
- There were lots of plastic bags and bottles. 6. It was great to clean the riverbank.

- We need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish.
 - 8. Rubbish in the river damages (5) the wildlife.
- 1. Global Recycling Day⁽⁶⁾ is an event⁽⁷⁾ in March. Lesson (6) WB page 114
- 2. It aims to remind(8) people of the importance of recycling things.
- 3. In 2018, people produced about 11 billion tonnes of rubbish around the world.
 - 4. At the moment, a lot of rubbish is burned.
- 5. Burning rubbish (9) can lead to climate change. Germany recycles more than 56% of rubbish.
- In 1991, it recycled about 3%.
- 8. South Korea (10) recycles more than 53% of its rubbish.
 - 9. Coloured(11) plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more(12).
 - Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

(1) مشروع محرسی (2) سلة مصملات	(6) اليوم العالمي لإعادة تدوير النمايات (7) حدث	(11) كوريا الجنوبية (11) فتؤن
(६) ज्यार प्रकृत	(7) حدث	(<u>S</u> 1) (2) (<u>A</u> 2)
(के) टंबंठ पिना	(8) بذخر	
(\$) <u>you</u>	(6) टाडि प्रदेशकि	

تتويه : 👤 الجمل السابقة تساعدك على النعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى: * Global Recycling Day * A school project * A recycling project * Collecting rubbish





Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Aua: The problem is that we all use too much water.

Reem: That's true . So, how can we use less water?

Aug: Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem: How could we do that?

Aua: For example, we could use the water from

washing to water the plants(3).

Reem: That's an interesting idea 1! The plants

would like that!

يجرب إعادة تدوير المياه 🔞 يسقى السائات 👍 إنها فكرة مثيرة للاهتمام







• on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Girl:

Our school project this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment ', the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place in the city.



But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: can I recucle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

'۱۱' بفكر في 2) في هده اللحظة

Skill ممارة الاستماع Proctise This week's project is about .

c.holidau d.iobs a. environment b. rubbish

• on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Dina: Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila: How can we stop people using them?

Dina: Why don't we ask people to use them again?

Leila: How could we do that?

Dina: People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring (2) them

to school the next day.

Leila: That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.

(1) زجاجات فياه بلاستيكية (2) يحضر



on Lesson 6 SB page 62

Students help to clean river

By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi

Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up⁽¹⁾ the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.

Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles", he said. "We even found an old shoe!"



One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more **careful with**⁽²⁾ their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages the wildlife".

Well done⁽³⁾ to the volunteers!

the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تَذَمَينَ مَعْنَى مَفْرِدَةَ لَغُويةَ فَى النص Practise The word "......" means animals and plants that live in natural conditions.

a. recycling b. riverbank c. wildlife d. rubbish bin

(1) ينظف (2) دريص بشأن (3) أحسنته صنعًا

on Lesson 6 WB page 114

What is Global Recycling Day?

Global Recycling Day⁽¹⁾ is an event⁽²⁾ in March. It aims to⁽³⁾ remind⁽⁴⁾ people of the importance⁽⁵⁾ of recycling things including⁽⁶⁾ paper, plastic,

(1) اليوم العالمي لإعادة تدوير النفايات (2) حدث (3) يهدف إلى (4) يُذكر (5) أهمية (6) متضمنًا / مشتملًا على

metal, water and even **gas**⁽⁷⁾ and **oil**⁽⁸⁾. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

So why is recycling so important?

In 2018, people produced about 11 **billion**⁽⁹⁾ **tonnes**⁽¹⁰⁾ of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burned and this can **lead to**⁽¹¹⁾ climate change.



What are countries doing about the problem?

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles more than ⁽¹²⁾ 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled about 3%. South Korea recycles more than 53% of its rubbish. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more ⁽¹³⁾, because you cannot recycle them. Most countries hope to ⁽¹⁴⁾ recycle more in the future.

رَي غاز (7) غاز (8) زيت (8) بنيون (10) اطنان (11) يؤدى إلى (12) أكثر من (13) بعد اللن (14) يتمنى أن

(Cairo - New Cairo 2024)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Kev vocabularv

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists visited	Khan Al-Khalili ar	nd bought some.	
a. suggestions	b. volunteers	c. problems	d. souvenirs
2. Who did you	for in the	ہات last elections	? in your class انتخا
a. solve	b. hope	c. vote	d. do
3. The flood dam	aged the houses v	which were on the	e
a. river	b. riverbank	c. river bed	d. river water
4. Public libraries.	to encour	age students to re	ead and borrow books.
a. give	b. bring	c. catch	d. aim
B, WB & Previous E	cams		
5. Our teacher he	ped us to	our skill in read	ling. (Sohay Maragha 2024)
a. reuse	b. damage	c. improve	d. prove
6. We could u	se water from was	shing to	the plants.
a. cut	b. waste	c. water	d. use
		(Al-Q	alyoubeya - Al-Obour 2022)
7. 373 Recycling t	hings po	aper, plastic and	metal is important.
a. burning	b. changing	c. including	d. solving

8. A lot of rub	bish is	and this can lead to	o climate change. d. burned
a. washed	p. reusea	c. recycled	arkia – East Zagazig 2023)
FI-Moasser Exercises		1346	White - Lusi Zugueig Does
21 111000000	and to	the problem of po	llution.
a. smoke	b. solve	c. think	d. answer
10 rubbi	ish is good for th	ne environment.	
a. Recucling	b. Doing	c. Making	d. Throwing
11. You can	plastic bottlb. make	es instead of throwi	ng them away. d. eat
•	D. HIGHE		
Definitions	alaca whore w	e can buy many thir	nas.
a. Riverbank	b. Cinema	c. Garage	d. City centre
		of collecting and cha	
alass plastic s	o that they can	be used again.	
a. Washing	b. Recucling	c. Producing	d. Cycling
Language Notes			
14. We hope	make our c	itu clean.	
a. of	b. to	c. on	d. in
		your parents' advice	2.
a ot	b. on	c. to	d. of
16. Every year we	a clas	s vote to choose a le	ader for our class.
a. hove	b. make	c. do	d. bring
2. Speaking			مهارة التحدث
Suggesting solut	ions to a prob	olem :	اقتراح حلول لمشكلة :
Ding : Look at all t	he plastic water	bottles in the rubbi	sh bin.
The probler	n is that we use	too many of them.	
ستحدم الكثير منها.	مامة. المشكلة هي أننا ب	المياه البلاستيكبة في سلة الق	دينا : انظري إلى جميع زجاجات
Leila: How can we	stop people us	ing them ؛	ليلي : كيف يمكننا إيقاف است
			والمار والمار معمر المار المار
Dina: Why don't w	e ask people to) use mem ugam : عادة الماخيساة عادا بـ ص	دينا : لما لا نطلب من الأشخا
Leila: How could v	ve do that?	على يعدد المسحدانية عرف من <u>ا</u> ا	ليلى : كيف يمكننا القيام بذلك
Ding : People coul	d take home the	e bottles, wash then	n, and bring them
to school th	e next day.		
ـ التال معيال	حضارها الهالمدرسة ف	زجاجات للمنزل وغسلها ثم إ	دينا : يمكن للأشخاص أخذ ال
Leila : That's an in	teresting idea. V	Ne can see what the	teacher thinks. ليلى : انما لفكرة مثيرة للاهتم

Pop Quiz

on Speaking

• Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman is doing a school project.

Samy: What are you doing?

Ayman: (1)

Samy: Do you know a lot about your family history?

Ayman: (2)

Samy: (3)

Ayman: My grandfather used to live in the countryside.

Samy: (4)

Ayman: He was a doctor.

Samy: I think he was a good and helpful man.

Ayman: (5)



مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips:

نصائح للكتابة :

 Remember to check your writing for mistakes. Make sure that the grammar, spelling and punctuation are correct.

- تذكر أن تتحقق من اللَّخطاء عند الكتابة. تأكد من صحة القواعد اللغوية والهجاء وعلنمات الترقيم.

How to use less water

كيفية استخدام المياه بصورة أقل

1. Water is essential to our life.

الماء ضروري / أساسي لحياتنا.

- 2. The problem is that we all use too much water.المشكلة أننا نستخدم جميعًا الكثير من الماء المشكلة
- We use water in drinking, washing and cooking in our houses.

نحن نستخدم الماء في الشرب والغسيل والطهى في منازلنا.

4. It is important to use less water.

إنه من المهم أن نستخدم ماء أقل.

5. We can use less water by recycling water.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ماء أقل من خلال إعادة تدوير الماء.

6. This means using water again instead of wasting it away.

هذا يعني أننا نستخدم الماء مرة ثانية بدلاً من إهدارها بعيدًا.

7. We can use less water by using the water from washing to water the plants.
پمكننا أن نستخدم ماء أقل من خلال استخدام الماء المستخدم في الفسيل في سفى النباتات.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

OUnderstand

Apply

O Create

mplete the following the main and Nesma bna: Hi, Nesma			
	are talking a	bout reusing water	•
Dila . III, Resilia			
sma:Hi, Lobna	! (1)	?	
bna: I listened	to a radio prog	ramme last night.	
sma: (2)	?		
bna: It was abo	out how to use	less water.	
		how can we do tha	t ?
bna: (4)		. 3	
sma:How can v	ve recycle wat	er :	the plants
		n washing to water	tile plants.
esma : (5)			
		ver the questions	
Global Recycling	g Day started i	n 2018 to show the i	mportance of
ycling. It is a da	y for the world	to come together a	na put the planet
it. It is an event i	n March to ren	nind people of the ir plastic, metal, water	and even are and
	cluding paper,	piastic, metal, water	did even gas and
- 2019 noonla	produced abo	ut 11 billion tons of	rubbish around the
In 2016, people	produced abo	de la bimon conson	
arld. At the mom-	ent a lot of ou	r rubbish is burnt an	d this can lead to
mate change. No	country recu	les as much rubbish	as Germany : It
mate change. No	country recycles 56 % of it. In 1	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recucled abo	d this can lead to as Germany : It out 3 %. South Korea
mate change. No cycles more than cucles more than	country recyc 56 % of it. In 1 53 % of its rub	les as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo bbish. Coloured plas	id this can lead to i as Germany : It out 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no	o country recyc 156 % of it. In 1 153 % of its rub It used anymo	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo obish. Coloured plas re, because you can	od this can lead to I as Germany : It I at 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no	o country recyc 156 % of it. In 1 153 % of its rub It used anymo	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo obish. Coloured plas re, because you can	id this can lead to i as Germany : It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to r Choose the core	o country recyc i 56 % of it. In 1 i 53 % of its rub it used anymoi recycle more in rect answer fro	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled aboobish. Coloured plasse, because you can the future.	od this can lead to I as Germany: It I at 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to r Choose the core	o country recyc i 56 % of it. In 1 i 53 % of its rub it used anymoi recycle more in rect answer fro	tles as much rubbish 991, it recycled about bish. Coloured plast e, because you can the future. om a,b,c or d: d in	as Germany: It out 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no ountries hope to r Choose the corn 1. Global Recycl a. 2018	o country recycles 56 % of it. In 16 53 % of its rubot used anymore cycle more in rect answer from Day started b. 1991	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled about the plast of the plast of the future. I the future.	as Germany: It out 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (Faroun - Usa 2024) d. May
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to r Choose the corr 1. Global Recycl a. 2018 2. Burning rubbi	o country recyc i 56 % of it. In 1 i 53 % of its rub it used anymor recycle more in rect answer fro ing Day starte b. 1991 ish can make t	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled aboobish. Coloured plas re, because you can the future. re d in	d this can lead to as Germany: It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (Farmon - Usa 2024) d. May
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to reconstructions. Choose the corrections. 2018 2. Burning rubbit a stau	o country recycles 56 % of it. In 1 153 % of its rub t used anymou recycle more in rect answer from ing Day started b. 1991 ish can make the change	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo 19bish. Coloured plas 19e, because you can 19e the future. 19e d in	d this can lead to as Germany: It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (l-ayoun - lisa 2024) d. May d. disappear
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to 1. Choose the cort a. 2018 2. Burning rubbia. stay 3. The underline	o country recycles 56 % of it. In 1 53 % of its rubit used anymore cycle more in rect answer from Day started b. 1991 ish can make the b. change and word "lead"	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo 1991, it recycled abov 1991, it recycled abo	d this can lead to as Germany: It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (l-aroum · lisa 2024) d. May d. disappear
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no ountries hope to reconstructions. Choose the core 1. Global Recycle a. 2018 2. Burning rubbia. stay 3. The underline a. recycle	o country recycles 56 % of it. In 1 53 % of its rule to used anymore ecycle more in rect answer from Day started b. 1991 ish can make to b. change and word "lead" b. protect	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo 1991, it recycled abov 1991, it recyc	d this can lead to a as Germany: It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (Itaroum - Itsa 2024) d. May
mate change. No cycles more than cycles more than astic cups are no cuntries hope to 1. Choose the cort a. 2018 2. Burning rubbia. stay 3. The underline	o country recycles 56 % of it. In 1 53 % of its rule to used anymore ecycle more in rect answer from Day started b. 1991 ish can make to b. change to word "lead" b. protect	cles as much rubbish 1991, it recycled abo 1991, it recycled abov	d this can lead to as Germany: It but 3 %. South Korea tic bottles and some recycle them. Most (l-aroum - lisa 2024) d. May d. disappear

6. How do you think we can help solve the problem of rubbish?

	***************************************	(41-41-4		
3	Choose the corre	ct answer fron	na,b,cord:	
•	1. [53] The students	15 ba	gs of rubbish to clean	the riverbank.
	a. damaged		c. won	d. bought
		(Sharkia - 1	West Zagazig 2023 · Dakahl	_
•	2. 😘 Global Recyc	ling Day is a/an	in March, 🕡	Gharbia Kotoia 2022)
	a. place	b. event	c. tour	d. title
•	3 the be	d and relax. You	look so tired.	
	a. Lie on	b. Look at	c. Stay	d. Sleep
•	4. Water has a gred		ur life.	
			c. importance	
•		for the p	project and they all a	greed to them.
	a. problems		b. suggestions	
	c. celebrations		d. competitions	
-	6. I those			
		b. swapped		d. responded
•		to buy so	me vegetables for m	y mum.
	a. museum c. market		b. baker's	
7		110111 551 01 01	d. nature reserve	
,	8. Which is		c. the smallest	(Bent Suef 2023)
À	9. The black car is			a. more small
1	a. as expensive a		b. like expensive	
	c. as expensive	3	d. more expensive	0
1		prepared by my	mother as she was v	eru ill
			c. aren't	d. don't
				- Meet Ghamr 2024)
A	Complete the sente	nces with the co	orrect form of the wor	d(e) in brackets
6.	1. That suggestion i			u(3) III blackets .
			Nona every day. <i>(Dak</i>	alilia Sharkin 2022.
	3. WB A bike is not o	is(fas	st) a car.	unuu Sherom 2(725)
			d) now than it was be	efore.
5			ETY(90) words on :	
•	write a paragrapi	"How to use I		
			ess water	
	**** *************************	45 54		
	***************************************	********* ** ** * * * * * * * * * * * *		



Extracting information

(2) تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (استخراج معلومات Wirracting في Extracting من النص. • Information وهنا تحتاج لإستخراج معلومات من النص.

100

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question:

Global Recycling Day is an event in March. It aims to remind people of the importance of recycling things including paper,plastic, metal, water and even gas and oil. It started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries.

When is Global Recycling Day?

What month is Global Recycling Day in?

🦄 التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومة من النص

🥦 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة في الفقرة



A place you live in

بختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue:

Fady is asking Amir about his city:

Fady: Where do you live, Amir ?

Amir:(1)

Fady: (2)

Amir: Minya is located near the Nile.

Fady: (3)?

Amir: It is famous for its delicious black honey.

Fady: What is honey made from?

Amir: (4)

Fady: I like sugar. Do many tourists visit your city?

Amir: (5)They like visiting it.

 التحدى تريد [إجراء حوار عن المكان الذى تعيش فيه] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها. 🕦 م<mark>فتاح الحل</mark> يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين الشخص الموجه له السؤال.



الهدف من هذا الجزء
 التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
 اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review	ً • نُظُرة سريعة على القاعدة
er + than (صفة قصيرة)	يضاف للصفة القصيرة [er] وبعدها [than] للمقارنة
more / less (صفة طويلة) than	نضع more أو less قبل الصفة الطويلة وبعدها than
(not) as + (صفة) + as	للتعبير عن التساوي أو عدم التساوي في صفة
am / is / are → PP. التصريف الثالث	المضارع البسيط في صيغـة المبــــى للمجهول نبـــدأ بنائب الفاعــل ثــم am / is / are وبعدهم التصريف الثالث ونستخدم am / is / are كأفعال مساعدة في النفي والسؤال

Learn		◄ تعلم
Sentence	Correction	Reason
Lots of cotton is [grow] in the area.	grown	الجملة مبنيـة للمجهول لذا نضع التصريف الثالث (P.P) بعد is
The museum [visit] by lots of people.	is visited	نســتخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول لأن الجملة تبدأ بنائب فاعل
Oroughts are [more] serious as floods.	as	نستخدم (as) للتعبير عن التساوي في الصفة
4 Egypt is [big] than Jordan.	bigger	نستخدم صفة مقارنة لوجود than

Practice				◄ تدرب	
للقاعدة المطلوبة: Write the Reason	استيعابه	يؤكد	بب الإجابة	◄ معرفة الطالب لس	
• Ice cream is [most] delicious than cake.		more		,.,.	
● Football is not [difficult] as boxing.		as difficult			
My city [know] for its delicious sweets.		is known			
Port Said [connect] to Suez.		is connected		********	
Write the Correction :		-		◄ اكتب التصحيح	
Many fish [catch] in the sea every day.		,	ی	نستخدم صيغة المب للمجهول	
The desert is [not beautiful] as the coast.	***	يدم		نستخدم (not as) و الصفة للتعبير عن ع التساوى بين أثنين ؤ	
§ Figs are [most] delicious than chocolate.				نســتخدم more لو- مع صفة طويلة	

Review

one unit

Speaking

Suggesting solutions to a problem. اقتراح حلول لمشكلة ما

is that we use too many of rubbish bin. The problem Dina: Look at all the plastic water bottles in the them.

Leila: How can we stop people using them?

Dina: Why don't we ask people -eila : How could we do that? to use them again?

and bring them to school Dina: People could take home the bottles, wash them,

Leila ; That's an interestina idea! We can see what the teacher thinks.

the next day.

مراجعة عامة على (Unit 6 في ورقة واحدة

		ييغة المبني
Language	1. Present simple passive:	للمجهول في زمن المضارع البسيط :

3		
.g	Active	Passive
ijģ	- People cook eggs - Eggs are cooked	- Eggs are cooked
1	in a big pan.	in a big pan.
a	- She doesn't send	- This email isn't
بكرة	this email.	sent by her.
ρjc	- Do they eat	- Are special foods
10	special foods at	eaten at the
3	the festivals?	festivals?
g		

٢. المقارنة بين إثنين في صفة : 2. Comparatives:

es Short adjectives	- She is taller than	her mother.	- He is shorter than his brother.			
ப்பித்த நூர் Long adjectives	- Maths is more	difficult than	- Football is less	dangerous	than mountain	climbing.
نشرة صوتية	اعادة تدوير	البيئة	st	ساحل البحر الأحمر	ملائم للبيئة	درجة الحرارة
podcast	recycling	environment	Red Sea Coast	icol	green	درجة الحرارة egipali قيء

Vocabulary

فيضان جفاف بقع في hocated in الم air pollution algain الشعاب المرجانية coral reefs اة مائية غ) - تقديم presentation ûllals nation stall عانی ب - ينصهر ā, ig line graph podcast drought rubbish cotton canal flood melt

Ruestions collected from previous exams. تدریبات محمقة من اختیارات المحافظات علی الوحدة

9. This house every year. Mana Santable 2023. a. paint b. is painted c. is painting d. painted 10. This is the book I bought yesterday. a. who b. which c. where d. when	2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 1. What is	s e	10. Inis decision is (make) by Annea. (Glurbia - Samanod 2023)
. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The smoke of old cars causes pollution. a. water b. plant c. soil d. air (Gharbia - El Santa 2024)	2	4. Alexandria is in the North of Egypt. a. built b. collected c. located d. helped (Alexandria - Al-Anjoushi 2023) 5. Global Recycling Day aims to people of the importance of recycling. (Cano - El Salum 2024) a. remind b. remember c. forget d. remain 6. is a serious problem that affects badly on the environment. 7. It's important to be careful d. at d. c. in d. at (Cairo - Nasr Ciry 2023) 8. The car is than the bike.	a. fast b. faster c. the fastest d. more fast

يوكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

Understand

Apply

Create

A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



I. Minya is loca	ated near the		
a. Nile	b. sea	c. bank	d. hospital
2. Minya is kno	wn for its delicious.		
a. figs	b. potatoes	c. black honey	d. apples
3. There are mo	any ancient	in Minya.	
a. bags	b. forms	c. monuments	d. stores
4. Minya is very	J		
a. ugly	b. beautiful	c. good	d. bad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem and Aya are thinking of solutions to a serious problem.

Reem: I see you are thinking about something.

Aya: That's true. (1)...

Reem: (2)?

Aya : The problem is that we all use too much water. Are you following me?

Reem: (3).....?

Aya : We can recycle water.

Reem: How can we recycle water?

Aya : We can use water from washing to water the plants.

Reem: (5)! The plants would like that.

Aya : Let's share ideas with our friends to find other solutions.

(Gharbia - Samanod 2023)

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Tourism is very important for Egypt which is known for its ancient monuments and rich history. Every winter, thousands of tourists come to Egypt from all parts of the world. They come from Europe, Asia and Africa to spend their holiday in our great country. Those tourists come to enjoy

the good weather of Egypt. They enjoy our beaches at Sharm El Sheikh and Hurghada. Most of them visit the Egyptian museum in Cairo to see Tutankhamen and his jewellery. When it is very cold in their countries, they like to visit Luxor and Aswan to enjoy the warm weather there. They like to see the ancient monuments and temples. They also visit the pyramids at (Beni Suef - Ihnasiya 2024) Giza. a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: a sunshine b weather c. museum 2. Tourists visit the at Giza. b. pyramids a, the Egyptian museum d. beaches c. temples 3. The weather is in Luxor and Aswan in winter. b. veru cold c. bad d. windu a. wdrm b. Answer the following questions: 4. What is the main idea of the passage? 5. Where do tourists come from? 6. Why do you think tourism is important to Equpt? D. Vocabulary & Structure 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The Red Sea coast has reefs and lots of important wildlife. d. cultural a. historical b. coral c. art (Alexandria - Gomrok 2024) 2. Living in the country is more than in the city. d. crowded b. expensive c. relaxing a. noisu 3. I a room with my sister. (Minia - Mallawy 2023) d. fall b. divide c. fill 4. The meal I had was really I enjoyed it a lot.

c. salty

c. flood

c. damaged

b. expensive

b. located

b. volcano

6. The made the whole city covered with water.

5. Luxor is in the south of Egypt.

d. delicious

d. stayed

d. pollution

(Damietta 2022)

a. terrible

a. drought

7.	Air pollution is b	dd fof our	2224 xxx0 B	
	a. environment	b. temperature	c. culture	d. situation
8.	WB A bike is not	as fast	a car.	
1	a. as	b. than	c. that	d. so
9.	🖼 Australia is r	not as	Africa.	(Qalyobia Toukh 2023)
	a. hotter	b. hot	c. hot as	d. hotter than
0.	Plastic	nowadays in m	any countries to	help the
	environment.		(Man	rouh - Mersa Matrouh 2024)
	a. recycle	b. recycles	c. is recycled	d. are recycled
	omplete the ser rackets :	itences with the	correct form of t	he word(s) in
	The city	(know) for its b	eautiful buildings.	(Minia - Bent Mazar 2024)
		(noisy) than F		akahlia - Meet Ghamr 2023
3.	The canal is .	(pollu	ited) than it was I	before.
	Alexandria is	(far) tha	n Mansoura from	Cairo.
10				
8				(Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)
? . :		F. late	itina	(Fayoum - Abshwy 2022)
		E. Wr	•	
V		f about NINETY	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب
W To you to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب منه فی نهایة الکتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
V To you to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب منه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
W To you to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
To ye to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
To ye to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
V To ye to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
V To ye to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
V To you to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
V To ye to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	مجاب عند فی نبایة الکتاب name is Waheed and nd's email address is
To you to	o your friend Tan our email addres amer@gmail.con New message * New message *	of about NINETY ner about recyclir ss is waheed@gm n.	(90) words:	name is Waheed and nd's email address is

(Cairo – Al Waili 2024)

اختبار طلاب الأرهر الشريف

more careful with their rubbish, "Rubbish in the river plastic bags and bottles. One of the students said, "We even found an old shoe! It was great to clean find so much rubbish. He said, "There were lots of the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be Their teacher said the students were sad to Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: . Port Said is located in the north- of Egypt. d. north

a. Answer the following questions:

2. How much rubbish did the students collect?

3. What do you think of the students?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5. What does the underlined pronoun we refer to ? a. people b. teachers c. parents d. students b. jacket c. shoe d. shoes

5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1. today – hotter – Is – yesterday – than? 2. located - Egypt - of - north - is - Alexandria - in - the.

3. clean - the canal - want - make - The volunteers - to.

4. do – use – day – What – you – water – for – every ?

d. plant

C. SOil

b. air

a. water

c. sugar

b. cheese

a. wheat

4. The smoke of old cars causes

Black honey is made from

..... by Youssef.

The letter

a. write

a. Doing

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about: Recycling d. the tallest

1. What is the best title for the passage? 4. They found an old damages the wildlife. a. bag Elham: Volunteers help ill and injured people when 2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: b. Recyclingc. Making d. Cycling Dina : Have you heard about the Red Crescent? b. writes c. is written d. wrote . It is one of the pollution Dina is asking Elham about the Red Crescent. most important charities in the world. d. delicious sweet 1...... rubbish is good for the environment. 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: b. pyramids

: Who helps in this charity?

Elham: (2)

Dina

Elham : (1)

there is a natural disaster.

Last weekend, ten students from Class 3-A helped 4. Read the following, then answer the questions: to clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish.

b. tailest c. taller

5. Is Salma than Sama?

2. The city is known for its

a. south

a. temples

c. ships

Dina: Hello! Elham. Elham: Hello! Dina.

تدريبات طبقا لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد الاختياري

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue: Essam is telling Maher what he did last weekend.

Maher: What did you do last weekend?

Essam: (1)

a. I played football.

c. I went to the museum. b. I went swimming.

d. I visited my uncle.

Maher: Does your brother love playing football?

Essam: (2)

b. Yes, we do.

a. No, she isn't.

d. No, I don't. c. Yes, he does.

Maher: (3)

a. When did you play tennis?

b. Where did you play football? c. Why did you play tennis?

d. How was the match?

Essam: We played in the club.

Maher: Did you enjoy playing?

Cotton clothes (sell) all over the world. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the d. Yes, we did. b. No, I don't. d. are sold c. Have you got any hobbies? b. sold b. Were they at the club? d. Did you have lunch? a. Can I play with you? Essam: Sure. We will be happy. brackets from a, b, c or d: c. No, he didn't. Maher: (5) a. Yes, we will. Essam: (4) c. selling a. sells

(bad) than my old one! d. were located b. located 8. This new phone is .. a. is located mountains. c. locats

(locate) in the

7. My favourite city ...

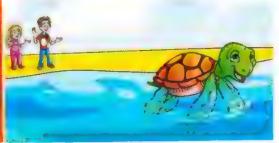
d. the worst b. worst c. badly

a. Worse

d. the difficult b. difficult as 9. Maths is (difficult) than Arabic. a. difficult more c. more difficult

335





Listening

on lesson 1SB page 64

Mrs Saki : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

Mr El-Baz: Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open,

please?

Mrs Saki : Of course. We are open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and

then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

Mr El-Baz: Can I buy tickets at the museum?

Mrs Saki : Yes, certainly. Or you can buy them online before your visit.

Mr El-Baz: How much are the tickets?

Mrs Saki: They're 120 pounds for adults and 60 pounds for children and

students.

Mr El-Baz: OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly?

Mrs Saki: It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche EL Nil.

Mr El-Baz: Thank you so much for your help!

Mrs Saki : You're welcome. Bye!

on lesson 1 WB page 116

one

Woman: Good morning, how can I help you?

Man : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if

I visit today.

Woman: Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife⁽¹⁾, or you could go scuba

diving⁽²⁾.

two

Man 1: Hello, how can I help you today?

Man 2: Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs³?

Man 1: Of course. Adults 4 are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.

Man 2 : Can I buy the tickets online⁵?

Man 1: Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

three

Woman 1: Good afternoon, how can I help?

Woman 2: I'd like to know what time you close today.

Woman 1: Certainly. We close at 3 p.m, so if you want to visit the castle

today, you'll have to get here soon.

Woman 2: Thank you for your help.

نقلعة



on lesson 1 SB page 64

A trip to Luxor Museum

By Hamid

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We were travelling for a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am.

As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big **statues**⁽¹⁾. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and **necklaces**⁽²⁾ that once **belonged to**⁽³⁾ rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the **metal bowls**⁽⁴⁾ from the fourteenth **century**⁽⁵⁾. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.

(1) تماثيل (2) قلادات /عقود (3) تخص / تنتمي إلى (4) أوعية من المعدن (5) قرن (١٠٠ سنة)

on lesson 2 SB page 65

Beach rules

- Don't swim when the weather is bad.
- Swim near the beach, where we can see you.
- Wear a hat between 11 am and 3 pm.
- No loud music!
- Put your rubbish in the bins.
- Only play ball games in the park area.



Based on Units 4,5&6

■ If you got , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.
قم بتقییم نفست بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت علی وغیر جید ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

ممتاز وجید جدا جید وغیرجید

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ((July))
--

Monthly assessments

تمسمات شهرية

October Test

احينار نانهر أكتوبر

A Listening

Listen and cho	ose the correct ar		
		بة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستم	ع إلى معلمك واختر اللجا
1. Ali is from			
a. Al-Fayoum	b. El-Kanater	c. El-Tahrir	d, El-Minia
2. Who does he liv	e with ? – His	******	
a. sister	b. uncle	c. brother	d. aunt
3. Ali plays	with his brother.		
a. tennis	b. computer gar	nes c. football	d. chess
4. What is Ali's favo	ourite subject? –	********	
a. Arabic	b. Science	c. English	d. Art
	B. Language	Functions	
C1-4-44-6-			
	llowing dialogue		
-	ilid about his moth		
	er didn't go to work		
		7	
Omar: Because s	he's ill.		
Walid : (2)	***************************************		
Omar :(3)	***********************************	?	
Walid: Yes, and he	e gave her some m	edicine.	
Omar : What did	the doctor advise	her to do?	
Walid : (4)		***************************************	
	will get better so		
·	***************************************		
C.	Reading Con	nprehension	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi, everyone. Today's interview is with my best friend Ali and his family. There are five people in his family, his mum, his dad, his brother and his sister. He usually gets up at 6.30 and helps his mum make breakfast. His brother Abdullah helps, too.

Ali's dad starts work very early, so he leaves home before they get up. That's why he doesn't have breakfast with them. He eats when he gets to work. Ali goes to school with his brother and sister by bus. Ali's favourite subject is English.

He often listens to music with his sister Sara. Ali and his dad sometimes play **chess**. His brother Abdullah watches TV. His mum is a famous dentist and **she** usually reads short stories.

a. Cho	ose the corr			
1. T	he underline	d pronoun " <u>she</u> "	refers to Ali's	***************************************
a	. sister	b. aunt	c. mother	d. cousin
2. TI	he underline	d word <u>"chess"</u> in	the passage is a	a kind of
а	. games	b. subjects	c. transports	d. foods
3. A	li's mum is a/	'an		
a	. teacher	b. dentist	c. engineer	d. nurse
b. Ans	wer the follo	owing questions	•	
4. G	ive a suitable	e title for the pass	age.	
5. W	/ho does Ali l	ive with ?		
6. W			sn't have breakfa	st with the family?
ę.	D.	nink Ali's dad does	sn't have breakfa	est with the family?
Choo	D.	Vocabulary	Structur	st with the family?
Choc	D. ose the corre	Vocabulary	Sh't have breakfa	(Sharku Kap Sakr 2024)
1. A a. c	D. ose the correlis a pl	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park	Son't have breakfa Structure a, b, c or d: n have picnics. c. mark	(Sharku Kap Sakr 2024)
1. A a. c	D. ose the correlis a pl	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park	Sh't have breakfa Structur a, b, c or d: n have picnics. c. mark	(Sharku Kap Sakr 2024) d. bark
1. A a. C 2. The	D. ose the correlis a pl inema re is a nice	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park	Se Structur a, b, c or d: n have picnics. c. mark sit on it to read l	(Sharku Kaf) Sakr 2024) d. bark cooks before sleeping. Qalyouhia - El-Obour 2023)
1. A a. C 2. Then	D. ose the correlis a plainema re is a nice	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park	Shructur a, b, c or d: n have picnics. c. mark sit on it to read I	(Sharkta Kap Sakr 2024) d. bark books before sleeping. Qalyouhia - El-Obour 2023) d. drawer
1. A a. c 2. Ther a. v 3. Rob	D. ose the correlinema re is a nice vardrobe perta's family	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park in my room.	Se Structure A b, c or d: In have picnics. C. mark I sit on it to read I	(Sharku Kaf) Sakr 2024) d. bark books before sleeping. Qalyoubia - El-Obour 2023) d. drawer
2. There a. v. 3. Rob a. t. 4. He	D. ose the correlinema re is a nice vardrobe perta's family errible puts his cloth	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park in my room. b. cupboard home in the city b. silly nes in a big chest	Se Structure A structure A portion a poor a	(Sharku Kal) Sakr 2024) d. bark cooks before sleeping. Qalyoubia - El-Obour 2023) d. drawer d. attractive
2. There a. v. 3. Rob a. t. 4. He	D. ose the correlinema re is a nice vardrobe perta's family errible puts his cloth	Vocabulary ect answer from ace where we can b. park in my room. I b. cupboard home in the city b. silly	Se Structure A structure A portion a poor a	(Sharku Kaf) Sakr 2024) d. bark cooks before sleeping. Qalyoubia - El-Obour 2023) d. drawer d. attractive

•	5. She felt	when her fath	er was taken to hos	pital.
	a. terrible	b. happy	c. funny	d. enjoyable
•	6. My daily	is interesting	. I enjoy doing differ	ent things.
	a. meal	b. routine	c. match	d. drink
•	7. Street-food sell	ers put their foo	d in the be	st places.
	a. still	b. stall	c. stale	d. sale
•	8. We go	to school on ho	olidays.	
	a. always	b. usually	c. sometimes	d. never
•	9. On Saturdays, I	usually	time with my cous	ins.
	a. spend	b. spends	c. to spend	d. spending
6)	10. A : do	they run?		
	B:They run qu	ickly.	(4	Behira - Damanhour 2024)
	a. How	b. What	c. When	d. Who
5	Complete the ser	tences with the	correct form of the v	word(s) in brackets:
Ť	1. The train goes			uiro Dar El Salam 2023)
	2. She is still			uro Da El Janum 2025)
		, ,		
			ket today because it	
	4. The street-food	seller usually	(make) falaf	el.
		E. W	Iriting	
6	Weita a manage			ân.
9	write a paragra	iph of about N	INETY (90) words	on:
		"Your typ	ical school day"	
			*************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	******************************	********************************	***************************************	
	***********************		***;\$**;****;************************	*** ***********************************

	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************),,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

	,.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		***** ***** ******* * ******** ********	*********** ***************************

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

November Test

A. Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهابة الكتاب). 1. The Ancient Egyptians used for making food. d. mirrors c. tables b. pots a. dots 2. The pots were made of d. copper c. clay a. plastic b. metal 3. They brought clay from the b. River Nile c. Lake Nasser d. Canal a. Red Sea 4. Using pots and bowls is b. unhealthy c. healthy d. ugly a. bad **B.** Language Functions Complete the following dialogue: Ayman asks Ashraf about the importance of rubbish collectors. Avman: What do you think of rubbish collectors? Ashraf : (1) Ayman : Heroes ! (2)? Ashraf: Because they do something very useful. Ayman: (3)? Ashraf: The city would be terrible without them. Ayman: Are street cleaners important? Ashraf : (4) Ayman: What should we do to help them?

C. Reading Comprehension

Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ashraf : (5)

The Ancient Egyptians had a great culture and great history. They were the first to make some important objects. Objects from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. In Ancient

Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them **look good**: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were made of metal and had interesting designs. Also, the Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. **These objects** were made of clay, which came from the River Nile. On the other hand, the Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes have 30 squares. This box is made of wood and is about 3, 500 years old. Some people didn't have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew the squares on the floor.

a. Choose the cor	rrect answer from	a,b,cord:	
1. The Ancient (Egyptians used	to paint a	round their eyes.
a. boards	b. mirrors	c. tables	d. cards
2. The underline	ed words " <mark>look go</mark>	od" means bein	ıg
a. ugly	b. beautiful	c. tall	d. happy
	have thirty		
a. squares	b. triangles	c. circles	d. rectangles
b. Answer the fol	lowing questions	:	
4. What is the m	nain idea of the pa	-	
5. Why do you t	think people drew	squares on the	floor?
6. What do the	underlined words	"These objects	" refer to ?
••••). Vocabulary		-
••••). Vocabulary	/ & Structu	-
	O. Vocabulary	/ & Structul	re
Choose the corr	O. Vocabulary	/ & Structu a, b, c or d: nuclear	in medicine.
Choose the corr	Vocabulary rect answer from sa wanted to use b. treatments	/ & Structul a, b, c or d: nuclear	in medicine.
Choose the corr 1. Sameera Mouse a. competitions 2. A/An	Vocabulary rect answer from sa wanted to use b. treatments	a, b, c or d: nuclear c. nations orks for no mon	in medicine. d. problems
Choose the corr 1. Sameera Mouse a. competitions 2. A/An	vect answer from sa wanted to use b. treatments someone who w	a, b, c or d: nuclear c. nations orks for no mon	in medicine. d. problems ey. d. patient
Choose the corr 1. Sameera Mouse a. competitions 2. A/An	ect answer from sa wanted to use b. treatments someone who w b. engineer c, such as an earth b. flood	a, b, c or d: nuclear	in medicine. d. problems ey. d. patient d. party
Choose the corr 1. Sameera Mouse a. competitions 2. A/An	ect answer from sa wanted to use b. treatments someone who w b. engineer c, such as an earth b. flood	a, b, c or d: nuclear	in medicine. d. problems ey. d. patient d. party

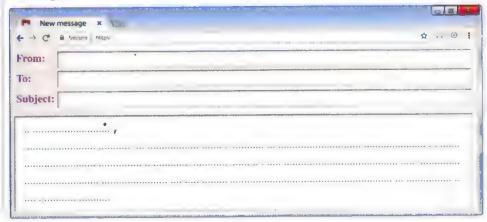
November Test

5. Bees and ants	are		
a. animals	b. plants	c. birds	d. insects
		mosquitos away.	
a. put	b. give	c. keep	d. run
7. The Ancient E	gyptian doctors.	down the	ir ideas.
a. put	b. made	c. wrote	d. took
8. My grandfath		football when h	
a. plays	b. play	c. played	d. playing
			through the park
a. ran	b. runs	c. were runnii	ng d. run
10. They moved t	o a bigger flat a	year later	was born.
a. while		c. when	
Complete the	e sentences wit	h the correct form	n of the word(s) in
	(not use) sive me	nou to a charity but	now she does
	-	ney to a charity, but	
		os of the animals, h	
3. While Mona	was playing tenn	is, she (hu	ırts) her arm.
4(Be)	they happy at ye	esterday's party?	

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

To your friend Khalid to tell him about "What we should do to help the environment". Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is khalid@gmail.com.



Answers

of Topics

اجابات الفوضوعات في كتاب الشرح



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"What I usually do on holidays"

Holidays are a good chance for me and my family to relax. We enjoy our time so much. We prefer travelling to Hurghada or Alexandria on holidays. We can practise many activities there. I spend most of my time swimming and playing football. At night, we like sitting on a café with a good view of the sea. The whole family have lunch together every day. My father prefers having fish, but I like having meat instead.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A description of my new house"

I'm so happy as we have just moved to our new house. We have a large house. It consists of three floors. My brother shared a room with me in the old house. Now, I have my own room alone. My room has a good view from the window. Also, my father made a large room for reading books. It has many books. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. I enjoy playing chess with my grandfather in the garden of the house every morning. We are so happy.

Test on unit 1

From : ali@gmail.com
To : tamer@gmail.com

Subject: Describing my bedroom

Dear Tamer,

I'm happy to write this email to you. I want to tell you about my bedroom. It looks beautiful. I have a new bed. It's comfortable and big. I have also a nice desk to study on. It has three drawers to put my things in. My bedroom includes a small bathroom with a nice basin to wash. Also, I have a wardrobe on the right of the bed. When I open the window, I can see the beautiful view of the Nile. Tell me about your bedroom. Write me soon.

Yours,

Ali

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From: hady@gmail.com
To: ahmed@gmail.com
Subject: Night workers

Dear Ahmed,

It pleases me to write this email to you. We all should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs such as nurses, call-centre workers and policemen. Nurses have to stay up late at night in hospitals. They should look after patients all night. They behave kindly to patients and help them to recover. Call-centre workers also answer phone calls from people and help them. Also, policemen are very important for our life. They make sure that people are safe all night. Night workers are very useful for the community. See you soon.

Yours, Hadu

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Making new friends"

Making new friends helps us a lot in our life. When you move to a new place or a new school, you can make new friends. They help you make right decisions and have new experiences. It's important to choose your new friends carefully. Good friends will help you in your life. Don't make friends with people who are older than you. They might work in a different way. You can ask your parents or teachers when you want to make new friends with people you don't know. Friends can help you improve your character well.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samir@gmail.com
To : ali@gmail.com

Subject : Congratulating on success

Dear Ali,

How are things? It pleases me so much to congratulate you on your success. How are you and your family? I'm so proud of

Answers

your achievement. It's great to come first in your exams. I want to ask you about your favourite subject and how you plan your time to reach your goal. I hope to succeed and come first next year. I'm going to visit you next Friday to talk about your achievement and play together. See you soon.

Yours, Samir

Test on unit 2

"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"

Teenagers should use their time in a good way. There are some tips that can help teenagers to feel happy and to achieve their goals. They should sleep enough time at least 8 hours. Most of them like staying up late, but it isn't useful for their health. It's important for them to make new friends to be happy. They can travel to open places. Nature makes them happier. It's important for them to remember the good things in their life.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From: nour@gmail.com
To: maha@gmail.com
Subject: My favourite hero

Dear Maha.

I want to tell you about my hero. He's Mohammed Salah. He is a great footballer. He worked very hard and trained a lot to achieve his goal as a famous footballer all over the world. When he was young, he had to travel for long hours to train. He played in Egypt and then he moved to Europe. He played for different teams such as Basil, Rome and Liverpool. He has scored many goals. Salah is a good person. He has a big smile and loves all people. Write to me about your hero.

Yours, Nour

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Our bodu"

We should keep our bodies healthy. Healthy food, enough sleep and doing sports are very important for our bodies. We should eat different kinds of healthy food to build our bodies. Sports are the most important thing. Young people should practise any sports they prefer, Parents should advise children to look after their bodies to grow well. Also, they should warn them of bad habits like watching too much TV, eating unhealthy food and sleeping late.

⊙ General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Rubbish collectors"

There are some jobs we can't live without them. Rubbish collectors, for example, are very important. The city would be terrible without them. They clean streets, parks and different places around us. We should respect them. We should teach our children to help and keep places clean to help them. They have to work in different places and different times. People should put their rubbish in bins to make their job easier. Rubbish collectors do a great job for us. They are really heroes in our community.

Test on unit 3

"Dr Magdy Yacoub"

We are very proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became a doctor, too. He travelled abroad and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He helped many people to get better. He is very famous for his charity work. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started his charity for ill children in Aswan. All people like him in Egypt. He is my hero.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From: hussien@gmail.com
To: omar@gmail.com
Subject: An amazing day out

Dear Omar,

I visited Alexandria with my cousins last year. Alexandria is a fantastic city. It has some old buildings. I enjoyed visiting Qaitbay Citadel. The view of the sea was fantastic. I tried fishing in the early mornings. There are a lot of activities that can be done there. Alexandria Library is very exciting. My cousins prefer swimming in the sea in the early mornings. The weather is very nice. Also, there are very good and famous restaurants. It was a great fun.

Yours, Hussien

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A visit to the museum"

My visit to the Egyptian Museum last mid-year holiday was very good and useful. The Egyptian Museum is in Cairo. It's full of valuable statues and gold objects. Tourists like visiting it so much. I enjoyed a lot there. There are more than one floor. The guide told us not to touch these objects to keep it safe for our country. I took many photos with some tourists from all over the world. I was very kind to tourists and tried to help them to get around the museum.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : sherif@gmail.com
To : khalid@gmail.com
Subject : Cleopatra's Needle

Dear Khalid,

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see this needle next to the River Thames in London, England. It's more than 20 metres high and weighs about 200,000 kilograms. It's about 3500 years old. The British made a special ship for the stone in 1877. The Needle of Cleopatra is a great monument.

Yours, Sherif

Test on unit 4

"A historic place I visited"

I like visiting historic places so much. I'm very interested in the ancient history. Petra in Jordan is my favourite place. It dates to 300 BCE. It's more than two thousand years old. You must buy a ticket before visiting it. The views from some of the higher places are fantastic. The guide warned us to be careful as it is an ancient place. I enjoyed a lot there. Tourists from all over the world like visiting Petra.



© General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Jobs to do at home"

I always help my family at home.

Every day, I make my bed. I share a room with my brother. We usually put away our clothes and books together. I help mum with shopping. I take out the rubbish daily in the evening. I sometimes make my brother breakfast when mum is at work. At the weekends, I help my dad with the jobs he likes to do in the house. I love my family. We all work together to make our home a nice place.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Charity work I like most"

Charity work is very important for people who need help. My favourite charity jobs are cleaning my area and helping the disabled. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local area. At the weekend, we pick up the rubbish. Also, I visit a home for old people every week to help them. There are many people who need to be looked after. I'm very happy when I help them. I like talking to them. Some of the disabled are clever at some games. I respect them so much.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : samy@gmail.com
To : hany@gmail.com

Subject : Random acts of kindness

Answers

Dear Hanu.

I'm very pleased to write this email to you. How are you? I decided to do one act of kindness every day for three days. First, I bought my grandfather some of his favourite books from the bookshop on my way to school. He was very surprised, but he was happy and thanked me. After that, I helped an old woman to cross the street. Finally, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old poor man on our street corner. Tell me about acts of kindness you do.

Yours, Samu

Test on unit 5

"Helping others"

Helping others is a great thing, especially people who need help such as the poor and the disabled. We should teach young people and children how to look after them. You can help others in your local area or by working for charities. I prefer working for charities as their work is organised. Some people can help by donating money to these charities. Others can give some food or clothes to the poor. I prefer to help the disabled.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"The effect of climate change on the environment"

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect badly on ice on top of mountains. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of climate change.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My home city"

My home city is Damietta. It's located in the north of Egypt. It has a famous port on the Mediterranean Sea. My city is famous for making furniture. There are many workshops there. Carpenters in Damietta are very clever. They sell their products all over the world. Damietta is also famous for sweets which are very delicious. Young people there are proud of their city. You can enjoy the beautiful view of the Nile and the sea at night. It's very beautiful and interesting.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"How to use less water"

Saving water is very important. We should learn how to use less water. Parents and teachers should show the importance of water to children. There are many ways that can help us to save water. We should learn, for example, how to recycle water. We can use the water from washing to water the plants. Also, we can have short showers to save water. Finally, we can mend all the damaged taps at homes, parks and streets. Some countries use modern ways to water plants.

Test on unit 6

Dear Tamer.

From :waheed@gmail.com
To :tamer@gmail.com
Subject :Recycling at home

How are things? I want to tell you that recycling is very important. A lot of countries make use of recycling things. We can put a rubbish bin in every room. Also, we can separate things that are made of metal from plastic things. Rubbish should be collected every week and goes to special places in the city. We can ask ourselves if these things can be recycled or not. There are many things such as bottles that can be used again at home after washing and cleaning them.

Yours, Waheed

Unit

Lessons 5 & 6

Ahmed is a teacher. He lives in Luxor with his family. He has two brothers. He likes to go to Alexandria in summer with his family.

2 Test on unit 1

Dina is thirteen years old. She is from Egypt. Dina's mother works as a doctor. There are five people in her family.

Test on unit 1 for Al Azhar students
Shahana is from India. She lives in a
village with her parents.

Unit

Lessons 3 & 4

Adel is a normal teenager, but he often feels worried about things. Adel gets texts from his friends. Adel's friends say that they all do exciting things.

Test on unit 2

The street-food seller is parking his food stall here because lots of tourists come this way. He is looking forward to drinking some hot coffee as he is feeling cold.

Test on unit 2 for Al Azhar students

Tamer is learning a new language.

Tamer can communicate better with his cousin Sami.

Unit

Lessons 3 & 4

The Ancient Egyptian doctors used to use plants to help people with burns. We still use these plants today. The Ancient Egyptian doctors were clever.

Lessons 5 & 6

Mohamed is a clever doctor. He works in a big hospital. He is kind and helpful. He always helps ill people a lot. In 2020, many people became ill.

3 Test on unit 3

Mrs Karima is a nurse. She looks after patients in a hospital. When she was young, she used to study very hard. She also used to work to pay for her studies.

Test on unit 3 for Al Azhar students

Ahmed loves playing football. When he was nine, he played in a junior competition.



Lessons 3 & 4

The Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet. Senet boxes which are made of wood have 30 squares. Some people didn't have senet boxes. So, they drew the squares on the floor.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Cleopatra's Needle is a large stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London, England. It is very valuable.

1 Test on unit 4

The Ancient Egyptians were very clever.
They used pots and bowls for making
food such as bread. These objects were
made of clay, which was taken from the
River Nile.

Test on unit 4 for Al Azhar students

Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old! The arch is very tall. You must buy a ticket before you go in.



Lessons 3 & 4

Mr Othman is our neighbour. He helped me pass my English exams. He was a teacher at a preparatory school. He used his old schoolbooks to help me.

Lessons 5 & 6

Last Friday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to an old man. The old man was sitting on the street corner. He was happy and gave me a big smile.

Listening Texts

3 Test on unit 5

Fareeda Rashwan is 32 years old. She is a businesswoman. She donated two million pounds to charities in her city to help people, who need it. She is very kind and helpful.

4 Test on unit 5 for Al Azhar students

Fareeda Rashwan has donated two million pounds to charities in her city.
Fareeda is a businesswoman. She wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it.



Lessons 3 & 4

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.

The city is known for its delicious sweets.

Lots of cotton is grown there. It is visited by thousands of people every year.

2 Test on unit 6

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. It is known for its delicious black honey. There are many ancient monuments and buildings there. My city is very beautiful.

3 Test on unit 6 for Al Azhar students

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. It is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal.

Revision based on Units 4, 5 & 6

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. Ships come and go from around the world. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

October Test

Ali Is from Al-Fayoum. He lives with his brother. He plays computer games with his brother every day. Ali's favourite subject is English.

November Test

The Ancient Egyptians used pots for making food. These pots were made of clay. They brought clay from the River Nile. Using pots and bowls for making food is healthy.





on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Narrator:

This is a chair from Ancient Egypt, and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood. In Ancient Egypt, only the richest people had wooden furniture because it was very expensive.

Today, most people have wooden furniture and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but it is covered in gold. Can you see the lions' heads? It belonged to the Pharaoh, Tutankhamun. You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities in Cairo. We believe that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.

Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games. The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old and it is made from metal.

Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home?

What other furniture do you have at home?



on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic and noise. This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience nature.

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar Park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains, palm trees, plants and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city. These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm El-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone. Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed Nature Reserve. This is a national park in the Sinai Peninsula.

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral. When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca. She likes doing this because she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons, geese and vultures.

Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside.

People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes because it is very quiet.

And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon.

We all feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go?



on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a firefighter is a great job because they save people's lives. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barsoum. He was born in Asyut in 1941.

Today, he is one of the most important kidney doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes.

They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do? Will you be a hero?



on Lesson 2 SB page 36 Narrator:

These people are visiting the ancient site of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago. There are lots of different ruins at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world. You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples.

This is an obelisk. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake. Important people came here to

Videoscript

wash themselves.

This is the amazing Temple of Amun. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has huge columns.

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must walk past lots of statues of sphinx when they enter the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and protected. These are the ruins of the Temple of Montu. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.



on Lesson 5 SB page 51

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people. The Alhassan Foundation helps disabled people. They give wheelchairs to people who cannot walk. The charity helps disabled people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled people have to live.

Another charity is the Egyptian Food Bank which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help. People can also donate food, such as pasta, rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community.

The Red Crescent is one of the most important charities in the world.

A lot of doctors and nurses volunteer for this charity. They treat-ill and injured people

when there is a natural disaster.

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of damage and many people needed help. The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people. Everybody should donate to a charity if they can or perhaps you could volunteer to help.



on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Egypt has a dry climate. This means there isn't much rain. Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 centigrade or hotter in Cairo. In other places, the temperature is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 centigrade ... and the desert is even hotter.

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya. He is kept cool during the day by this traditional item of clothing.

And this is a fennec fox. Its large ears help to keep it cool.

It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down. That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal, in the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world, Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago. And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains.

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

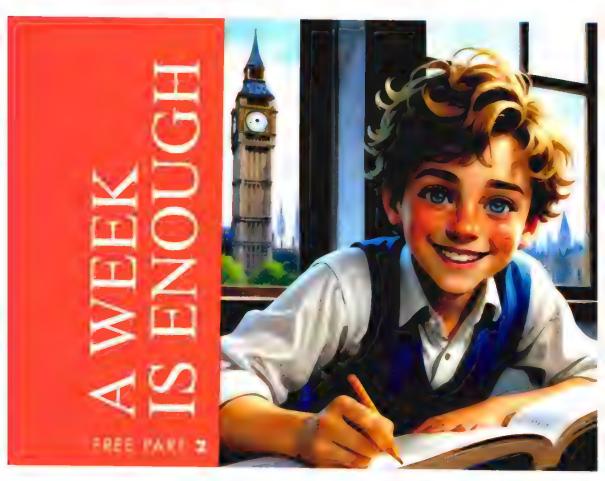
New Hello!

(GL-MOASSER

GUIDE

كيراسية المعياصر

By a group of supervisors



الصف الثاني الإعدادي الفصيل الدراسي الأول 2025 H

¥ 1

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

1. Listening

نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى ٣٠ كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة فى الكتاب المدرس<mark>ى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع</mark> السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

Listen and cho	ose the correct	t answer from a, b,	c or d :
	ع في نهاية الكتاب}	ة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستما	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجاب
A. 1. Omar was bor	n in	· 4	
a. 1994	b. 1949	c. 2002	d. 2020
2. A	attacked him w	hen he was 22.	
a. whale	b. shark	c. snake	d. octopus
3. Omar is an im	portant		
a. doctor	b. coach	c. engineer	d. scientist
4. Omar lost his .	······		
a. arm	b. head	c. fingers	d. leg
8. 1. Magdy Yacoub	was born in	***************************************	
a. America	b. Egypt	c. England	d. Brasilia
2. He helps peop	le with	problems.	
a. brain	b. lung	c. heart	d. stomach
3. He stopped his	work as a	a long time	ago.
a. surgeon	b. dentist	ć. guide	d. teacher
4. He opened a n	ew hospital in .	***************************************	
a. Alexandria	b. Luxor	c. Aswan	d. Minua

2. Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب في نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها.

السؤال الثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1. Talking about daily routines:

- On Fridays, I always play football.
- On Saturdays, I always get up late.
- At the weekend, I visit my grandma.

ا. التحدث عن العادات اليومية :

- في أيام الجمعة، دائمًا ما أمارس كرة القدم.
 - في أيام السبت، دائمًا ما أستيقظ متأخرًا.
 - في العطلة الأسبوعية، أزور جدتي.

2. Describing a room in your house:

- Which room do you like best?
- My bedroom.
- I share a room with my brother.
- -There are two beds in my room.

٢. وصف غرفة في منزلك :

- ما الغرفة المفضلة لديك؟
 - غرفة نومي.
- أشارك أخى في غرفة واحدة.
 - يوجد سريرين في غرفتي.

3. Describing photos:

- What can you see in this photo?
- This is a photo of my family.
- My grandparents are in the background.
- My parents are in the middle.
- My brothers are on the left.

٣. وصف الصور:

- ماذا تستطيع أن ترى في هذه الصورة؟
 - هذه صورة لعائلتي.
 - أجدادي في خلفية الصورة.
 - والداي في منتصف الصورة.
 - إخوتي على يسار الصورة.

4. Asking and answering questions about your heroes:

٤. أسئلة وإجابات عن مثلك الأعلى (قدوتك في حياتك) :

Questions



Answers



- Who is your favourite hero? Why? من بطلك المفضل؟ لماذا؟
- My favourite hero is Dr Magdy Yacoub as he helps poor, ill children.
 - بطلى المفضل هو د/ مجدى يعقوب لأنه يساعد الأطفال المرضى الفقراء.
- What did the Egyptian handball team do?
 - ماذا فعل فريق كرة البد المصري؟
- They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in 2020.
 - فازوا بكأس الأمم الأفريقية لكرة اليد سنة ٢٠٢٠.

5. Discussing your family history	مناقشة تاريخ عاثلتك :	
Questions ?	Answers	
• Where did your parents live when they were young? أين عاش والديك عندما كانوا صفارًا ؟	- They lived in Tanta. عاشوا فی مدینة طنطا. - There were only three persons. کانوا ثلاثة أشخاص فقط.	
• How many persons were there in your family 10 years ago ? كم كان عدد أشخاص أسرتك منذ عشر سنوات ؟		
كم كال عدد استحص اسرف فيد عسر سنوات ا	•	
	وصف مکان تاریخی :	
	وصف مکان تاریخی : Answers	
5. Describing a historic place :		

٧. مناقشة حول آثار السياحة :

لرؤيتها.

- As many tourists around the world come to see them.

لأن العديد من السائحين من كل أنحاء العالم بأتوا

7. A debate about the effects of tourism: O Questions Answers - Because tourists bring a lot of · Why is tourism important for money to these countries. countries? لأن السياح يجلبوا مزيدًا من الأموال لتلك الدول. لماذا تعتبر السياحة مهمة للدول؟ Yes, I think sometimes some tourists • Do you think tourism is bad for don't keep these places clean. historic places? أعتقد أحيانًا لا يحافظ بعض السياح على تلك هل تعتقد أن السياحة ضارة بالأماكن التاريخية؟ الأماكن نظيفة.

· Why are the Pyramids important

لماذا تلك الأهرامات مهمه بالنسبة لمصر؟

for Equpt?

- We should remind tourists to What should we do to protect behave well in these places. our historic places? يجب أن نذكر السياح بأن يتصرفوا بشكل لائق في ماذا بنبغي أن نفعل لنحمى أماكننا التاريخية؟ ثلك الأماكن. ٨. الحديث عن بعض الأعمال والمهام في المنزل : **3. Talking about jobs in the house** Questions Answers How can you help in the house? I can tidy up my room. كيف تستطيع أن تساعد في أعمال المنزل؟ بمكنني أن أرتب غرفتي. What's your favourite housework? - Washing up the dishes is my ما هو عملك المنزلي المفضل؟ favourite. غيبيل الأطباق هو المفضل لدي. 9. Making suggestions: ٩. تقديم الاقتراحات: What about ⇒working as a volunteer for a charity? ما رأيك في؟ How about - Why don't you work as a volunteer for a charity? 9..... II Inl (Agreeing) الموافقة (Response) الرد Disagreeing aablool pac - It's a great idea! - Sorry, I'm not very keen. - إنها فكرة حيدة! - آسف، لست متحمسًا لذلك.
- .i. مناقشة حل المشكلات البيئية : : "Discussing "Solving environmental problems". Questions Answers Why is it important to look after - To keep people's health. the environment? للحفاظ على صحة الناس. لماذا من المهم العناية بالبيئة ؟ · How can we keep the - By reducing pollution. environment clean? عن طريق تقليل التلوث. كيف نحافظ على نظافة البيئة ؟ - By putting recycling bins How can we encourage people everuwhere. to recycle? عن طريق وضع سلات خاصة بإعادة التدوير في كل كيف نشجع الناس على إعادة التدوير؟ مكان.

Exercises on Language Functions

•	Complete the following dialogue.
	Rana is asking Mariam about her daily routine.
	Rana : Do you have a daily routine, Mariam?
	Mariam: (1)
	Rana : (2)?
	Mariam: I get up at 6:30 in the morning.
	Rana : Do you make your breakfast by yourself?
	Mariam: (3)
	Rana : (4) ?
	Mariam: My mum always makes it for me.
	Rana: How do you go to school every day?
	Mariam: (5)
2.	Tala asks Nadeen about who can be a hero.
	Tala : Who do you think can be a hero?
	Nadeen: In my opinion, nurses can be heroes.
	Tala: What do you mean?
	Nadeen: (1)
	recover. Do you agree with me?
	Tala : (2)?
	Nadeen: I think it's a very difficult job.
	Tala : (4)?
	Nadeen: Because they sometimes work at night.
	Tala: What should we do for them?
	Nadeen : (5)
3.	Leila and Salma are talking about charities.
	Leila: Hello, Salma. Where are you going this weekend?
	Salma: Hello, Leila. (1)
	Leila : A charity! (2)?
	Salma: Because I want to help the disabled old people.
	Leila : (3)?
	Salma: I will wash their clothes and give them medicine.
	Leila: How often do you go there?
	Salma: (4)
	Leila : Can I work for this charity with you?
	Salma: (5)
	Name of the Color

3. Reading Comprehension

قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاث أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل <mark>سؤال وثلاثة</mark> أسئلة بأداة استفهام.

Read the passage then answer the questions:

Teenagers need many things to feel happy. They should get lots of rest. They often don't sleep enough, but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier! Teenagers should be friendly, it's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy. Teenagers need to go outside. People need nature to be happy. Go to the desert or the river or, if you live in the city, go to a park. They should help other people. When you do something for someone else, this makes you feel happy too. Try it! You feel really good. Teenagers should be **grateful**. One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased about **them**.

a. Choose the corr	ect answer fron	na,b,c ord:	
1. People should	n't sleeph	ours a night.	
a. four	b. eight	c. nine	d. ten
2. The underlined	d word " grateful "	means	•
a. ungrateful	b. unthankful	c. thankful	d. thankless
3. Someone who	lives in the city	an go to a	to enjoy nature.
a. school	b. hospital	c. prison	d. park
b. Answer the foll	owing question	s:	
4. Give a suitable	e title for the pas	sage.	

5. What does the	underlined pror	noun " them " ref	er to?
***************************************	************************		
6. In your opinio	n, what is the mo	ost important th	ning to be happy?

§ 2&3

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests

1. General Revision on Vocabulary

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 1

I Important Vocabulary

sofa	كنبة [أريكة]	typical day	يوم نموذجي
text	يرسل رسالة نصية - رسالة نصية	attractive	جذاب
interview	مقابلة (شخصية)	terrible	فظيع
railway line	خط سكة حديد	prison	سجن
armchair	کرسی ذو ذراعین	basin	حوض
drawer	. درج	wardrobe	دولاب ملابس
curtains	ستائر	routine	نظام یومی (روتین)
share	يشارك / يتفاسم	restaurant	مطعم
partner	شريك	interests	اهتمامات
cushions	مخدات	compare	يقارن
nationality	جنسية	block of flats	عمارة سكنية

II Important expressions & prepositions

text	t friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء	ask for	يطلب
do	- activities	يقوم بأنشطة	the beginning	في بداية
ao	-> sports	يمارس رياضة	at the end of	في نهاية
hav	ve a routine	لدیه نظام یومی	careful with	حريص بشأن
The	at's why = so	لهذا السبب	share with	يتشارك/يتقاسم مع
on	his way to	في طريقه إلى	belong to	ينتمي إلى / يخص
	• the right	على اليمين	thank for	يشكر على
on	→ the left : → holiday	على اليسار فى اجازة	get dressed	برتدى ملابس
	Hollady	فی اجازہ	hear from	يسمع من

Exercise on Vocabulary

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar gets up e	arly, washes his fa	ce and gets	for school.
a. reserved	b. dressed	c. slept	d. walked
2. There's a grey	in my bedroo	m. I sit on it to rea	d books.
a. wardrobe	b. cupboard	c. armchair	d. mirror
3. Noha always pu	uts her new dresse	s in the	
a. basin	b. wardrobe	c. restaurant	d. desk
4. My dailyi	is boring. I do the	same things every	day.
a. meal	b. routine	c. drink	d. match
5. Ahmed is on his	home. He h	nas just left the offi	ce.
a. street	b. road	c. way	d. path
6. On a/an	day, Heba gets up,	, goes to school an	d helps her mother
a. intelligent	b. unusual	c. dangerous	d. typical
7. Bad people sho	uld be taken to		
a. beaches	b. prison	c. parks	d. cinema
8. This is con	nfortable. It takes	four people.	
a. armchair	b. drawer	c. sofa	d. table
9 are impor	•	•	
a. Wardrobes	b. Carpets	c. Curtains	d. Sofas
10. Ali has an impo			
a. view	b. review	c. interview	d. revision

Unit 2

I Important Vocabulary

call – centre worke	موظف مركز اتصالات	cook	طباخ
computer enginee	مهندس کمبیوتر ۲	food stall	كشك طعام
street-food seller	بائع طعام متجول بالشارع	background	خلفية
sign language	لغة الإشارة	grateful	معترف بالجميل - شاكر لـ
striped	مخطط	communicate	يتواصل
Congratulations!	مبروك	airport	مظار
repair	يُصلح	aged	يبلغ من العمر
teenagers	مراهقين	wedding	زفاف
ward	عنبر في (مستشفي)	calligraphy	فن الخط

DAYS 283

police officer	 ضابط شرطة	weeding	إزالة الأعشاب الضارة (من الأرض)
shop worker	عامل في محل	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
keyboard	لوحة مفاتيح	empathy	تعاطف
fountain	نافورة	greetings	تحبات
suitable	مناسپ	deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)

make sure	يتأكد	get better	يتحسن
get ready to	پستعد ل	congratulate on	يهنئ على
think of	يفكر في	It's a pity!	من المؤسف!
communicate with	پتواصل مع	as usual	كالمعتاد
get married	يتزوج	prepare for	يجهز لـ
do well	ينجز / يؤدي بشكل أفضل	have an interview	لديه مقابلة رسمية
feel pleased	يشعر بالسرور	do an interview	يقوم بمقابلة شخصية
for the first time	لأول مرة	show empathy	ببين التعاطف
look forward to + (n	بتطلع إلى (inf. + ing/	It's normal to	من الطبيعي أن
catch a plane	يلحق بالطائرة	smile at	يبتسم ل



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Mona forward to being a doctor one day. a. makes b. takes c. looks
- d. gives
- 2. Deaf people uselanguage to communicate with each other. c. Latin
- b. sign a. English d. French 3. Mr Ahmed married in 2010. Now, he has two daughters.
- b. did c. had
- 4. People, who are from 13 to 19, are called
 - a. babies b. teenagers c. old people d. children
- 5. When someone passes his exam, we say "....." to him.
 - b. How terrible! a. Sorry!
 - d. Awful! c. Congratulations!
- 6. When you speak English well, you can with other people in England.
 - a. take b. clean d. communicate c. give

- 7. I well at school, so my father bought me a mobile.
 - a. made
- b. did
- c. took
- d. had

- 8. The skin of a zebra is
 - a. curly
- b. sharp
- c. striped
- d. worried
- 9. You should of things that make you feel happy.
 - a. take
- b. think
- c. make
- d. sink
- 10. The street-food seller food for people to eat.
 - a. returns
- b. repairs
- c. prepares
- d. communicates

Unit 3

I Important Vocabulary

surgeon	جراح	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
sports coach	مدرب ریاضی	emergency	حالة طوارئ
volunteer	متطوع	natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية
pump	يضخ/مضخة	proud	فخور
heart	ڦ لپ	infect	يصيب بالعدوي
brain	مخ	infection	عدوي
heroic work	عمل بطولي	lungs	رثتين
patron	راعِ / كفيل	manager	مدير
nuclear scientist	عالم نووي	stomach	معدة
earthquake	زلزال	treatment	علاج
junior	ناشئ / حديث السن	improve	يْحسن - يتحسن
senior	شخص (أكثر سنّا أو خبرة)	jewellery	مجوهرات
countryside		charity	جمعية خيرية

III Important expressions & prepositions

of (noun /ii	فخور بـ (nf. + ing	look inside	يفحص
proud to + (inf.)	فخور أن	throw into	بْلقى / يرمى في
do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	try to (inf.)	يحاول جاهداً أن
pay for	يدفع ثمن / مقابل	(be) born in	یولد فی (مکان)
take air in	_. ستنشق	a long time ago	منذ وقت طويل
write down	يْسجل/ يدون	a volunteer for	متطوع لـ
scared of	خائف من	cut into	يقطع إلى

DAYS 283

reason for	سبب لـ/ مبرر لـ	try his best	يبذل فصارى جهده
cause of	سبب لـ	m people with heart problems يلا	
play for	يلعب لصالح فريق		

Exercise on Vocabulary

•	Choose	the	correct	answer	from a,	b	, C	or d	:
---	--------	-----	---------	--------	---------	---	-----	------	---

1. Rubbish and pol	luted areas cause	and disease	es for people.
a. protection	b. infection	c. happiness	d. beauty
2. The pump	os blood around t	he body.	
a. liver	b. lung	c. heart	d. brain
3. Earthquakes and			
a. disasters	b. rivers	c. lakes	d. floods
4. Saving children:	from a dangerou:	s fire is a wo	rk.
a. bad	b. normal	c. heroic	d. poor
5. The contro			think.
a. heart	b. stomach	c. brain	d. ear
6. A/An is a p	person who helps	poor people and	charities.
a. sports coach	b. engineer	c. volunteer	d. surgeon
7 to do you	homework by do	oing a research.	
a. Cry	b. Try	c. Talk	d. Look
8. The sports coach	was proud	his winner team.	
a. to	b. on	c. off	d. of
9. Teachers try thei		-	
a. less	b. mess	c. best	d. list
10. What is the	-		
a. couse	b. reason	c. present	d. invention

Unit

Important Vocabulary

arch	قوس / مدخل مقوس	statue	تمثال
ruins	أطلال / بقايا مبني قديم	temple	معبد
castle	فلعة	theatre	مسرح
stadium	استاد	awesome	رائع
mosque	مسجد	historic	تاریخی

amazing	مذهل	understand	يفهم
ingredients	مكونات	clay	طين / صلصال
popular	شعبی / محبوب	mirror	مرآة
properly	بطريقة مناسبة	necklace	عقد / قلادة
figure	تمثال (لشخصية بارزة)	customer	زيون / عميل
debate	مناظرة	pollution	تلوث
damage	يدمر	behave	يتصرف/يسلك
made of	صنع من	entrance	مدخل

■ Important expressions & prepositions

have a shower	بأخذ دش (يستحم)	good at	جید فی
protect from	يحمى من	plan for	يخطط لـ
take off	بخلع (ملابسه - حذاءه)		يضعد لأعلى
good for	جید ل/ مناسب ل	make pollution	يسبب تلوث
bring money to	يجلب المال إلى	on the web page	على صفحة الإنترنت
look good	يبدوجميلا	(be) used to	يُستخدم في
leave straight away	يغادر على الفور	It dates to around	برجع تأريخه إلى حوالي

Exercise on Vocabulary

Ochoose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An co	an be used as an enti	rance to another	place.
a. temple			
2. My mother is	a good cook. She ga	ve me the	of the meal.
	b. ingredients		
3. I can't	this sum. Can you rep	peat it, please?	
a. examine	b. understand	c.stand	d. write
4. You can enjoy	y watching different p	plays at the	4
a. hospital	b. castle	c.theatre	d.school
5. Pots and boy	vls were made of the	from the R	liver Nile by the
Ancient Egyp	tians.		
a.plastic	b. gold	c.wood	d.clay
6. I usually	a shower every mo	orning.	
a.make	b. have	c.do	d.sell
7. We should	ourselves from p	ollution.	
a bring	b protect	c.make	d.walk

DAYS 283

- 8. Smoke of cars makes more
 - a. population b. happiness c. smoking d. pollution
- 9. Dropping rubbish the environment.
 - a. behaves b. damages c. collects d. cleans
- 10. You should well when you visit historic places in other countries.
 - a. behave b. enter
- c. imagine
- d. recommend

Unit 5

I Important Vocabulary

rubbish	قمامة	purse	محفظة نقود
random	عشوائي	kindness	عطف
stranger	غريب	donate	يتبرع
fantastic	رائع	feed	يُطعم / يُغذي
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	beggar	متسول
princess	أميرة	servant	خادم
share	يتقاسم/يشارك	donation	ثبرع
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	messy	فوضوى
attic	غرفة علوية	advertisement	إعلان
community	مجتمع	apartment	شقة
passport	جواز سفر	trainers	حذاء رياضي
behave	يسلك/يتصرف	social media	وسائل النواصل الاجتماعي
disabled	عاجز/ مُقْعَد	lift	مصعد (أسانسير)

III Important expressions & prepositions

tidy up	يرتب (غرفة)	do the cooking	يطبخ
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	polite to	مؤدب مع
pick up	يلتقط/ يجمع	come into	يدخل
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	come out	يخرج/يظهر
take out	يخرج	get lost	يضل الطريق
care about	يهتم بـ	make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
have a reason	لدیه سبب/مبرر	go back to	يعود إلى
give an opinion	يعطى رأي	make a model for	يصمم نموذجًا لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Important Vocabulary

locate

1. My mother wil	Iup the kitche	en after she finishes	cooking.
a. put	b. give	c. tidy	d. make
2. The teacher w	as very angry wher	n the class was	•
a. tidy	b. clean	c. messy	d. arranged
3. We all remem	ber our grandmoth	er's She alv	vays helped us when
we were your			
	b. illness		d. princess
4. This film is		ch it.	
a. boring	b. terrible	c. fantastic	d. bad
5. Good and kin	d people always	to charities to	help the poor.
	b. donate		d. start
6. People should	d care their er	vironment.	
a. to	b. out	c. around	d. about
7. X is one of the	e most popular	media websites	
	b. magnetic		d. mixed
8. You can't trav	el to any country w	ithout a	
a. laptop	b. passport	c. suitcase	d. school bag
9. Children shou	ıld their toys	away when they f	nish playing.
a. give	b. play	c. do	d. put
10. When you	lost, you should	ask for directions.	
a. come	b. look	c. get	d. have

Unit

6

podcast ملائمة للبيئة نشرة صوتية green flood فيضان environment البيئة pollution التلوث drought حفاف relaxing يدعو للاسترخاء / مريح للأعصاب comfortable مريح mount جبل line graph خط الرسم البياني مخطط بياني melt يذوب/ينصهر bar chart protect يحمى serious حاد/خطير damage ضوء مسلط / يسلط الضوء يدمر/يحطم spotlight climate change تغير المناخ coral reefs شعاب مرجانية electricity يحترم كهرباء respect آثار يقع (جغرافيًا) monuments

DAYS 283

nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	presentation	عرض/ تقديم
focus	برکز / ترکیز	riverbank	ضفة نهر

III Important expressions & prepositions

on the top of	على قمة	(be) located in	يقع جغرافيًا في
go with	يتماشي مع	(be) connected to	متصل بـ
on a radio news programme		important for	مهم لـ
	في برنامج إخباري إذاعي	respond to	يستجيب لـ
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	ask for	يطلب
make greener	يجعله أكثر ملائمة للبيئة	clean up	ينظف
along the river	بطول النهر	hope to	يتمنى أن
lead to	بؤدي إلى	famous / known for	مشهور بـ
aim to	يهدف إلى	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة

Exercise on Vocabulary

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some countries	have no rain, so th	ere is a	
a. flood	b. drought	c. pollution	d. volcano
2. Good sons sho	uld their par	ents and teachers.	
a. predict	b. hurt	c. damage	d. respect
		the environmer	
a. protect	b. damage	c. locate	d. pollute
		rners in their classe	
a. light	b. spotlight	c. let	d. leave
5. Our geography	teacher drew a bo	ar to make th	e lesson easy on
the board.			
a. share	b. short	c. chart	d. shirt
6. Aswan is	in the south of Egy	ypt.	
located	b. protected	c. lined	d. built
7 the top o	of mountains, there	is a lot of snow.	
a. In	b. From	c. On	d. Into
8. Students made	a about clir	nate change.	
a. bus	b. mountain	c. presentation	d. class
9. Luxor is 1	or its great temple	S.	
a. unknown	b. electric	c. comfortable	d. famous
0 is the op	posite of protect.		
a Produce	b Damage	c Solve	d Answer

2. General Revision on Language

٢. مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 1

1. Adverbs of frequency:	ظروف التكرار :
- always دانها - sometimes البا - never عادة عادة عادة عادة البنا	LĖ
درار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be) وتعبر عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل : ex.: - I always go to school by bus We are never l	ate for school.
مصدر الفعل + inf. مصدر الفعل	كم مرة؟ ?
ex.: - How often do you help others ? - I always help others	
ييط: : 2. The present simple tense	زمن المضارع البس
Formation التكوين	
I / You / We / They / 🛊 inf.	
Affirmative ex We usually play tennis on Friday Statements - My grandparents sometimes us	
الجمل الخبرية He / She / It / نامثبتــة المصدر فاعل مفرد	+ s/es/ies
ex Rodina sometimes listens to the - Ali goes to school every day.	radio.
• Notes on the present simple : المضارع البسيط :	• ملاحظات على زمن
مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).	ا. يضاف للفعل (٥) ه
ex Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.	
مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :	۱. يضاف للفعل (es)
ex My brother often watches TV after lunch.	سانداد الدالد
i) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / lt) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) اكن ويحذف حرف (y) :	
ان ویحدی دری (یا): ex Amal always studies hard for her exams.	مسبوقة بحرف س
- Allial always studies hard for her exams.	

19

I/You/We/They/ + don't + inf. Negative ex. - I don't get up early on Fridays. Statements الجمل الخبرية He/She/It/ المنفية + doesn't + فاعل مفرد ex. - She doesn't walk to school. • لاحــظ أن: أ. حرف (s) بحذف من الفعل عند النفى. ex.: He doesn't play football every Thursday. آ. (never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب. (He / She / It) ex.: The bus never stops near my house. Asking questions with Can Shall & Have you got? 1. Have + subject فاعل + got ... ? : ١. للسؤال عن الملكية نستخدم: ? got اسم مفرد Has (he/she/it) ex.: - Has your father got a blue car? - Yes, he has. - No, he hasn't.

Have [I / we / you / they] → got? ex.: - Have you got any cousins? - Yes, I have. - No. I haven't. يستخدم الفعل (Can) في السؤال بمعانى عديدة : 2. a Yes / No question السؤال بـ(هل)

Asking bout ability السؤال عن القدرة

?. + inf. الناعل Can + subject ex. - Can you climb a tree?

* Yes, I can. * No. I can't.

b Wh-questions السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

?.+ inf + الفاعل can + subject + كلمة الاستفهام Question word

ex. A: What can you do, Ahmed? B: I can lift these heavy bags. Asking for something ر طلب شیئًا وا

 $Can + (I / you) + inf. \dots$?

ex. - Can I have ice cream, please?

* No, you can't. Ice cream is not good for you.

3.

٣. يستخدم الفعل (Shall) في السؤال بمعاني عديدة :

Making suggestions تقديم اقتراحات

?....... مصدر الفعل?

ex. Hi! Shall we play a game next weekend?

Agreeing

الرد بالموافقة

- Yes, that's a good idea. Let's go to the park tomorrow.

Disagreeing

الرد بعدم الموافقة

- No, I can't, I'm busy.

- No, I'm sorry. I have a lot of homework.

?....... مصدر الفعل?

Shall I help you to cut the watermelon?

Accepting the offer

قبول عرض المساعدة

- Thank you, Yunis, but be careful with the knife! Refusing the offer رفض عرض المساعدة

- -Thanks, I can do it myself (on my own).
- -Thanks, I don't need any help.

Offering help تقديم المساعدة

Exercises on Language

- 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
 - 1. Alistudies his lessons very well. All teachers like him.

d. sometimes a. often b. always c. never

2. Did Abdullah go to the zoo yesterday? - Yes, he

d. did b. is c. has a. does

3, did you arrive at school? – At seven . d. What c. Where a. When b. Whu

4. On Saturdays, Amr always up at seven.

d. to get b. get c. getting a. gets

DAYS 2&3

```
5. We always ..... our friends.
                                                             d. to text
    a. text
                     h texts
                                         c. texting
  Mariam listen to music?
                     b. Does
                                         c. Is
                                                             d. Are
  7. Mohamed doesn't like coffee. He ...... drinks it.
                    b. often
                                         c. always
                                                            d. never
    a. usuqilu
  8. How ...... do you go swimming? - Twice a week.
                     b. long
                                         c. often
                                                             d. old
    a. usually
  9. Has Abdu ...... a farm in the country?
                                                             d. getting
                     b. gets
 10. Can Akram play basketball? Yes, he ............
                                                             d does
              b. can
2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
  1. We sometimes ...... (doing) sports or play music.
  2. How often ..... (you visit) your uncle?
  3. ..... (you have) a breakfast break? - Yes, I do.
  4. Every day, she ...... (walk) to school with her brother.
```

Unit 2

 Question . am

 word is

 word + lis
 + subject + (inf. مصدر + ing) ..?

ex.: - What are you doing now?

• I'm eating a sandwich.

Key words : كلمات دالة غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن

فى تلك اللحظة at the moment احذر! Take care! الآن Look! انظر! still انظر! took!! انظر! still انضت! Listen! انصت! tonight انصت!

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

2. The difference between the present continuous and the present simple: الاختلاف بين زمن المضارع المستمر وزمن المضارع البسيط:

We use the present simple for:

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط في :

- habits Use of the milk for broadfast
- I always drink milk for breakfast.

 routines and repeated actions

الروتين اليومي والأحداث المتكررة We go to school every day.

· things that are always true.

الأشياء التي دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة (معلومة صحيحة)

Mu aunt lives in Cairo.

· facts

الحقائق خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة

The sun rises in the east.

We use the present continuous for:

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر في :

things happening now

الأشياء التي تحدث الآن

I am sitting in my English class.

 unfinished actions in progress around now.

أحداث غير منتهية ومستمرة حتى الأن My sister is learning to swim.

temporary situations or actions.

آحداث أو مواقف مؤقتة They are painting the school this week.

3. Adverbs of manner:

ظروف الكيفية :

- * ظروف الكيفية تصف الفعل وتأتى بعده : - Hassan runs quickly. - Hala writes English well.
- * بصفة عامة بتم تكوين ظرف الكيفية بإضافة $\{y\}$ + الصفة $\}$: quick \rightarrow quickly carefuly carefully
 - * أما بعض الظروف غير المنتظمة لا يضاف لها [ly] وتحفظ كما هي :
- $-\operatorname{good} \rightarrow \operatorname{well} \qquad -\operatorname{hard} \rightarrow \operatorname{hard} \qquad -\operatorname{fast} \rightarrow \operatorname{fast}$
- early \rightarrow early late \rightarrow late

Exercises on Language 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. Ahmed walks to his work. d. slowly a. slow b slower c. slowest 2. Hamza his homework at the moment. c. is doing d. did a. does b. do 3. Habiba usuallyher uncle on Fridays. a. visit b. visits c. is visiting d. visiting 4. Sara fish and rice now. b. cooked c. is cooking d. cook 5. Omima is talking to her students c loudest d loud a. loudly b. louder 6. Gamal climbed the mountain d. easiest b. easier c. easily a. easu 7. Mohamed did very in the race last week. a. well b. best c. better d. good 8. Salma always goes to work on foot, but today she the underground. b. take c. taking d. is takina 9. What game are you now? a. playing b. plays c. played d. play 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Listen! The birds (sing) in the trees. Manal (study) calligraphy now.

3. Always speak (quiet) to your parents.

3. Always speak (quiet) to your parer

4. Nader plays basketball (good).

Unit 3

1. Past simple :	الماضي البسيط:
a. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	
التصريف الثاني للفعل 🛨 الفاعل Subject	
ex.: - He bought a new car last week.	
b. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية	
المصدر.Subject الفاعل 🛨 didn't 🛨 inf	
ex.: - He didn't buy a new car last week.	

c. Past time expressions : التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط ex.: - I went to the zoo last week / Sunday / month / year. - I went bowling an hour / four days / five months ago. - Ali saw his brother Abdullah yesterday. - In 2013, Salma was born. اعتاد أن: 2. used to: - اعتاد على فعل شئ في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الآن. (مصدر الفعل + used to + (inf. فاعل في حالة الإثبات: - Ahmed used to play tennis when he was young. في حالة النفي : (مصدر الفعل + didn't + use to + (inf. فاعل Ahmed didn't use to smoke, ? [مصدر الفعل + use to + (inf. فاعل + 9 عند السؤال: – Did you use to play tennis?

Exercises on Language

- What did you use to do?

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

? [مصدر الفعل .use to + [inf + أداة استفهام

1. Seham	new mobile to Aman	y yesterday.	
a. buy	b. buys	c. bought	d is buying
2. Mahmoud use	ed to tennis whe	n he was young.	
a. play	b. played	c. plays	d. playing
3. What did Abde	el Wahab last w	reek?	
a. do	b. did	c. doing	d. does
4. Iman didn't	play squash.		
a. used to	b. use	c. use to	d. uses to
5. Last month, M	ohameda fanto	astic holiday.	
a. have	b. has	c. is having	d. had
6. Mr Helmy	working as a teache	er a long time ago.	
a. stops	b. stopped	c. stopping	d. stop
7. Marwa 1	to a new primary scho	ol a week ago.	
a.go	b. goes	c. is going	d. went

DAYS 2&3

8. Doctors used	plants to help	people with burns.	
a. use	b. uses	c. to use	d. uses to
9. Where did your	parents use to		
a. lives	b. live	c. lived	d. living
10. Youssef didn't us			
a. is	b. does	c. did	d. was
2. Complete the se	ntences with the co	orrect form of the w	ord(s) in brackets:
1. He (star	t) playing chess wh	nen he was very little	2.
2. Did he ((used to) ride bikes	?	
3. lt (be) c	old yesterday.		
4. l (not us	sed) to smoke.		
	Unit	4	
1. must / mustn'	: مصدر الفعل .t + inf		يجب/لايجب:
		ام والضرورة.	• تستخدم must للإلز
ex.: - We must say			
		للمنع والتحريم للأشياء الغي	• تستخدم mustn't
	throw rubbish into		
2. The past simp	سابقة): : le tense	تم شرحه في الوحدات الس	زمن الماضي البسيط (
Affirmative sta	tements:		الحمل الحبرية المبيية
	+ الفاعل Subject	التصريف الثانى للفعل	
	our uncle last we		[فعل منتظم]
- He bough	t a new car last m	ام) onth.	(فعل غير منتظ
3. The past cont	inuous tense :	:.	زمن الماضى المستمر
ىفرد / (I, He, She, It) /	· > + in	nf. + ing	
بع / (You, They, We)	were اسم جه		n
	-	للتعبير عن شيء كان مستمر	[۱] يستخدم هذا الزمن
	ng English all the ni		
	for a walk at 5 pm	_	
نو.	لى الماضي وقطعه حدث أخ	لوصف حدث كان مستمرًا وَ	[۲] يستخدم هذا الزمن
11111 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	past con	ntinuous tense p	ast simple tense
While/As/Just as			رمن الماضي البسيط

 When
 past simple tense
 past continuous tense

 زمن الماضى المستمر
 عندما

ex.: When I saw Ahmed, he was playing football.

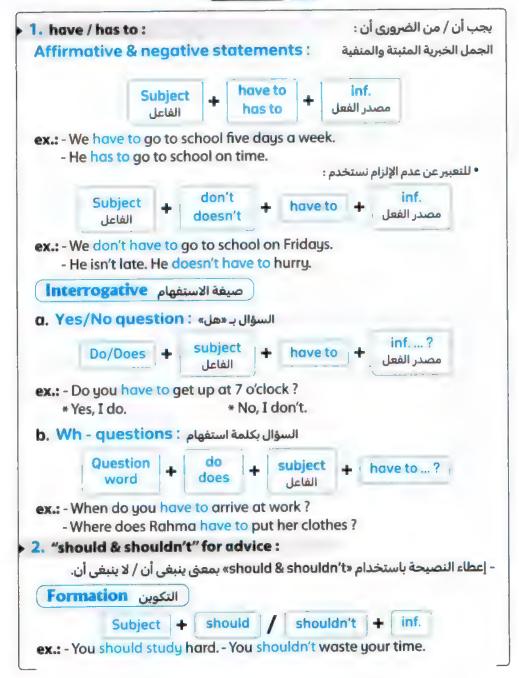
لاحظ أن (while) يتبعها (inf. + ing) عندما لا يكون هناك فاعل بعدها.

ex.: While running in the street, I saw an accident.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1. You run in h			
a. must	b. have to	c. mustn't	d. has to
2. While Shimaa	, the door bell ran	ıg.	
a. study		b. studied	
c. studies		d. was studyin	ig .
3. Students ge			
a. mustn't	b. don't have	c. has to	d. must
As the teacher wo class.	as writing on the boo	ard, the headteach	erthe
a. enter	b. entered	c. enters	d. to enter
5. My mum was coo	king lunch when the	e lights out.	
a. goes	b. going	c. went	 d. was going
6. You drink v	vater from the canal	. It is dangerous.	
a. must	b. can	c. mustn't	d. have to
7. Salma mustn't	in the street.		
a. plays	b. played	c. playing	d. play
8. Habiba was read	ing a story h	er mum entered.	
a. while	b. when	c. because	d. as
9. While in the	e park, it rained.		
a. plays	b. played	c. playing	d. play
10. As Sara the	food, the phone rai	ng.	
a. was cooking	b. cooks	c. cook	d. cooked
2. Complete the sen	tences with the corre	ect form of the wor	d(s) in brackets:
1. You (not me	ust) make noise durir	ng the lesson.	
2. As I (walk)	down the stairs, I sav	v Ali.	
3. You (mustn	t) put rubbish in the	bin.	
4. When Salma arriv	ed, her mum(cook) in the kitcher	n.

Unit 5



```
صيغة الاستفهام Interrogative
a. Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل»
                                               ? ... مصدر الفعل .inf.
           Should
                         الفاعل subject
ex.: - Should I take a ten-minute break?
                                                      - No, you shouldn't,
    - Yes, you should.
b. Wh - questions : السؤال بكلمة استفهام
                                                  subject , + inf. ...?
  Question word + should / shouldn't +
ex.: - What should I do to learn new vocabulary?
                                                           جمل وضمائر الوصل:
3. Relative clauses / pronouns:
                        who - which - that - where
                                 الذي/التي/ الذين [تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول العاقل]

who → (for people)

   - Miss Amal is the teacher who teaches us science.
    الذي/التي/الذين [تحل محل الفاعل والمفعول غير العاقل] (for things or animals) → which →
   - That's the horse which won the competition.
                                    - لاحظ أن (that) تعل معل (who), (which).
                                                       حيث [تحل محل مكان]
    * where → (for places)
   - This is the house where my grandfather lived.
```

Exercises on Language

. Choose the co	rrect answer from a, l	b, c or d:	
1. You have two n	nobiles so youb	uy a new one.	
a. have to	b. don't have to	c. has to	d. doesn't have to
2. What should I.	before going to	school?	
a. do	b. did	c. does	d. done
3. This is Mr Khali	d teaches us soc	ial studies.	
a. which	b. who	c. where	d. when
4. Al-Nasr School	is the place Mr I	Hany works.	
a. where	b. which	c. who	d. that
5. Students	make noise at class.		
a. must	b. should	c. shouldn't	d. have to
6. What subject of	io you have to?		
a. study	b. studied	c. studying	d. studies
			00

DAYS 283

7. The man, is sitting next to me, is called Said.

a. when

b. whose

c. who

d. where

8. I saw Khalid in the club we often play football.

a. where

b. when

c. who

d. whose

9. Sherevise her lessons. The exam is tomorrow.

a. doesn't have

b. have to

c. has to

d. don't have to

10. Abdel Aziz works for the charitylooks after poor people.

a. who

b. which

c. where

d. when

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Is this the car (who) you bought?

2. Hala (not have) to study for exams.

3.(Do) we eat lots of vegetables? - Yes, you should.

4. Alexandria is the place (when) we go for a holiday.



1. Comparative adjectives:

مقارنة الصفات :

a. Short adjectives:

للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

short adj الصفة القصيرة + er + than

- Cairo is noisier than the countryside.

• عند التفضيل بين فرد ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

the 🛨 short adj الصفة القصيرة 🛨 est

- Cairo is the biggest city in Africa.

b. Long adjectives:

• للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

more / less + long adj الصفة الطويلة + than

- The countryside is more relaxing than the city.

• عند التفضيل بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

صفة طويلة the most / the least + long adj

-The lion is the most dangerous animal.

• عند التساوي بين طرفين.

مثل (للتساوي) [as + صفة + as]

- The lion is as dangerous as the tiger.

Exercises on Language

 Choose the correct 	t answer from a, b	, c or d :	
1. France is not as	as South Africa.		
a. hotter		c. the hottest	d. hot
2. The email by	y Sally.		
		c. wrote	d. write
3. The electric buses i			
a. green		c. greener than	d. greenest
4. The red car is	than the blue one		
a. more expensive		b. most expensi	ve
c. the most expens		d. expensive	
5. The River Nile is			
 a. more polluted 	•	c. polluter	d. pollute
6. Droughts are as se	rious floods.		
a. as	b. so	c. very	d. too
7. Port Said is 1			
		c. connect	d. connected
8. Many fish are	in the sea near Po	ort Said.	
		c. catches	d. caught
9. Omar drank	juice than Ahmed.		
a. most	b. less	c. many	d. least
 Complete the sent 	ences with the corre	ct form of the word	(s) in brackets:
1. Which are (g	good) rivers or cana	ls?	
2. Trains are (c	omfortable) than c	ars.	
3. Where are these b	ooks (sell) ?		
4. Furniture (m	iake) in Damietta.		

The Most Important 20 correction Sentences

 ◄ الهدف من هذا الحرء: تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت في سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء في اختبارات المحافظات العام السابق.

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1. Many houses [destroy] by earthquakes every year.	are destroyed	الجملة <mark>مضارع بسيط مبنى للمجهول لأنها</mark> تبدأ بنائب فاعل ولوجود every day
2. The horse is running [fast] than before.	faster	نستخدم [صيغة مقارنة] لوجود than
3. You must [listening] to the teacher during lessons.	listen	نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد must
4. He used to [sings] nice songs.	sing	نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد used to
5 [Do] you meet Salma last Monday?	Did	نستخدم (Did) لأن السؤال ماضي بسيط لوجود last
6. Cairo is the city [which] I was born.	where	نستخدم ضمير الوصل (where) لوجود مكان
7. My friend sews [bad].	badly	نستخدم (ظرف / حال) لوصف الفعل
8. While we [study], the light went out.	were studying	نستخدم (ماضی مستمر) بعد while
9. Did Noha [went] home ?	go	نستخدم (مصدر الفعل) بعد Did
10. I was playing chess when my father [arrive] home.	arrived	نستخدم (ماضی بسیط) بعد when
11. Saudi Arabia is not [wet] as Jordan.	as wet	نستخدم [not as + Adj. + as] للتعبير عن عدم التساوى في الصفة
12. Swimming is [relaxing] than boxing.	more relaxing	نستخدم (more) مع (than) في حالة مقارنة صفة طويلة
13. He [visit] the pyramids yesterday.	visited	نستخدم الماضى البسيط لوجود yesterday
14. You [has] to pass your exam.	have	نستخدم (have) مع (You)
15. Listen! They [sing] a nice song.	are singing	نستخدم مضارع مستمر لوجود Listen!
16 [What] often do you play tennis?	How	تستخدم (How) مع (often) للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الفعل

17. What does Soha [eating] ?	eat	نستخدم المصدر بعد does
18 [Doesn't] eat fast food. It's unhealthy.	Don't	نستخدم (Don't) في بداية الأمر المنفي
19. Basmala [not/be] at school yesterday.	wasn't	نستخدم (wasn't) لأن الفاعل مفرد والجملة في زمن الماضي البسيط لوجود yesterday
20. You shouldn't [ate] a lot of sweets.	eat	نستخدم المصدر بعد (shouldn't)

J. Important Paragraphs and Emails

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني

موضوعات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني هامة على الوحدات كما يمكنك مراجعة نماذج أخرى في نهاية كتاب الشرح

Model Paragraph 1

"What you and your family do on holidaus"

Holidays are a good chance for me and my family to relax. We enjoy our time so much. We prefer travelling to Hurghada or Alexandria on holidays. We can practise many activities there. I spend most of my time swimming and playing football. At night, we like sitting at a café with a good view of the sea. My sisters prefer going to the cinema at night. The whole family have lunch together every day. My father prefers having fish, but I like having meat instead.

Model Paragraph 2

"Mu new house"

I'm so happy as we have just moved to our new house. We have a large house. It consists of three floors. My brother shared a room with me in the old house. Now, I have my own room alone. My room has a good view from the window. Also, my father made a large room for reading books. It has many books. My grandparents live with us on the first floor. I enjoy playing chess with my grandfather in the garden of the house every weekend. We are so happy.

Model Paragraph 3

"The home I want to live in"

I hope to build a new large house in the future. The house, which I want, should be very big with a garden. Also, it should have a wall and a gate on the front. My home should include all comfortable things. The rooms should be large with windows everywhere. I will buy fine carpets and curtains. Chairs and sofas should match the curtains. I like using simple decorations everywhere. I'll make a room for reading as a small library. Also, children should have a room for their toys and games.

Model Email 4

From : hady@gmail.com
To : ahmed@gmail.com

Subject: Night workers

Dear Ahmed.

We all should respect night workers. There are many hard jobs such as nurses, call-centre workers and policemen. Nurses have to stay late at night in hospitals. They should look after patients all night. They behave kindly to patients and help them to recover, Call-centre workers also answer phone calls of people and help them. They should be also kind to people. Also, policemen are very important for our life. They make sure that people are safe all night. Night workers are very useful for the community. See you soon.

Yours, Hady

Model Paragraph 5

"Making new friends"

Making new friends helps us a lot in our life. When you move to a new place or a new school, you can make new friends. They help you make right decisions and have new experience. It's important to choose your new friends carefully. Good friends will help you in your life.

Don't make friends with people who are older than you. They might think in a different way. You can ask your parents or teachers when you want to make new friends with people you don't know. People can't live alone without friends. Friends can help you improve your character well.

Model Paragraph 6

"Charity work I like most"

Charity work is very important for people who need help. My favourite charity jobs are cleaning my area and helping the disabled. I work as a volunteer for a charity which helps to clean our local area. At the weekend, we pick up the rubbish. Also, I visit a home for old people every week to help them. There are many people who need to be looked after. I'm very happy when I help them. I like talking to them. Some of the disabled are clever at some games. I respect them so much.

Model Paragraph 7

"The effect of climate change on the environment"

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect badly on ice on top of mountains. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of the climate change.

Model Paragraph 8

"What teenagers should do and what they shouldn't do"

Teenagers should use their time in a good way. There are some tips that can help teenagers to feel happy and to achieve their goals. First, they should sleep enough time at least 8 hours. Most of them like staying up late, but it isn't useful for their health. Secondly, it's important for them to make new friends to be happy, but they should choose their friends carefully, After that, they can travel to open places. Nature makes them happier. Finally, it's important for them to remember the good things in their life. They shouldn't stay up late.

Model Paragraph 9

"Our body"

We should keep our bodies healthy. Healthy food, enough sleep and doing sports are very important for our bodies. We should eat different kinds of healthy food to build our bodies. Also, children and young people should sleep well to be healthy.

Sports are the most important things. Young people should practise the sports they prefer.

Parents should advise children to look after their bodies to grow well. Also, they should warn them of bad habits like watching too much TV, eating unhealthy food and sleeping late.

Model Paragraph 10 "Rubbish collectors"

There are some jobs we can't do without them. Rubbish collectors, for example, are very important. The city would be terrible without them. They clean streets, parks and different places around us. We should respect them. We should teach our children to help and keep places clean to help them. They have to work in different places and different times. People should put their rubbish in bins to make their job easier. Rubbish collectors do a great job for us. They are really heroes in the community.

Model Email 11

From: hussien@gmail.com

To : omar@amail.com

Subject: Dr Magdy Yacoub

Dear Omar,

We are very proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became a doctor, too.

He travelled abroad and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He helped many people to get better. He is very famous for his charity work. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started his charity for ill children in Aswan. All people like him in Egypt. He is my hero.

Yours, Hussien



٤. اختبارات تراكمية

1,2&3 Units

A. Listening

		nswer from a, b, c	
.].	ں الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	ر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوم	نمع إلى معلمك واختر
1. Samy visited A	Al-Azhar Park last	454441400144000000	
_	b. Friday		d. Tuesday
2. He went there	by		
a. car		c. bus	d. bike
3. Who did he go	there with?-His.	+150423104441474444 8	
a. father	b. mother	c. teachers	d. friends
4. They walked	around the	e garden.	
a. slowly	b. quickly	c. sadly	d. angrily
	B. Language	- Functions	
Complete the	following dialog	ue:	
_	asser about his life		
Omar : Hi Yass	er! Do you live in o	ı block of flats, or so	mewhere else?
Yasser : (1)			
Omar :(2)	?		
Yasser : To have	fun, I usually play	computer games.	
Omar : What e	xercise do you do	every week?	
Yasser : (3)	-		
	ten do you play fo	otball?	
Yasser : (4)			
Omar : (5)			
	ourite footballer is	Massi	
rasser : My luv	builte lootbuller is	1110331.	
	C. Reading Co	morehension	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

My mother is an important nurse. She's called Mrs Karima Mohamed. I know that her life used to be difficult. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University and used to work as a nurse, too, sometimes at night, to learn as she could. She then got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She continued to work hard, but didn't stop her studies, and soon she became one of the most

important nurses in Cairo. Now, she works in a big hospital in New Cairo. In 2020, many people became ill and she worked every day for many weeks. It was **difficult**, but heroic work because most of **them** got better. She is also a manager and she helps to teach younger nurses. I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very hard to get an important job and now she helps people every day. She thinks that education is very important.

a. Choose the corr	ect answer from	a,b,cord:	
1. Karima Mohar	med studied to be	a/an	
a. engineer	b. doctor	c. patient	d. nurse
	in a big hospital i		
a. Alexandria	b. Sharkia	c. New Cairo	d. Assuit
3. The underlined	d word "difficult" i		
a. busy	b. boring	c. easy	d. hard
b. Answer the follo	owing questions	•	
4. Give a suitable	e title for the passo	age.	
5. What does the	underlined word	"them" refer to?	
6. Why does the	writer think his mo	other is a hero?	
D.	Vocabulary	& Structure	
Choose the corre	ect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
1. Shady is deaf, so	he uses t	o communicate w	ith others.
a. legs	b. ears	c. sign language	d. English
2 to do yo	_	_	
a. Cry	-	c. Talk	
3. We need a comp		•	
a. prepare		c. communicate	
4. There is a beautif			-
a. museum			d. temple
5. A knows			
a. surgeon		•	
6. Ateach			
		c. sports coach	
7. Do you know the			
a. number	b. difference	c. idea	d. education

DAYS 283

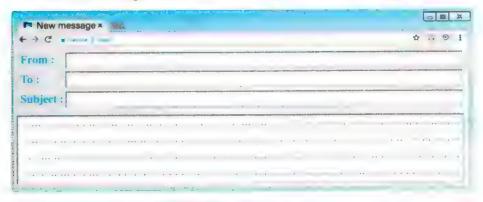
8. My father got	a job 15 years		
a. since	b. then	c. for	d. ago
9. What game o	re you no	ow?	
a. playing	b. plays	c. played	d. play
10. Yes, I have fiv	e cousins. They	in Alexand	lria.
a. lives	b. live	c. to live	d. living
Complete the	sentences with the	correct form of th	ne word(s) in brack

ets:

- 1. Mariam usually (get) up at 6.30.
- 2. The family (not have) water in the house.
- 3. Did you (saw) the film last week?
- 4. He (meet) his aunt Reem when he was 20.

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: to your friend Ziad to tell him about your new house. Your name is Nour and your email address is nour@gmail.com. Your friend's email is ziad@gmail.com.



Units 4,5&6

A. Listening

	ose the correct an		
ب).	وص الاستماع في نهاية الكتا	نر الإجابة ال <mark>صحيحة (</mark> نص	استمع إلى معلمك واخا
1. Where is Port So	aid located? - It is i	in the of E	gypt.
a. north-east	b. south-east	c. west-east	d. south
2. What is it know	n for ? – Its	1+ W	
a. cars	b. ships	c. boats	d. rockets
3. Ships come and	d go from around	********	
a Cairo	h the world	c the coast	d Alexandria

4. Many fish are co			
a. Alexandria	b. Luxor	c. the Suez Co	anal d. Matrouh
	B. Language	e Functions	
Compléte the format de la compléte de la complét	ollowing dialog	ue:	
Nasser and Omar	are talking at th	e school playgroui	nd.
Nasser : Do you h			
Omar : (1)			
Nasser : (2)			
Omar : Because		ohy test.	
Nasser : (3)			
Omar : Tomorrov		arade Which cubic	et de veu houe ?
Omar : (4)	_	oreak. Which subje	ct do gou nave :
Nasser : Do you li			
Omar : (5)			
		mprehension	
		•	
Read the follow Global Recycling D	ing, then answ	er the questions :	i amind poople of
he importance of rec			
nd even gas and oil.			
n many different cou			r reagoning events
In 2018, people pro		billion tonnes of ru	ubbish around
he world. At the morr	nent, a lot of our i	rubbish is burnt an	d this can lead to
limate change.			
No country recycle			
ubbish. In 1991, it rec			
s rubbish. Coloured p			
nore, because you ca n the future.	n't recycle them.	most countries no	pe to recycle more
a. Choose the cor		na, b, c or a: in the passage me	ans to make
	something.	in the passage me	uns to make
a. forget	b. remember	c. reuse	d. recycle
	ing Day is an eve		d. reegele
g. April	b. May	c. March	d. June
•	ed pronoun "It" re		
a. Brazil		c. South Korea	d. America
b. Answer the foll	lowing auestion	s:	
	ain idea of the p		

6. What do me	st countries hope	to do :	
		& Structure	
Choose the co	rrect answer fro	ma,b,cord:	
	in the north		
a. taken	b. located	c. connected	d. protected
2. We should	damaging th		
a. protect	b. stop		d. cause
3. Which of these		ally put in a recycli	ng bin ?
a. Bottles	b. Paper		d. Metal cans
	sports matches o		
a. school	b. theatre	c. stadium	d. cinema
5. You can find a	lot of at	museums.	
a. statues	b. fruits	c. vegetables	d. plays
6 are b	uildings which are	not complete.	
a. Pots	b. Ruins	c. Towers	d. Statues
7. Muslims pray	at		
a. cinemas	b. stadiums	c. mosques	d. churches
8. Saudi Arabia i	s not as wet	Jordan.	
a. so	b. as	c. since	d. for
9. This is Mr Ali	teaches us	s English.	
a. where		c. who	d. when
0. While	. in the park, it rai	ned.	
a. plays			d. playing
Complete the s	entences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in bracke
	(locate) near the		
2. Many monum	ents and building	s (find) in	the city.
3. The café	(who) I meet r	ny friends, serves d	lelicious ice crean
4. The boy	(when) was my	y best friend moved	d to a different cit
	E. W	riting	
Write a narag		INETY (90) words	on:
wite a parag		ycling"	

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

ا. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

A Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

it_1		Studer	nt's Book & Workbook
1. My mum always	my breakfa	st.	(SB p. 2)
a.does	b. makes	c. gives	d. deletes
2. When they open the	curtains, there is al	ways lots of is	n the room. (WB p.76)
a. moon	b. darkness	c.sunlight	d. study
3. Their new house is	in the country n	near aline.	(WB p. 75)
a.airport	b. street	c.school	d.railway
4. A is a place v	vhere people go w	when they do some	thing wrong. (SB p.8)
a.basin	b.park	c. prison	d.temple
5. The are peo	ple without eno	ugh money to live	on. (SB p. 8)
a.rich	b.young	c.poor	d. brave
it 2		Stude	nt's Book & Workbook
1. Street-food sellers p	ut their food	in the best place:	s in the city. (SB p. 13)
a.still	b.stall	c.stale	d. sale
2. It's to get we	orried or feel sad	sometimes.	(SB p. 18)
a.unusual	b. normal	c.abnormal	d. strange
3. A/An is a bo	y or girl aged 13	3-19.	(WB p. 82)
a.old man		c.child	d.teenager
4. Well done, Yasser!	That's great	!	(SB p. 19)
a.empathy	b. news	c. phrase	d. sorry
5. We need a compu	ter engineer to	our comput	er. (WB p. 80)
	b. prepare		d.rare

Unit 3		Stude	nt's Book	& Workbook
1. A terrible event,	such as an eartho	uake, is a		(SB p. 26)
		c. disaster		ty
2. A/An is so	meone who work	s for no money.		(SB p. 28)
a. volunteer	b. engineer	c. teacher	d. pat	ient
3. The Ancient Egy _l	otian doctors	down their ide	as.	(WB p. 86)
a. put	b. made	c. wrote	d. too	k
4. A knows h				(WB p. 86)
a. surgeon	b. teacher	c. pilot	d. bal	cer
5. The take in	n air and help us t	to breathe.		(SB p. 28)
a. brains	b. lungs	c. hearts	d. leg	S
Unit 4		Stude	nt's Book	& Workbook
1. Petra in Jordan	back to aro	und 300 BCE.		(WB p. 96)
a. arrives	b. dates	c. moves	d. tak	es
2. It is important to	learn about	places around the	world.	(SB p. 37)
a. historian	b. history	c. funny	d. his	toric
3. A is a pot	used for holding f	lowers.		(WB p. 97)
		c. vase		ol
4. People made	with clay from	n the River Nile.		(SB p. 40)
a. bats	b. pots	c. beds		
5. You should walk	carefully and foll	ow the		(SB p. 43)
a. signs	b. tools	c. drums		
Unit 5		Stude	nt's Book	& Workbook
1. A is like ar	online diary.			(WB p. 107)
a. community	b. blog	c. distance	d. do	nation

2. My parents money to a charity which helps disabled people. (SB p. 53)

c. win d. gain

d. Helpless

c. Kindness

b. donate

3. means something is happening without a plan. b. Random

a. Messy

a. Do 2. I get up e a. usually 3 do you li a. What 4. She gets up ea a. have 5. Shall we a. went Unit 2	listen to music on the b. Have early at the weekend b. always live? — I live in Tanto b. When early and brea b. had to the beach tomo b. goes	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast. c. has prrow ? c. go	d. Did
1 Mariam I a. Do 2. I get up a a. usually 3 do you li a. What 4. She gets up ea a. have 5. Shall we a. went	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto b. When irly and brea b. had	he bus? – Yes, sho c. Does ds to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast. c. has prrow? c. go	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How (SB p. 6) d. didn't have (WB p. 74) d. gone
1 Mariam I a. Do 2. I get up e a. usually 3 do you li a. What 4. She gets up ea a. have 5. Shall we	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto b. When irly and brea b. had	he bus? – Yes, sho c. Does ds to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast. c. has prrow? c. go	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How (SB p. 6) d. didn't have (WB p. 74) d. gone
1 Mariam I a. Do 2. I get up a a. usually 3 do you li a. What 4. She gets up ea a. have 5. Shall we	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto b. When irly and brea b. had	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast. c. has	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How (SB p. 6) d. didn't have (WB p. 74)
1 Mariam I a. Do 2. I get up a a. usually 3 do you li a. What 4. She gets up ea a. have	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive? – I live in Tanto b. When orly and brea b. had	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast. c. has	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How (SB p. 6) d. didn't have
1 Mariam l a. Do 2. I get up e a. usually 3 do you li a. What	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto b. When erly and brea	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a. c. Where kfast.	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How (SB p. 6)
1 Mariam l a. Do 2. I get up e a. usually 3 do you li a. What	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto b. When	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a. c. Where	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4) d. How
1 Mariam l a. Do 2. I get up e a. usually 3 do you li	b. Have early at the weekend b. always ive?—I live in Tanto	he bus ? – Yes, sho c. Does is to have enough c. often a.	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72) d. never (SB p. 4)
1 Mariam I a. Do 2. I get up e	b. Have early at the weekend	he bus ? – Yes, sh c. Does is to have enough	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did sleep. (WB p.72)
1 Mariam I	b. Have	he bus ? – Yes, sho	e does. (SB p. 3) d. Did
1 Mariam		he bus ? – Yes, sh	e does. (SB p. 3)
	listen to music on t		
Unit 1		3.00	ent's Book & Workbook
		Stud	
4 Choose the cor			
d. makes	b. takes		d. gives
	arity which a		
	b. drought		d. fuel
	rain or there might		(WB p. 115)
a. canal	b. mosque		d. line
			oats. (WB p. 111)
	b. hospital	•	d. mosque
	ouilding where you		(WB p. 111)
a. clean	b. bad	c. dirty	d. ugly
1. The volunteers	want to make the	river	(SB p. 55)
Unit 6		Stude	ent's Book & Workbook
a. stairs		c. lift	d. attic
_	and the same of th		.1
5. The building is	_		G. Water
a. disagree5. The building is v	b. agree	c. refuse	d. watch

DAY 4

	2. How often do	you dinner?		(WB p. 80)
	a. make	b. made	c. is making	d. making
	3. Samy si	gn language at scho	ol now.	(SB p. 15)
	a. learn	b. learns	c. is learning	d. learnt
	4. The children a	re singingin th	ne playground.	(WB p. 81)
	a. loud	b. loudly	c. louder	d. loudest
	5. The cat is sitting	ng in the sun		(SB p. 16)
	a. lazy	b. lazier	c. laziest	d. lazily
Ur	nit 3		Stude	nt's Book & Workbook
	1. Magdy stoppe	d most of his work as a	a surgeon a long	time (SB p. 23)
	a. ago	b. yesterday	c. last week	d. last month
	2. Where did you	ır parents whe	n they were you	ng? (SB p. 25)
	a. lived	b. lives	c. live	d. living
	3. In 2016, a sha	rk attacked Omar an	d hea leg	. (WB p. 86)
	a. lost	b. lose	c. loses	d. losing
	4. What did you	use to at primo	ary school?	(WB p. 88)
	a. learnt	b. learns	c. learning	d. learn
	5. When Yasser's n	num was a child, she	play the pian	o every day. (SB p. 27)
	a. use	b. used	c. used to	d. use to
Uı	nit 4		Stude	nt's Book & Workbook
	1. In a museum,	you touch the	objects.	(SB p. 35)
			c. have to	d. has to
	2. While we	to go into the muse	eum, I saw my fri	iend Abbas. (SB p. 39)
	a. wait	b. was waiting	c. were waiting	g d. waited
	3. It is a long wal	k to the temple, so you	all listen o	carefully. (WB p. 95)
	a. mustn't	b. must	c. has to	d. haven't to
	4. As Karim was t	aking photos of the a	nimals, he	his phone. (WB p. 97)
	a. lose	b. losing	c. loses	d. lost
	5. I put my bag	on the floor while I	a photo.	(SB p. 39)
	a. take	b. took	c. was taking	d. takes

Student's Book & Workbook Unit 5 1. When you get on the bus, you buy a ticket. (SB p. 45) d. don't have to c. mustn't g, have to b. has to 2. Do you have to to school? (SB p. 45) b. walking c. walked d. walk walks 3. The tourists, visit Egypt, always love the ancient temples. (WB p. 104) c. where d. when b. who which (WB p. 103) 4. You run if your legs hurt. d. have to a. shouldn't b. should c. must 5. The market is a place I often get lost. (WB p. 104) d. where b. when c. who a. which Student's Book & Workbook Unit 6 1. The River Nile is polluted than it was before. (SB p. 55)d. the least b. most c. the most a. more 2. Mount Catherine is amountain than Jabal Mousa. (WB p. 109) d. the highest c. highest a. high b. higher (SB p. 57) 3. Australia is not as as Africa. c. the hottest d. hot b. hottest a hotter 4. Many fish in the sea near Port Said. (SBp.59)b. are caught c. catches d. caught g. catch 5. Only green energy from the sun and wind at the hotel. (WB p. 112) c. is used d. using b. uses a. use Structures Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: عبارة عن أربعة جمل على الطالب أن يكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة / الكلمات التي بين الأقواس [الجمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية]. Unit 1 1. Mariam (get) up at 6:30. (SB p.3) 2. I (get usually) up late at the weekends. (WB p.72)3. The family (not have) water in the house. (SBp.6)

Unit 2	
1. Mr. Ahmed speaks English (good).	(SB p.16)
2. Basel is a computer engineer. He usually (repair) computers.	(WB p.80)
3. It is important to drive (careful) when it is raining.	(WB p.81)
Unit 3	
1. They didn't use to (had) a big car.	(SB p.27)
2. I started preparatory school three years (yesterday).	(SB p.23)
3. He (meet) his aunt Reem when he was 20.	(WB p.87)
Unit 4	
1. You (must) run in a museum.	(SB p.35)
2. As Karim (take) photos of the animals, he lost his phone.	(WB p.97)
3. We were looking around the museum when Amir (finds) so	ome tall
doors.	(SB p.39)
Unit 5	
1. It's a holiday today. We (not have) go to school.	(SB p.45)
2. You should (starts) running short distances.	(WB p.103)
3. Mr Sabri is the teacher (when) taught my sister.	(SB p.49)
Unit 6	
1. A train is not as (faster) as a plane.	(WB p.110)
2. The North Hotel is (locate) on a lovely beach.	(WB p.112)
3. Figs are (delicious) as chocolate.	(SB p.63)

2. End of Term Practice

٢. إختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسي من كتاب التدريبات.

Listen and choose the corre متماع في نهاية الكتاب].	ect answer from a , b , c or d : ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاس
1. What is Aya's father's job?	
a. A shop worker	b. A teacher
c. A street-food seller	d. It doesn't say
2. Why must Aya stay at home	every day?
a. To work	b. To study
c. To look after her brothers an	d sisters d. To plant trees
3. Where does Aya have to go i	in the evening ?
a. To school	b. To the shops
c. To a park	d. To her teacher's house
4. How does Aya feel when she	gets home ?
a. Tired but grateful	b. Hungry
c. Angry	d. Sad
Complete the following dia	logue:
Manal: I can't come to your f	amily party next weekend because my
grandfather is in hosp	pital.
Leila :(1) to he	ear that, Manal. I'll get something.
Manal : (2), Leil	a?
Leila: I mean I'll buy him so	mething that you can take to the hospital
Manal : (3)don't	we buy him something together?
	(4)
Manal : We (5)	
Leila : Good idea!	
Read the following, then a	nswer the questions :
	er called Leonard Woolley was exploring
· ·	which is located in Iraq today), when he
· ·	on of objects. The objects all had labels
	d that this was probably the world's

first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to

DAY 4

collect special objects in their houses. In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1.500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

a. Choose the	correct answer from	oma,b,cord:	
1. Some of t	he objects in the n	nuseum were	
a. about 2	2.000 years old	b. the same a	ge as the palace
c. newer t	than the palace	d. a lot older	than the palace
2. What do	you think the word	"collection" mear	ns ?
a. A palac	ce	b. An innovat	ion
c.Things	without names	d.Things you	keep together
3. What did l	eonard Woolley lea	ırn about people in 1	the past?
a. They al	had museums	b. They were in	nterested in history
c.They w	ere all very rich	d.They were	all fantastic
b. Answer the	following question	ons:	
4. What was	Leonard Woolley	exploring in 1925	?
*************		,,	
5. Why did h	ne think the object	s were from a mus	eum ?
6. What doe	s the underlined w	ord " <u>them</u> " refer to	?

Choose the c	orrect answer fro	om a, b, c or d:	
1 w	ork in the street. T	hey sell food.	
a. Call-centre	workers	b. Nurses	
c. Engineers		d. Street-food	sellers
	in the city live in	a of flat	
a. black	b. block	c. chest	d. house
	n was very high ar		at the top
	thought we might		
a. scary	b. scared	c. happy	d. tall
4. Kareem's cou			
	ısin iso b. cruel	Ind never puts his I c. serious	books away. d. tidy

Eyad works as a beach.	for a	charity that helps	to clean the local
a. patient	b. figure	c. model	d. volunteer
6. Where did your	grandparents	?	
a. lived	b. used to live		d. living
7. The nurse is a		aved a lot of peop	ole.
a. hero	b. beggar	c. manager	d. servant
8. While Hassan	to scho	ool, he saw a famo	ous squash player.
a. was walking	b. is walking	c. walked	d. walks
9. You must not	the obj	ects in the museu	m.
	b. belong to		d. see
10. The new book			
		c. which	
5 Complete the se brackets:	entences with t	he correct form o	of the word(s) in
 The Egyptian ho last year. 	andball team	(win) the	competition
2. Karim	(take) a photo	of the museum a	t the moment.
3. Cotton clothes	(sell)	all over the world.	
4. Mona	(have) to wea	r the uniform at sc	hool.
Choose one of t	he following :		
1. Write an email o	of 80-95 words to	a penfriend tellin	g him or her about
your daily routin	ne.		
2. Write a blog of 8	30-95 words abo	ut a historic place	you visited.
***************************************	*** ******** * ********************		
***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
			<pre><pre></pre></pre>

§ 5.6a7

21 Governorates Exams

٢١ اختبار من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1	Cairo Governorate
---	-------------------

El Maadi Educational Directorate

	لاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	جابه الصحيحة إنصوص ا	ي مسمت واحتر ام
1. How old is I		_	
a. Forty	b. Fifty	c. Fourteen	d. Fifteen
2. When does	she get up? At	reart+ W	
a. 6.30	b. 5.00	c. 7.00	d. 8.00
3. How does s	he go to school? B	y	
a. car	b. metro	c. train	d. bus
4. Where do h	er parents work? A	t the	
a. school	b. office	c. hospital	d. bank
Hany is calling Receptionist	ne following dialong the City Museum : Good morning. Ci	ty Museum.	2
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany	g the City Museum : Good morning. Ci : Good morning. (1	•	
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist	g the City Museum : Good morning. Ci : Good morning. (1	ty Museum.)oen from 9.30 to 6.3	
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Hany	eg the City Museum : Good morning. Ci : Good morning. (1 : The museum is op	ty Museum.)oen from 9.30 to 6.3	0.
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Receptionist	eg the City Museum : Good morning. Ci : Good morning. (1 : The museum is op	ty Museum.)oen from 9.30 to 6.3 ? every day except Fri	0.
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany	g the City Museum : Good morning. Ci : Good morning. (1 : The museum is op : (2) : No, we are open o	ty Museum.) pen from 9.30 to 6.3 ? every day except Friche ticket cost?	0.
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist	eg the City Museum : Good morning. (1 : The museum is op : (2) : No, we are open e : How much does t	ty Museum.) pen from 9.30 to 6.3 ? every day except Friche ticket cost?	0. iday.
Hany is calling Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany Receptionist Hany	g the City Museum Good morning. (1) The museum is op (2) No, we are open e How much does t (3)	ty Museum.) oen from 9.30 to 6.3 ? every day except Friche ticket cost?	0. iday. museum ?

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: Practise random acts of kindness. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to **strangers**: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world, people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile on a person's face. Isn't it a fantastic idea?

A. Choose the co	rrect answer fr	oma,b,c ord:	
	rangers" mean		
a. people yo	u know	b. people you	don't know
	c. a friend of you d. a relative of you		
		of Kindness Day.	
a. 17 th Febru		b. 27 th Februar	'y
c. 17 th Marci		d. 12 th April	
		kindness comes fro	m
a. France	b. Egypt	c. America	d. China
B. Answer the fo	llowing questi	ons:	
4. Give a title to	o this passage.		
5. Why did the		the restaurant?	
6. What do you	ı think about th		
Choose the cor	rect answer fr	om a, b, c or d :	
			something wrong.
a. prison	b. hospital	c. school	d. cinema
2. You eat			
a. must	b. should	c. mustn't	d. can
3. Fatma is	, so she can't h	ear you.	
a. blind	b. deaf	c. quiet	d. lazy
4. A terrible ever	nt, such as an ed	arthquake, is a	
a. charity	b. countrysic	le c. proud	d. natural disaster
5. I a bedi	room with my si	ister.	
a. share	b. put	c. take	d. watch
6. Sameera Mou	ısa was born	1917.	
a. at	b. by	c. on	d. in
7. Hend runs	seencon #		
a. quick	b. slow	c. fast	d. good
8. There was no	rain for months	this winter, so now	there is a
a. flood	b. drought	c. rubbish	d. fuel
9. Nader watche	ed the football r	match at the	yesterday.
a. statue	b. museum	c. temple	d. stadium
10. Does Heba	go to work	early?	•
a. have to	b. has to	c. have	d. has

DAYS 5,647

1. She usually (get) up late a 2. Where (you use to) live bet 3. This seat is (comfortable) t 4. Rami (not wear) a jacket to	t the weekend. fore you moved than the other o	to Alexandria ? one.
6 Write a paragraph of about NIN		is on :
A VISIC CO ALY	znar rurk	
2 Giza Governorate	Zayed Educa	ntional Directorate
		b, c or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
1. Who is your hero? a. Sameera Mousa c. Omar Abdelkader 2. When was he born?	b. Magdy You d. Fatma Ism	
a. In 1994 b. In 1949 3. When he was 22, he lost a/an	c. In 1940	d. In 1900
a. eye b. arm 4. Now, he is an important	c. hand	d. leg
a. doctor b. pilot	c. coach	d. engineer
Mona is asking Dina some question Mona: Can I ask you some question Dina: (1) Mona: (2) Dina: I usually get up at 6.30 am Mona: (3) Dina: I live with my family. Mona: Do you listen to music? Dina: How often do you listen to Dina: (5)	ns : ons ?	

Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. On Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was very surprised, but very happy! After that, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion, doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop.

A. Choose the c	orrect answer fro	ma,b,c ord:	
1. The old mar		the writer gave his	
a. happy	b. sad		d. big
	ought the cake		
		c. during	
3. On , t	he writer bought h	nis grandmother so	ome cake.
		c. Friday	d. Sunday
	ollowing question		
		spend on this work	
	e writer do for the		
	buy his grandmo		
Choose the co	rrect answer fro		
		all of us admired it	
		c. attractive	
		is of people live the	
	_	c. little	
		n and went to live	
		c. temple	
		ow where she is?	
		c. am looking	
5. Huda's uncle	always sings	when he's worki	ng.
a. slow	b. happy	c. happily	d. quiet
		have wonderful n	
g. who	b. which	e sub-ort	d where
7. The mechani	cmy car be	fore I travelled to A	Alex.

DAYS 5,6&7

8. Salma used to tell the de	eaf woman what h	appened.
a. sign language b. studying	c. running	d. parking
9. You be noisy in class.		
a. must b. will	c. can	d. mustn't
10. Players score by throwing the		
a. handball b. chess	c. swimming	d. karate
5 Complete the sentences with the	correct form of the	e word(s) in brackets :
1. Fady and his friends (use		
2. Hazem never (sleep) on		
3 (Has) we got science on	*	
4. The manager punished a num	ber of workers for	being late
(tomorrow).		
6 Write a paragraph of about N	INETY (90) word:	s on :
"Describing	your bedroom"	

	** *********************************	***************************************
3 Alexandria Governorate	Burj Al Arab Edu	cational Directorate
1 Listen and choose the correct	answer from a. b	o.cord:
		استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
1. Tamer went to Al-Azhar Park or		i.)3 Gi C
a. Saturday b. Sunday	c. Tuesday	d. Friday
2. He saw a	c. racsaag	arria ag
g. nurse	b. farmer	
c. vet	d. street-food	seller
3. The food was		
a. delicious b. bad	c. hot	d. salty
4. He went home		
a. early b. late	c. at 5:00	d. at 6:00
2 Complete the following dialog	gue:	
Hoda is asking Sara about her in	terests.	
Hoda: What are you interested i	n ?	
Sara : (1)		

Hoda: (2)	7		
Sara : I enjoy	reading at the library	J .	
	?		
Sara: This bo	ook is about the histor	y of Egypt.	
Hoda: Do you	ı like history?		
Sara : (4)	0.000000000000000000000000000000000000		
Hoda: Can I b	oorrow this book, plea	se?	
Sara : (5)	000000000000000000000000000000000000000		
Read the follo	owing, then answer	the question	s:
and dinner. Ho eat for each mo vegetables and people not to s	le have three meals evenewer, most of them of them of them of them of the the the them of the	don't care abo beople should To keep health	ut what they should eat lots of fruit and y, doctors advise
•	correct answer from	a.b.c ord:	
	lined pronoun "them"		0
a. fruits	b. vegetables		d. doctors
2 pec	ople care about food.		
a. Few		c. All	d. Much
	ould drink a lot of		1 mantan
a. cola		c, tea	d. water
	following questions		
4. Give a suit	table title to this passo	_	
5. How many	y meals are there ever		
6. Why do yo	ou think doctors advis	e people to do	exercise ?
	correct answer from		
	mportant to keep the		d Courteins
a. Chairs	b. Sofas	c. Mirrors	d. Curtains
2. A deaf person	on can't b. see	c. hear	d. eat
	bumps blood around t		U. CUL
S IDE D	umas mana arana t	rie Dociu.	

	4. The mo	ide the village cov	vered with water.	
	a. sun	b. volcano	c. drought	d. flood
	5. A is a k	ind of jewellery.		
	a. mask	b. necklace	c. glass	d. desk
	6. Basma is a	She works fo	r no money.	
	a. swimmer	b. princess	c. volunteer	d. player
	7. The skin of the	zebra is		
	a. sharp	b. worried	c. messy	d. striped
	8. Rice gr	own in Egypt.		
	a. is	b. are	c. were	d. have
	9. I can run	as my friend.		
	a. fast	b. as fast	c. faster	d. more fast
	10. He didn't use	toa big car	r.	
	a. have	b. has	c. having	d. had
5	Complete the se	entences with the	correct form of the	e word(s) in brackets :
		sually) up early e		
		ın (which) h		ay.
	3. They (v	isit) the museum	last week.	
	4. That bird can	fly (quick).		
6	Write a paragi	aph of about NI	NETY (90) word:	s on :
		"Your favo	urite sport"	
	***************************************			***************************************
	***** ***********************	1011004749414449 7417 444054054848564444	\$	<pre><pre></pre></pre>
	P414741- A/ARARIEPE/E/P7777777	***** ***********************		
	******* ***************************	**** **********************************		***************************************
	****************	***************************************	***************************************	******************************
			Fast Shou	bra El-Kheima
4	Qalyoubia	Governorate	Education	al Directorate
				and.
u		ose the correct		
			جابه الصحيحة الصوص	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
		got lots of		d books
	a. balls	b. clothes	c. shoes	d. books
		to sit and read in		المسط
	a. sofa	b. armchair		d. bed
		os some of his		
	a. clothes		c. desks	d. books
		hes his befo		-l -alAl
	a. room	b. books	c. hands	d. clothes

Complete the following dialogue:		
A guide is showing some tourists the Karn	ak Temple.	
Guide: Welcome to Karnak Temple.		
Tourist : Excuse me. What is this tall stone	e called ?	
Guide : (1)		
Tourist : A needle!(2)	7	
Guide: It's nearly thirty meters tall.	•	
Tourist :(3)?		
Guide: They're hieroglyphic writings.		
Tourist :(4)?		
Guide: The ancient Egyptians built it. Th	heu were great people.	
Tourist : (5)	neg were great people.	
Read the following, then answer the a	questions:	
Last Friday, I went to the zoo with my	family. It was a lovely day	
as we enjoyed seeing different kinds of ar	nimals, we saw the monkeys,	,
baboons and gorillas, while they were do	ing runny movements;	
Jumping, running and going from one bro	anch to another, we saw a	
gorilla feeding her baby as our mothers d	io. At the hippoliake, we saw	on.
several hippos bathing in the water. The	guara made one of them op	E11
its wide mouth while my sister quickly thr	felt are used acting most In t	ho.
several lions that were roaring and one of	them was eating meat. In t	HE
end, we got tired and sat to have sandwin		
A. Choose the correct answer from a , b		
1. Lions were and one of them w		
a. roaring b. swimming c. ju		
2. The underlined word "several" means		
	ttle d. lew	
3. In the end, they were	red d. careful	
B. Answer the following questions: 4. What is the passage about?		
4. What is the passage about :		
5. Which animals were doing funny mo	ovements?	
6. What did the writer's sister throw into	o the hippo's open mouth ?	*****

DAYS 5,6&7

4	Choose the cor	rect answer from	a, b, c or d:	
	1. A lot of people	lined in the street	ts to welcome t	heir
	a.film	b, hall	c.hero	d.hole
	2. I like ac	tion films, but I lo	ve them now.	
	a. used to	b. don't use to	c. use to	d. didn't use to
	3. You talk	politely to your te	eachers.	
	a.mustn't	b.can't	c. must	d. has to
	4. The ancient Eg	yptians built the I	Karnak	
	a. Temple	b. Statue	c. Guide	d.Theatre
		for a job with		
	a. play	b. interview		d, match
	_	the bus to go to		
	a, is taking		c.taking	d.take
	7. I am learning and brushes.	these days.	That's why I bo	ought special pens
		b. calligraphy	c running	d.hunting
		v for flower	_	4
	g.vase	b. mask		d.tool
	9. Let's take the	My friend's	_	leventh floor.
	a. plane	b. ladder	c. lift	d. bike
	10. A/An is s	someone who wor	ks for no mone	y to help people.
	a.volunteer	b.engineer	c.female	d.junior
5	Complete the ser	ntences with the co	orrect form of th	he word(s) in brackets
Ť	1. When I	(am) a child, I use	d to sleep in my	mother's room.
	2. Do they	(has) a sewing m	achine?	
		ist) leave dangero	_	
	4. What did your	grandfather	(used) to do	?
6	Write a paragra	ph of about NIN	ETY (90) word	ds on :
		"The importan	ice of water"	
	***************************************			***************************************
	***********	**** ******** ******************	~~*41;;*4;;*4;;********************	***************************************
	•••••			***************************************
	***************************************	***************************************		***************************************
	***************************************		>> + + + 4 + 4 + 1 + 1 + 2 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4	***************************************

5 Sharkia Governorate	Diarb Nigm Edu	cational Directorate
1 Listen and choose the correct	answer from a, b	o, c or d :
		ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
 Magdy Yacoub was born in 		
a. Egypt b. America	c. England	d. France
2. He helps people with pr		A. Istaliana
a. lung b. heart	c. brain	d. kidney
3. He stopped his work as a/an		igo.
	c. surgeon	d. guide
4. He opened a new hospital in		d. Aswan
a. Tanta b. Zagazig		u, Aswall
Complete the following dialog		
Hoda and Salwa are talking abo		
Salwa: What do you think of stre	eet cleaners?	
Hoda :(1)		
Salwa: (2)?		
Hoda: I mean by "heroes" that	they do something	g useful.
Salwa: Why do you think so?		
Hoda:(3)		
Salwa: (4)?		
Hoda: We should encourage th	em and give them	more money.
Salwa: But I think money is not		
Hoda : (5)		
Read the following, then answ	ver the questions	
A queen wanted to test how	wise her husband i	was She was
standing far from him and was he	olding two flower	naskets. One had real
flowers and one had fake or unre	al flowers. She ask	ed him. "Which one
is real? Which one is fake?"The kir	na did not answer	right away. He was
silent for a moment. He saw some	bees outside. The	were on the roses.
He said to a servant, "Open the w	indow." The servar	nt did what he said.
The bees came in from the windo	w. They went to th	e basket with real
flowers. Now everyone knew whi	ch basket had real	flowers. The queen
was happy with the king and felt		
A. Choose the correct answer fr		
1. The underlined pronoun "Sh		
a. queen b. king	c. basket	d. bee

	s really		
a. unwise	_	c. wise	
	is silent for a mon		
	b. thinking		d. swimming
	ollowing questio	ns:	
	to the passage.		
5. What were i	in the two flower b	oaskets?	
6. What do yo	u think of the king	?	
Choose the co			
1. Alaa is a	She works with	nout money.	
a. voluntary	b. charity	c. pioneer	d. volunteer
2. You can only o	open this door in a	an such as	a fire.
a. party	b. charity	c. emergency	d. port
3. The Eg	yptian team won	the under 19 worl	d cup finals in 2022.
junior	b. senior	c. children	d. oldest
4. The skin of ze	bra is		
a. striped	b. strapped	c. sharp	d. curly
5. This chemica	l helps to av	way mosquitos.	
a. bring	b. run	c. give	d. keep
6. The room is ur	ntidy. This means it	is	
a. tidy	b. unhappy	c. messy	' <mark>d. larg</mark> e
7. The sch	nool is a school wh	ere children can l	ive all the time.
a. board	b. boarding	c. broad	d. abroad
8. Does Shireen	go to work	early?	
a. have to	b. has to	c. must	d. should
9. Shimaa	plays football in	the street.	
a. isn't	b. don't	c. doesn't	d. never
10your fr	riend ready for the	exam last week?	
Were	b. Was	c. Did	d. Had
Complete the si	entences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets :
	ood we eat		
2. Lots of birds	(fly) in the s	ky as we were sitt	ing down.
	sed to be a firefigl	-	
4. What(Mahmoud have)	to get for the trip	?

Write an email of a to tell her about ni	ight workers.	Your name i	to your friend Fatma s Gamal and your friend's email address
is fatma@hotmail.		n.com. roui	menu s eman dadress
		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
***************************************	*************************		
***************************************		***************************************	
6 Menofia Gove	ernorate	Menouf Ed	ucational Directorate
1 Listen and choose	the correct a	nswer from	a, b, c or d :
الكتاب].	ص الاستماع في نهاية	ة الصحيحة [نصور	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة
1. Samir works for a			
	. club	C. Z00	d. company
2. The animals that			
	, work	c. eat	d. play
3. People donate			
	. clothes		
4. They help to feed			. tnem.
a. out b	, for	c. up	d. after
Complete the follo	wing dialogu	ıe:	
Gomana is meeting	a British touris	t who is visitii	ng Egypt.
Gomana: Hello, it			
Tourist : (1)			
Gomana : (2)			
Tourist : I'm from			
Gomana : Is this y		to Faunt?	
	Ic		st near
		une nere iu	st gean
Gomana : (4)		n Marani ma ar	nd the Duramide
Tourist : I visited	the Egyptia	n wuseum a	na the Pyramius.
Gomana : Have a			
Tourist : (5)			
3 Read the following	passage the	n answer th	e questions :
A role model is so	omeone who is	considered t	o be a good example f

other people to copy. My father is my role model. He is a businessman. He is very hard working and he works day and night to give us healthy

living. He protects me from all kinds of problems. My sister and I can talk about anything and everything with him.

Every night, we wait for him at the dinner table to chat with him. He also takes us for a walk after dinner and tells us interesting stories. He takes us for a picnic or a movie once a month. At the weekends, he volunteers at an old people's home.

My father enjoys playing chess with his friends. He believes in regular exercise and has also taught us the same. He wants me to **excel** in whatever I do. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

A. Choose the co	orrect answer tro	ma, b, c or a.	
1. The main ide	ea of the passage	is	
a. A good fa	mily	b. A helpful p	erson
c. A perfect r	c. A perfect role model		ıl person
2. At the dinne	r table, they	to each other.	
a. talk	b. play	c. listen	d. write
3. The underlin	ned word " excel " m	neans	
a. spend	b. succeed	c. fail	d. worry
B. Answer the fo	ollowing question	ns:	
4. Why is the fo	ather considered o	good leader? N	Mention one reason
E. How is the fo	ather helpful to his	community 2	
How often d	oes the father tak	e them for a pici	nic or a movie :
6. How often d	oes the father tak	e them for a pici	nic or a movie ?
* 7***********************************	rrect answer fror		nic or a movie ?
Choose the cor	***************************************	n a, b, c or d :	
Choose the cor	rrect answer fror	n a, b, c or d :	
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today	rrect answer fror	m a, b, c or d: o in the morning c. in day	g. d. week
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today	rrect answer fror ; I always g b. daily	m a, b, c or d: o in the morning c. in day	g. d. week
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva a. guess	rrect answer fror ; I always g b. daily ite a person to you	m a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests	g. d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva a. guess	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts	m a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests	g. d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva. a. guess 3. The Pharaohs va. a. papyrus	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts were the first to write b. clay	m a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests on	d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva a. guess 3. The Pharaohs v a. papyrus 4. There are lots	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts were the first to write b. clay	m a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests con	g. d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva. guess 3. The Pharaohs v a. papyrus 4. There are lots a. sailors	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts were the first to write b. clay of	n a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests con c. metal upermarket toda	d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva. guess 3. The Pharaohs va. papyrus 4. There are lots a. sailors	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts were the first to write b. clay of	m a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests con c. metal upermarket toda c. objects test to check hi	d. week re your
Choose the cor 1. I go to school a. today 2. When you inva. guess 3. The Pharaohs va. papyrus 4. There are lots a. sailors 5. They give the a. random	rrect answer fror; I always g b. daily ite a person to you b. hosts were the first to write b. clay of	n a, b, c or d: to in the morning c. in day ur house, they ar c. guests con c. metal upermarket toda c. objects test to check hi	d. week re your

7. Deaf	people c	an communic	ateusing	sign language.	
a. by		b. on	c. at	d. with	
8. Niag	ara falls .	by the n	nost people in th	e world.	
a. vis	it	b. visited	c. is visit	d. are visi	ted
9. I wer	nt to the s	upermarket	is next to m	y house to buy c	heese.
a. wh	10	b. when	c. where	d. which	
10. You .	swi	im here. It's ag	ainst the law.		
a. mı	ustn't	b. must	c. should	d. can	
5 Comple	ete the se	ntences with t	he correct form o	f the word(s) in b	rackets:
			osent yesterday.		
2. Foot	ball is	(play) all o	ver the world.		
3. He	(not	tuse) to stay u	p late when he v	vas young.	
4. It's a	holiday t	today. We	(not have) go	to school.	
6 Write	paragra	aph of about	NINETY (90) w	ords on :	
	"Wh	at you and yo	ur family do on h	olidays"	
**********		*************************		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
				,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
***************************************				,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	*******
					.,
7 Gh	arbia G	overnorate	Samanoud	Educational Direct	orate
					orate
	and cho	ose the corre	ct answer from	α, b, c or d :	
1 Listen	and cho	ose the corre سنماع في نهاية الكتاب	ct answer from		
1. I am	and cho با. going on	ose the corre ستماع في نهاية الكتاب ۱ ۵	ect answer from لصحيحة (نصوص الاس	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة	ستمع إلى
1. I am	and cho .[going on	ose the corre ستماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus	ect answer from لصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. rîde	α, b, c or d :	ستمع إلى
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha	and cho إبار going on pat t is the we	ose the corre ستماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod	ect answer from الصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. ride	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar	ستمع إلى ne
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha a. Wo	and cho .(u going on oat at is the we	ose the corre سنماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod b. Hot	ct answer from الصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. ride الay ?	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar	ستمع إلى ne
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha a. Wo 3. Wha	and cho .(-) going on oat it is the we arm it do you l	ose the corre ستماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod	ct answer from الصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. ride امع ؟	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar y d. Cold	ستمع إلى ne
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha a. Wa 3. Wha a. A l	going on oat it is the we arm it do you l	ose the corre سنماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod b. Hot	ct answer from Lace of the control c. ride lay ? c. Wind b. Sung	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar y d. Cold	ستمع إلى ne
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha a. Wo 3. Wha a. A I c. A j	and cho going on at it is the we arm it do you l hat acket	ose the corre سنماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod b. Hot have to wear ?	c. ride الصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. ride المع ? م. Wind b. Sung d. A ha	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar y d. Cold	ستمع إلى ne
1. I am a. bo 2. Wha a. Wo 3. Wha a. A I c. A j	going on at it is the we arm it do you l hat acket in see man	ose the corre سنماع في نهاية الكتاب a b. bus eather like tod b. Hot	c. ride الصحيحة (نصوص الاس c. ride المع ? م. Wind b. Sung d. A ha	a, b, c or d : معلمك واختر الإجابة d. plar y d. Cold glasses t and sunglasses	ستمع إلى ne

DAYS 5,6&7

Complete the following dialog		
Nader and Omar are talking at the		ıa.
Nader: Do you have to study this	evening, Omar?	
Omar : (1)		
Nader: (2)?		
Omar: I have to study because I	have an English te	est.
Nader: (3)?		
Omar: The test will be tomorrow		
Nader: It's nearly the end of the b	oreak. Which subje	ct do you have?
Omar : (4)		
Nader: Do you like geography?		
Omar : (5)		
Read the following, then answe	r the questions	
Reading is a very good habit. I		
language. When you read, you nee		
to wear your reading glasses if it is		
topics and underline the importan		
what you read. Try to discuss what		
People read for many different goo		
to feel happy and spend a nice tim		
read for their study or research. All		
report. We also read messages, em		
		at we receive.
A. Choose the correct answer fro	ma,b,cora:	
1. Reading is ahabit.		
	c. careless	d. good
The underlined word "Others"		
a. goals b. people		d. points
The underlined word "enjoyn	nent " in the passa	ge means
a. sadness b. sports	c. happiness	d. school
B. Answer the following question	ns:	
4. Give a suitable title for the pas	ssage.	
	*******************************	_
5. Why do you think reading is u	seful for a student	?
	2 m.	
6. How can you remember what	you read?	

	orrect answer fron		
	f the curtains	•	
a. deals	b. treats	c. plays	d. matches
	lever at cloth		
a. doing	b. working	-	d. seeing
The Ancient years ago.	Egyptian doctors w	rote their	rideas thousands
a. out	b. down	c. of	d. inside
4. You can see	in a museum).	
a. sights	b. statues	c. states	d. stages
5. He couldn't	walk at all. He need	s a	
a. boat	b. wheelchair	c. hat	d. table
6 is a p	lant used for making	g clothes.	
a. Rice	b. Wheat	_	d. Tomato
7. Farmers	their animals ev	ery day.	
a. mind	b. send	c. feed	d. lend
8. Amira	by the policeman.		
	b. has helped		d. help
9. The lady	lives next door i	s very friendly.	
a. where		c. which	d. who
0 you c	got that game called	d "Odd One Out"	?
	b. Can		d. Did
Complete the:	sentences with the c	orrect form of th	ne word(s) in brac
1. Shady	(have) to wear a u	ıniform.	
2. As we	. (walk) into the mu	seum, we saw so	ome old friends.
3. Dr. Magdy .	(use) to help p	oor people.	
4. The cat is sit	ting in the sun	(happy).	
Write a parag	graph of about NII	NETY (90) word	ds on :
	"A historic place		
\$<+<+x>>100000000000000000000000000000000000			

B Dakahlia Governorate	East Mansoura Educ	cational Directorate
Listen and choose the correct الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].	answer from a, b, الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص	c or d : استمع إلى معلمك واختر
1. What is Aya's home city? a. Giza b. Minya	c. Tanta	d. Mansoura
 Where is Aya's home city locate Near the Nile Near the canal 	b. Far from the I d. Far from the	
 3. What is Minya known for? a. Sweets b. Fruits 4. Which plants are grown in Min 	c. Black honey	d. Rice
a. Cotton c. Cotton and sugarcane	b. Cotton and p d. Potatoes and	
Mona : Amany, can I ask you s	any.	ut you and your
family? Amany: (1)		
Amany: There are four people i Mona: When do you get up?	n my family.	
Amany: (3)		sit mu arandmather.
Mona : Do you like sport ? Amany : (5)		siting grandinotiles.
De del a fallaccione de an anom	outho supetions	

Read the following, then answer the questions:

A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners. There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of the Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to protect the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves to help protect the natural resources and the culture and the history of those areas. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea coast. Only a few tourists can visit these places because some of them may damage these nature reserves.

A		rrect answer fro		
		ed pronoun "the	n" refers to	
	a. tourists		b. the governm	
	c. nature res		d. landowners	
	•	rotect " means to		
	a. damage		b. keep safe	
	c. drop		d. throw	
			ves around the wo	
	a. Governme		b. Private land	
	c. Universitie	25	d. Both (a) and	d (b)
6	. Answer the fo	llowing question	ns:	4
	4. What's the p	assage about ?		
	5. What is a na	ture reserve?	***************************************	
	6. Why do you	think Egypt plan	ned to build more	nature reserves ?
4		rect answer fro	m a, b, c or d : nds us because w	e use
	g. CD player	Dat He allacista	b. sign langua	
	c. English lang	iuaae	d. German	J -
	-	_	our house, they are	e uour
	a. guess		c. guests	d. hostess
	_	money to people		
	a. scientist	b. surgeon	c. coach	d. patron
		helps to keep		
	a. away	b. with	c. by	d. up
	_	ber my grandfatl	_	ways helped us when
	a. unkind	b. unkindness	c. darkness	d. kindness
	6. There was no	rain for four mon	ths this winter, so	now there is a
	a. flood	b. drought	c. energy	d. pollution
				and not just the day.
	a. sports scho		b. university	
	c. boarding so		d. kindergarte	en
			-	use at the moment.
	a. clean	b. am cleaning		d. cleaned
	u, cicari	D. GITT CICGITITY	3	

		in the park	we often play	football. d. where
	a. which	b. who		
		b. worst		as the pollution in cities. d. more bad
5		sentences with t	he correct for	m of the word(s) in
	brackets:	ake voru (au	iot)	()
		aks very(qu (locate) in the r		()
		re shopping in the		. (see)
	my friends.		•	()
		nds, I (not h		early;
	I can stay in	bed until 9 o'clock.		()
6	Write a parag	raph of NINETY	(90) words on	
		"Your dai	ly routine"	

		***************************************		***************************************
			. *************************************	vaced 13+ +7+
	***************************************			***************************************
0	Reheira (jovernorate	Damanhour F	ducational Directorate
J	Dellella (dovernorate	Damamour	
1	Listen and ch	oose the correct	answer from a	ı, b, c or d :
				استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجاب
	1. The Ancient	Egyptianhe	lped people wi	th burns.
	a. servants		c. queens	d. doctors
		tood that the		
	a. lung	b. heart	c. brain	d. head
		ants to stop		d annulation
			c. illness	d. smoking
	a. burn	ew how tol	c. mind	d. mend
				d. Hicha
2		following dialog		4
		re talking about th	e next weeken	u.
	Omar : How ar	_		
	Omar : (2)	?		

Ali : I am going to join a chari	ty.	
Omar : (3)?		
Ali : To help poor and disable	d people.	
Omar: What can you do to help	them?	
Ali :(4)		
Omar: Can I join this charity?		
Ali : (5)		
Read the following, then answ	er the questions :	
Teenagers have many problem media. They may face bullying. The help to feel happy. They should try friends, they also should be respected and enjoy the nature. Going to need a lot of sleep. Young people ware much happier! People need earnakes them feel happy.	ey prefer living along new sports, they ne ted. Teenagers need to the park helps th who sleep eight to te	e. They need more ed to make new I to go outside to em feel happy. They en hours a night
A. Choose the correct answer fro	oma,b,c ord:	
1. The underlined pronoun "the		
		d. friends
A teenager is a person who is		
a. 13:19 b. 5:10		d. 50:60
3is a big problem which		I Dellestion
a. Sports b. Bullying		d. Pollution
B. Answer the following question		
4. Give a suitable title to this po		
5. What should teenagers do to		
6. What problems do they have		
Choose the correct answer fro		
1. This is the village I was b		
a. which b. where		d. when
His handwriting is bad. He sho		
a. biography b. painting	c. maths	d. calligraphy
3. You need to your compu		
a. mind b. damage	c. bring	d. repair
4people can't speak or h		1 Dumas
a. Blind b. Deaf	c. Disabled	d. Brave

5. Th	nere is a	because there is	a lot of rain.	
a.	flood	b. drought	c. paper	d. fire
6. A	is a pie	ece of jewellery sho	e wears around h	
a.	mask	b. vase	c. ring	d. necklace
7. Th	nat bird is flyi	ing very		
a.	careful	b. good	c. fast	d. quick
8. A:	s I was playir	ng, the light	out.	
a.	gone	b. went	c. goes	d. go
9. Th	nis story is		ad it.	
Q.	ugly	b. weak	c. fantastic	d. story
10. To	be m	eans not being wit	h other people.	
a.	happy	b. busy	c. worried	d. alone
3. I o 4. Yo	can't go out i ou(sh	do) he get up every now because I ould) drink fizzy dr aph of about NIN "Helping the el	(do) my home inks. ETY (90) words	
10 K	ofr El-Sheikl	h Governorate	Desouk Educat	ional Directorate
1 List	en and cho	ose the correct a	nswer from a, b	c or d :
213				استمع إلى معلمك واختر ال
1 TI		ndball team are he		
		b. Arab		d. English
		handball C		
	. Africa	b. World	c. Europe	d. Arab
		h was against	•	
	Egypt	b. Sudan	c. Algeria	d. Tunisia
		red goals.		

Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer and Ramez are talking about charities.

Tamer: Hello, Ramez. Where are you going this weekend?

Ramez: Hello, Tamer. (1)

Tamer : A charity! (2)?

Ramez: Because I want to help the disabled old people.

Tamer : (3)?

Ramez: I will wash their clothes and give them medicine.

Tamer: How often do you go there?

Ramez :(4)

Tamer : Can I work for this charity with you?

Ramez :(5)

Read the following, then answer the questions:

We know how Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients because they wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago. Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. However, they used to think that the heart also pumps air to lungs! They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain does, but they did not know how important it was. Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 - a. eye b. hair c. ear d. brain
- 2. The underlined word "infections" means
 - a. happiness b. sadness c. illness d. health
- 3. The ancient Egyptian doctors knew how to sew
 - a. cuts b. hearts c. lungs d. bones

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4. Give a suitable title to the passage.
- 5. How do you know that Ancient Egyptian doctors helped their patients?
- 6. What did they use to know about the heart?

Choose the cor	rect answer from	n a, b, c or d :	
 Magda walks 	to her work	-6	
a.slow	b.slowly	c.slower	d.slowest
2. The are	people without end	ough money to live	e on.
a.rich	b.young	c.poor	d.brave
3. It is important	t to learn about	places arou	nd the world.
a.historic	b.history	c.funny	d.historian
4. Did he			
o.use	b.used	c.used to	d.use to
	ed most of his wor		
-	b.yesterday		d.lost
6. My parents	money to a cl	harity that helps	
a.earn	b.donate	c.win	d.gain
7. The building is	s very tall, but we		
a.stairs	b.left	c.lift	d.attic
8 take in	air and help us to	breathe.	
a.Brains	b.Hearts	c.Legs	d.Lungs
9. Hany was rea	ding a story		
a.while	b.as	c.because	d.when
10. An earthquak	e is a natural		
a.kindness	b.disorder	c.disaster	d.infection
Complete the :	entences with t	he correct form	of the word(s) in
brackets:			
1. Where are the	se shoes (se	ell) ?	
2. Alexandria is	the place(v	vhen) I love so m	uch.
3. It (be) o	old yesterday.		
4. Trains are	(comfortable) t	than cars.	
Write a paraar	aph of about NI	NETY (90) word	ls on :
title a paragr		ork I like most"	
	The charty in	ora a maciniosi	
••••••			
••••••			

11 Damietta Governorate

Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

1	Listen and choose	the	correct answer	from	a, b,	cor	ď	
---	-------------------	-----	----------------	------	-------	-----	---	--

	6	الاستماء في نماية الكتار	ابة الصحيحة انصوص	استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجا
	1. Malek's father			
	a. shirt		_	d. shop
	2. In the new			
		b. village		d. school
	3. Malek is going			
		b. Cairo		d. Aswan
	4. On the school	trip, Malek is go	ing to visit	places.
	a. amazing	b. terrible	c. weak	d. careful
2	Complete the f	ollowing dialo	gue :	
	Omar is talking	to Yaseen about	teenagers.	
	Omar : What o	ire you doing, Yo	iseen?	
	Yaseen :(1)			
	Omar : What is	s the book abou	t?	
	Yaseen :(2)			
	Omar :Teenog	jers! (3)	?	
			aged from 13 to 1	19.
	Omar : What s	hould teenagers	do to feel happ	y ?
	Yaseen : (4)	*******************************		
	Omar : (5)	4	?	
			eight hours a ni	ight.

Read the following, then answer the questions :

A zoo is a place where we can see animals from different countries. There is usually at least one zoo in every country. In Egypt, there is one zoo in every big city or town. The biggest is in Giza. Some people do not like zoos. They think that it is **cruel** to keep wild animals not free and put them in cages. Other people think that if the cage is large, the animals will be happy.

The animals have good food every day and if they are ill, they are given medicine. **They** do not have to worry about enemies. Most children enjoy visiting the zoo. They usually prefer to look at the large animals. Sometimes visitors are very unkind to the animals. They throw things at them.

A. Choose the	correct answer f	rom a . b . c or d :	
		ey" refers to	
a. animal:		c. people	d. children
2. The under	rlined word "cruel"	in the passage me	eans
a.long	b. unreal	c. tall	d. unkind
3. Some visit	tors things a	t animals.	
a. enjoy	b. prefer	c. throw	d. see
B. Answer the	following questi	ons:	
4. Give a suit	table title to the po	assage.	
5. What hap	pens to the anima	ls if they are ill?	
6. Do you th Why / Why	_	d to have a zoo in	every country ?
	orrect answer fr		
1. Can you	my mother for	me because my pl	hone is not working?
a. come	b. text	c. like	d. talk
2. We are sitting	ng on the ro	cks because they	are very sharp.
a. careful th	an b. careful	c. carefully	d. as careful
3. In 2019, the	Egyptian t	eam won the unde	er-19 World Cup.
a. junior	b. senior	c. general	d. easy
4. In a museui	m, you touc	h the objects.	
a. must	b. have to	c. mustn't	d. don't have to
5. A/An	is someone who	works for no money	y to help people.
a, volunteer	b. emergency	c. scientist	d. work
6. Their new h	ouse is in the coun	try near a railway	****** ****** 0
a. tap	b. line	c. sofa	d. routine
7. It is usually English.	easy to wit	h people in other c	ountries if you speak
a. communi	cate b. repair	c. make	d. visit
8. It was rainir	ng for days and the	en there was a	, so people used
boats to lea	ve their homes		
a. flood	b. rubbish	c. drought	d. pollution
9. They gave the	he footballer a/an	test to chec	k his health.
	4 45	4.4	
a. kind	b. dirty	c. old	d. random
	b, airty irdlives in t		d. random

3. While Rania (take) photo 4. My grandfather (use) to p	play foo	otball wh	en he was young.
Write a paragraph of about NII "A trip to the			is on :
Port Said Governorate	Port	Said Educ	cational Directorate
Listen and choose the correct of			
ن الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].			
1. Ali thinks that the girl that came			
a. student b. teacher	c. se	snop wa ervant	d. doctor
a. student b. teacher 2. Theusually asks for mone	c. se	ervant	
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mono	c. se ey. c. bo	ervant aker	d. doctor
a. student b. teacher 2. Theusually asks for mone	c. se ey. c. bo	ervant aker	d. doctor
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of	c. se ey. c. bo of her	ervant aker	d. doctor d. princess
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mono a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes	c. se ey. c. bo of her	aker old	d. doctor d. princess
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from	c. se ey. c. be of her c. go c. ro	aker old	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue:	c. se ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b,	ervant aker old an c or d to	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b,	ervant aker old an c or d to	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for monoral girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father: Ayman, what are you divide the correct answer from the correct answer f	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b,	ervant aker old an c or d to	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father : Ayman, what are you designed in the correct answer from following dialogue:	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b,	ervant aker old an c or d to	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father: Ayman, what are you d Ayman: (5)	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b, about o loing?	ervant aker old an c or d to climate ch	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the nange:
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father : Ayman, what are you d Ayman: (5)	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b, about o loing?	ervant aker old an c or d to climate ch	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father : Ayman, what are you d Ayman : (5)	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ro m a, b, about o loing?	ervant aker old an c or d to climate ch	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the nange:
a. student b. teacher 2. The usually asks for mone a. girl b. beggar 3. The girl gave the beggar most of a. money b. clothes 4. The girl like a princess. a. swam b. behaved Choose the correct answer from following dialogue: Ayman is watching a programme Father : Ayman, what are you d Ayman: (5)	c. see ey. c. bo of her c. go c. ra m a, b, about o loing?	ervant aker old an c or d to climate ch b. I'm w d. I'm d	d. doctor d. princess d. cakes d. walked complete the nange:

DAYS 5,6a7

Father	: (7)	?		
	a. Who	at does it do	b. What do	es it work
	c. Whe	n does it happen	d. What do	es it mean
Ayman	: It mea	ns that the weath	ner changes and be	comes hotter.
Father	: Is it da	ingerous?		
Ayman	: (8)			
•	a. Yes,	of course	b. I'm not s	sure
	c. No, i	t isn't	d. I don't a	gree
Father	: (9)	?		
	a. How	much is it		g does it take
	c. Why	is it dangerous	d. Why is it	difficult
Ayman	: It is da	ingerous because	it damages the en	vironment.
· A. Choo	se the co	orrect answer fr	om a, b, c or d :	
		ps me to read in b		
a. lan		b. lamp		d. curtain
11. At th	e weeken	d, Ziad's usually	lazy.	
a. qu	iet	b. quit	c. quite	d. quickly
12. Sami	ra Mouss	a was Egypt's firs	tnuclear scie	entist.
	ale			d. daughter
13. The	at th	he Karnak Temple		
a. rui			c. rules	
			appening without o	
		b. Full		d. Tidy
		to Suez by the		
			c. caught	_
			ce. Children like pla	
	rible		c. ugly	d. attractive
		u. I for the		d
			c. am studying	
			of the football tean	
a. Dic			C. Is	d. Was
		n, you touc b. can	n tne objects. C. mustn't	d. don't have
a. mu				
B. Choo c or d		errect form of th	e word(s) in the b	rackets from a, b
20. Lots	of birds	(fly) in the sk	y as we were sitting	g.
a. wil	l fly	b. can fly	c. were flying	d. are flying

21. My uncle Ho	any is a person	(which) is alwo	ays very kind to me.
a. who	b. whose	c. where	d. when
22. This new ph	one is(bac	d) than my old one	
a. good	b. nice	c. worse	d. worst
23. Giza	(know) for its anci	ient pyramids.	
a. knowing	b. knew	c. is known	d. known
• Read the follo	wing text, then	answer the ques	tions:
animals for the harmful for far live in great nu that there aren and animals he trees have bee or for building however; there	eir meat or their sk mers. Some animo mbers in India. Bu I't many left alive. ave lost their hab In cut down or bur roads and towns.	kin. Others are kille als such as tigers a ut people have hur In South Africa, m itat in the forest be ant. People then use	red. People always kill d because they are and elephants used to nted them so much any different birds ecause thousands of the land for farming save some animals tect endangered
animals.			
		roma, b, c or d: r" refers to	
a. animals 25. The text i a. pollutio c. sports	b. birds is talking about n ed in great numbe	c. birds and a b. endangere d. holidays	ed animals d. people d. India
B. Answer the	following questi	ons:	
27. Why do p	people kill animal	s ?	
28. What ha	ppened when pec	ople cut down tree	s?
29. Do you th	nink that we can s	ave the lives of ani	mals?Why?Why not?

30. Write a pare		NINETY (90) wo	rds on :
	"Your	home city"	
***************************************		***************************************	***************************************
***************************************	****************************	***************************************	

***************************************			***************************************

[3] Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهابة الكتاب). 1. The text is about a. Minya b. Tanta c. Cairo d. Port Said 2. Where is the city located? - It's located in the of Egypt. b. south c. east d. west 3. The city is known for its a. temples b. ancient monuments c. delicious sweets d. Puramids 4. What is grown there? - b. Rice g. Cotton c. Wheat d. Sugar

Complete the following dialogue:

Mona asks Ola about her visit to Alexandria.

Read the following, then answer the questions:

We don't know who made tea for the first time, but we have heard and read many stories about that. **Nearly** five thousand years ago, the king of China boiled his drinking water under a tree. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When he drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He thought that the taste came from the leaves of the tree. People drink tea because they think **it** helps them stay awake for a long time. We all know that tea is grown in China and India. Many people like to drink tea with milk. Others like to have it with lemon when they feel tired. People usually have tea in the morning and after lunch.

4. The constants	offeet allower from	na,b,c ord:	
	ned pronoun "Near		
 opposite 	b. almost	c. nearby	d. far
2. People usud	ally drink tea with	when they a	
a. milk	b. orange	c. lemon	d. leaves
3. Tea is grown	n in		
a. Japan	b. China	c. India	d. both b and d
3. Answer the fo	ollowing question	s:	
4. Why do peo	pple drink tea?		
•	eople usually drink		
***************************************	the underlined pro		
Choose the co	rrect answer from	n a, b, c or d :	***************************************
1. A knov	vs how to look insid	le the body to hel	p people who are i
a. hero	b. surgeon	c. police office	d. sports coach
2. A/An d work.	loes experiments to		
a. event	b. scientist	c. worker	d. hero
	event when peopl	e try to get a prize	by being the best
at something	J.		
at something a. team		c. coach	d. competition
a. team 4. A/Ani	b. charity s something serious		
a. team 4. A/Anis something a	 b. charity s something serious bout. 	s or dangerous the	at you need to do
a. team 4. A/Anis something a a. crescent 5. Theis	b. charity s something serious	c charity	at you need to do
d. team 4. A/Anis something a d. crescent 5. Theis nature.	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency	c charity	d. organisation
a. team 4. A/Anis something a a. crescent 5. Theis nature. a. mountain	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a	c charity city, where there c	d. organisation ire farms and lots d. crescent
a. team 4. A/Anis something a a. crescent 5. Theis nature. a. mountain	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake sps and supermarke	c charity city, where there of c countryside ets are found in the	d. organisation ire farms and lots d. crescent e city
d. team 4. A/Anis something a crescent 5. Theis nature. d. mountain 6. Most big sho a corner	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake sps and supermarke b. centre	c charity city, where there of c countryside ets are found in th	d. organisation are farms and lots a d. crescent e city
d. team 4. A/Anis something a crescent 5. Theis nature. d. mountain 6. Most big sho a corner	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake ps and supermarke	c charity city, where there of c countryside ets are found in th	d. organisation are farms and lots a d. crescent e city
a. team 4. A/Anis something a a crescent 5. Theis nature. a. mountain 6. Most big sho a corner 7. My mother o a reminds	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake sps and supermarke b. centre ften	c. charity city, where there c c. countryside ets are found in th c. border et my school bag c. writes	d. organisation ire farms and lots of d. crescent e city d. wall ready before I slee
a. team 4. A/An	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake sps and supermarke b. centre fiten	c. charity city, where there of c. countryside ets are found in th c. border et my school bag c. writes morning.	d. organisation ire farms and lots of d. crescent e city d. wall ready before I slee
a. team 4. A/Anis something a a crescent 5. Theis nature. a. mountain 6. Most big sho a corner 7. My mother o a reminds 8. Birds always a singing	b. charity s something serious bout. b. emergency the area outside a b. earthquake sps and supermarke b. centre ften	c. charity city, where there c c. countryside ets are found in th c. border et my school bag c. writes morning. c. sing	d. organisation are farms and lots a d. crescent e city d. wall ready before I slee d. shows d. sings

		-	-
DAYS		D.	. /
UNIO	ℳ.	v	

	10. Alexandria in the north of a located b. is locating	of Egypt. c. is located	d. locates
5	1. It isn't (rain) outside, but 2. Yasser's grandmother (us	it's a bit cloudy.	
	3. Tennis is a sport (who) m		
	4. The canal is (polluted) the	an it was before.	
6	Write a paragraph of about NI	NETY (90) word	s on :
	"Your favou	ırite hobby"	
		********************************	************************************

	T F	ALC: L. Edu-	
L	Fayoum Governorate	Al-Sideed Educ	ational Directorate
	Listen and choose the correct of	newer from a l	o cord:
ш			ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ- ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ-
		ببه التفخيف الطوطر	سسع إلى معتمت واحتر الم
	1. Mr Othman is my	c teacher	d. uncle
	2. Mr Othman helped me pass my		d. differe
		c. history	d. geography
	3. Mr Othman was teaching at a		d. geograping
	-	c. primary	d. preparatory
	4. He used his old to help hi		
	·	c. stories	d. tools
2	Complete the following dialog	ue:	
	Salma and Nada are talking abou		iday.
	Salma : Where did you go last su		
	Nada : (1)		
	Salma : Where did you stay?		
	Nada : (2)		
	Salma : (3)?		
	Nada : We travelled by car.		
	Salma : Did you swim in the sea	?	

Nada				
Salma	: (5)	?		
Mada	: We stay	ed there for a w	eek.	
Read th	e followi	ng, then answ	er the questions:	
his cousi was busy where the His cousi they had for some shopping expensiv A. Choose 1. The a. bi 2. The	n Adel who y on the ro ley had so in Adel is o d a delicion time in the g in a larg re mobile f se the cor underline ig	o lives there. He cad. When he ar mething cold to a great doctor. Fus meal of fish. We sea. At the sure mall in the certor his wife and rect answer frod word "large" reb. bad dword "there" rect answer frod word "large" rect answer frod word "large" rect answer frod word "there" rect answer from the word "there wo	c. small refers to	rove before it Adel at a café y hot on that day. he beach where high, they swam each and went himy bought a very children. d. tiny
		b. the beach		d. Alexandria
		in Alexandri		d on boun
		_	c. a fortnight	a. an nour
		owing question	ns:	
4. Who	at is the po	assage about ?		
5. Whe	ere did Sar	ny and his cous	in have a meal of fi	sh?
100004072		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
6. Do g	you think !	Samy is rich?W	hy?	
				,,
		ect answer fro		
			c. baker	e was very important d. waiter
a. roll		b. ruler		
	es on the		ways takes the	
a. lift	, ,	b. steps	c. ladder	
		nent that you co	in use to make of re	pair things are called
a. po		b. roles	c. tools	d. poles
			the window of the	•
			c. mirrors	

	5. A is a pe	rson who can show	w you round a pla	ce.
	a. cook	b. waiter	c. tourist	d. guide
	6. Please, turn the	e off. I want	to sleep.	
	a. cupboard	b. sofa	c. lamp	d. desk
		ry interesting. I	it to you.	
	a. recommend	b. tell	c. say	d. warn
	8. Students	follow their school	ol rules.	
	a. are	b. have	c. must	d. had
	This is the doct	or examine		
	a. where	b. who	c. which	d. when
1	0. My friend	to school early.		
	a. go always	b. goes always	c. always goes	d, always go
5	Complete the sen	tences with the co	rrect form of the v	word(s) in brackets :
	 My uncle is a g 	ood driver. He driv	es(careful).
		take) a bath, the l	_	
		. (difficult) than sc		
	4. When I was ter	n, I used to	(was) funny.	
6	Write a paragra	ph of about NIN	ETY (90) words	on:
		"The job yo	u prefer"	
	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************	***************************************
	*************************	********************************		41-1-14-14-14-14-1-14
		*****		3 ()
	***********************************	***************		***************************************
	••••••	*****		
15	Beni Suef G	overnorate	El Fashn Educati	onal Directorate
		_		
1		se the correct a		
	اب).	ص الاستماع في نهاية الكتا	الإجابة الصحيحة (نصو	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر
	 What does Not 	na like ? - Her		
			L	I la manda
	a. bedroom	b. school		d. bank
	2. There's always	when she o	pens the curtains	•
	2. There's always a. wind	when she o		
	2. There's always a. wind 3. How is her war	when she o b, sunlight drobe ?	pens the curtains. c. storms	d. moonlight
	 There's always a. wind How is her war a. Small 	when she o b. sunlight drobe ? b. Long	pens the curtains. c. storms c. Big	•
	 There's always a. wind How is her war a. Small 	when she o b, sunlight drobe ?	pens the curtains. c. storms c. Big	d. moonlight

2		following dialo		
	Mona and Heb	a are talking abo	ut a famous footbal	ler.
	Mona: Do you	a like sports, Hebo	2?	
	Heba :(1)	************************		
	Mona: (2)			
	Heba: Mohar	mmed Salah, he's	a great footballer.	
	Mona: Does h	ne score a lot of g	oals?	
	Heba :(3)			
	Mona: (4)	?		
	Heba : He's sl	hort and has got	curly hair.	
	Mona: Which	country is Mohai	mmed Salah from?	
	Heba : (5)	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,		
3	Read the follo	wing, then ansv	wer the questions	•
			e Middle East. Its co	
				s fine all the year, so
				it. When they come,
			h as the Egyptian M	
			uxor and Aswan to	
			swan. Also they visit	
1	where they can	have a look on t	he whole city of Cai	ro. It is a beautiful
•	view. Tourists co	an have delicious	meals at the restau	rants in Cairo.
	A. Choose the	correct answer fi	roma,b,c ord:	
	1. The main le	anguage in Egypt	t is	
	a. Arabic	b. French	c. Japanese	d. Turkish
	2. The weath	er in Egypt is	_	
	a. cold	b. fine	c. bad	d. very hot
	The underl	ined word " they "		
	a. status	b. temples	c. tourists	d. fans
	B. Answer the f	following questi	ons:	
	4. Give a suite	able title for the p	oassage.	
	********************		_	,
	5. What is the	e capital of Egypt	?	
	6. Why do yo	u think tourists lik	ke to visit Egypt?	
	4+4->>>++4-			
4	Choose the co	orrect answer fr	oma h cord:	
	a harmal with a		om a, b, c or a .	
	I. My daily	starts when I		d. subject

DAYS 5,6&7

	2. We need a con	nputer engineer	to our compu	iter.
	a. repair	b. prepare	c. care	d. rare
	3. The take	in air and help	us to breathe.	
	a. brains	b. lungs	c. hearts	d. legs
	4. A gives	you light.		
	a. lake	b. lamb	c. lamp	d. leave
	5. Hossam lives i	n a big of	flats in Giza.	
	a. way	b. block	c. black	d. lock
	6. We need more	rain or there mi	ght be a	
	a. drought		c. rubbish	d. fuel
	7. It is to g	get worried or fe	el sad sometimes.	
	 unusual 	b. normal	c. strange	d. abnormal
	8. Why is Amal	tired?		
	a. felt	b. feels	c. feeling	d. feel
	9. In a museum,		the objects.	
	a. must	b. mustn't	c. have to	d. has to
	10 your fat	her got a compu	iter?	
	a. Do	b. Has	c. Can	d. Have
5	Complete the se	ntences with the	correct form of the	word(s) in brackets :
	1(Does)			
	2. That bird is fly			
			the country built la	st year.
	4. Figs are	. (delicious) as cl	nocolate.	
6	Write a paragra	ph of about N	INETY (90) words	on:
			want to do"	
	***************************************			***************************************
	#47444AEIE4>- A+AAA4AAPA>+++++++++	·····	************************************	
	******************************		***************************************	
	******************************		**** * ********************************	***************************************
			At Kindon China	tion of Diverterets
	Minya Ga	vernorate •	Abu Kurkas Educe	ational Directorate
				a and a
1			answer from a, b,	
				استمع إلى معلمك واختر ا
		oil go to Al Azhar		d On Tuesday
	a. On Friday	D. On Monda	c. On Sunday	d. On Tuesday

2. Who	did they s	ee?			
	nurse		b. A doctor		
c. A :	street-food	seller	d. A teache	er	
3. Whe	n did they	go home?			
a. Ed	ırly	b. Late	c. At 5:00	d. At: 7:00	
4. How	was the fo	ood?			
a. Ro	otten	b. Bad	c. Funny	d. Delicious	
		ollowing dia			
				oliday in Alexandria	l.
Hana	: Where d	id you go last	t summer?		
Nada	:(1)		. 4		
Hana	: Where d	id you stay?			
Nada	: (2)		. 0		
Hana	:(3)		. ?		
Nada		elled by car.			
Hana	: Did you	swim in the s	ea?		
Nada	: (4)		, в		
Hana	: (5)		. ?		
Nada	: We stay	ed there for a	week.		
Read t	he follow	ing, then an	swer the questi	ons:	
				thes. First, he tried o	n
				he gave them back t	
				id the same price as	
trouser	s. Nabil wa	s pleased wit	h the jacket, and	he left the shop. Bel	fore
he drov	e home, th	e shopkeepe	r ran out. "You die	n't pay the jacket!"	said
the sho	pkeeper. "E	But I gave you	u the trousers in e	xchange for the jacl	cet,
didn't I	"replied No	abil. "Yes, you	didn't pay for the	trousers, either!" sa	id
				plied Nabil. "I am no	ot so
		_	nich I never boug		
			from a, b, c or	d:	
		ased with the			
			c. jacket	d. shoes	
				meaning as	
	shoes	b. pants	c. skirts	d. shirts	
			to the shopkeep		
	shop	b. jacket	c. money	d. trousers	
		lowing ques			
4. W	nat is this p	assage abou	T f		

DAYS 5.687

		ect answer from ect the		re we live.
		b. environment		d. presentation
2. /	Ais a pla	ce where we can	go for picnics.	
	a. park	b. bark	c. mark	d. cinema
3.1	My room	every day.		
		b is cleaning		d. cleans
4. 9	Someone open	ed the door while	I	
		b. was slept		d. slept
		He works for r	_	I also acted
		b voluntary		d. charity
		n the south of Egy		darown
		b made		d. grown
	My grandparer a. house	nts live in a b. black	c. block	d. chest
		rain or there migh		G. CHESC
		b. rubbish		d. fuel
		blood around th		
		b. pumps	c. takes	d. gives
		, the train or the p	olane?	
		b. faster		d. as fast as
1. 2. 3.	Figs are Mr Adel is the t He didn't use to	tences with the co delicious) as choo eacher (who o (had) a big ou have) got in you	:olate. ere) taught my sis g car.	
W	rite a paragra	ph of about NIN "A person that yo		on:

17 Assiut Governorate	Sahel Selim Educ	ational Directorate
1 Listen and choose the correct	answer from a, b,	cord:
		استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا
1. Salma isyears old.		
a. eleven b. ten	c. thirteen	d. twelve
What's Salma's favourite subject		
a. Maths b. English	c. History	d. Arabic
3. Salma goes to aschool.		of Annhantoni
a. preparatory b. primary4. What sport does Salma like?	c. secondary	d. technical
a. Basketball b. Football	c. Karate	d. Tennis
Complete the following dialog		
Tamer is asking Maher about his	*	
Tamer: Hi, Maher. How are you?		
Maher: (1)		
Tamer : What's your father's job	?	
Maher: (2)		
Tamer : (3)?		
Maher: He works in a hospital in	Cairo.	
Tamer : (4)?		
Maher: He works for eight hours	a day.	
Tamer : Does he like helping sick	people?	
Maher: (5)		
Read the following, then answer	er the questions	
Last Common Tanak wanted to	•	

Last Summer, Tarek wanted to go on a holiday. He decided to stay for a week on his uncle's farm and another week on the beach in Hurghada. First, he travelled with his parents to Hurghada by train. They stayed at a nice hotel. In the morning, they went swimming and enjoyed the beach. In the evening, they used to do the shopping. After this week, Tarek left his parents in Hurghada and travelled to his uncle's farm. **There**, he spent a very good day. He spent it with his cousins. In the morning, they ate boiled eggs for breakfast. In the afternoon, they enjoyed walking in the fields and the nice weather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. Tarek went to Hurghada with his
 - a. friends b. parents
- c. sister
- d. brother

2. In Hurghada		yed at a nice	
a. hotel		c. castle	d. tower
	ed pronoun There		
a. Hurghada	b. beach	c. shopping	d. the farm
3. Answer the fo	llowing question	s :	
4. When did Ta	rek go to his uncle	's farm ?	
5. How did Tare	k go to Hurghado	1?	
6. Do you think	Tarek spent a nice	e holiday?	*::***********************************
Choose the cor	rect answer fron	n a, b, c or d :	
1. There's a brow		or in the living roo	
a. card	b. carpet	c. curtain	d. dinner
2. A is a po	ot used for holding	flowers.	
a. necklace	b. mask	c. vase	d. tool
3 are piec	es of money mad	e of metal.	
a. Coins	b. Pots	c. Blocks	d. Masks
4. Hala is very	, she never pu	its her toys away.	
a. loudly	b. messy	c. lucky	d. quickly
5. He works as a	for a charit	y.	
a. servant	b. teacher	c. volunteer	d. tourist
6. We use	for making clothe	S.	
a: wheat	b. corn	c. rice	d. cotton
7. The pun	nps blood around	the body.	
a. heart	b. brain	c. lungs	d. nose
8. While I	the phone rang.		
· ·		c. was sleeping	d. slept
· ·	h things in the mu		
	_	c. should	d. must
O. Africa is	than Europe.		
a. hot	b. hottest	c. hotter	d. as hot
Complete the se	ntoneog with the c	orrect form of the v	unrd(s) in he
Complete the se 1. Amr(w		orrect form of the v	voru(s) iii br
•		next to me is very	kind
	(which) is sitting ave) to wear a unif		MI IVA
	u use to live in a h		
, (DO) go	a ase to live iii a ii	ouse:	

	•	NETY (90) word are proud of"	ia VII .

************************************		***************************************	***************************************
		***************************************	***************************************
Sohag Go	vernorate «	Juhainah Educ	cational Director
isten and cho	ose the correct	answer from a,	b. c or d :
			ع إلى معلمك واختر الإج الى معلمك واختر الإج
1. Ali is a/an			
a. doctor	b. nurse	c. teacher	d. engineer
2. Ali works in a			J. Smakama
a. hospital 3. Ali has	b. school	c. station	d. factory
a. two	b. three	c. four	d. no
4. Ali goes to wo		C. IOUI	d. Ho
a. by car	b. by bus	c. on foot	d. by train
Complete the f	ollowing dialog	jue :	
•	k are talking abo		
Sama: Hello, M	alak. How are yo	ou?	
Malak: I'm fine.	How was your tr	rip, Sama ?	
Sama: (1)	**************************************		
Malak: Wow!(2	2)	?	
Sama: No, I we	nt with my friend	ds. We visited nice	rlaces.
Malak : Did you	buy any souveni	irs?	
Sama : (3)	b		
Malak :(4)	?		
Sama . Wa wan	t by the school b	us.	
Sama : we well			
	id you come bacl	k?	

Goha used to go to the village market to sell donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt tired. He decided to ride one of the donkeys. He counted the donkeys but there were only nine donkeys. He got off the donkey and counted them again. This time there were

DAYS 5,687

ten donkeys. He got back on his donkey and counted them again once more. He was surprised there were only nine donkeys. He decided to get off his donkey. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather than ride with nine donkeys.

	A. Choose the co			
		go to to s		d village pegulant
		b. hospital		d. village market
		donkeys wi		d. eleven
	3. Goha's story i		c. ten	d. eleven
	_	b. amazed	c hored	d. noisy
				d. Hoisy
	B. Answer the fol	na decide to do		
		on, what do you	think of Goha?	
		-	timik or dond.	
			onoun " He" refer to	
A	Choose the corr	ect answer fro	mabcord:	
7				al against Germany
	g. senior		•	_
	2. Dina the			a. greedy
	a. sings	b. shares		d. eats
	-		eep the light out.	
		b. carpets		d. armchair
				with heart problems.
	a nurse			d. police officer
			_	ove her handwriting.
			c. geography	_
				o for someone for no
	reason.		gg	
		b. distance	c. random	d. forget
			ster when my pare	
	a after	-		d.to
	8 you got	a watermelon, G	irandma?	
		b. Have		d. will
			day. It's a holiday.	
	a.don't			d. isn't

10. Sameera Moussa was born	1917.	
a. at b. in	c. on	d. for
Complete the sentences with the 1. My sister is smiling	py) at her birthday useum, we saw som e library.	party. e huge statues.
Write a paragraph of about N		
	ily routine"	
Qena Governorate	Qeft Educatio	nal Directorate
Listen and choose the correct	answer from a, b,	cord:
	إجابة الصحيحة [نصوص	
1. How old is Kareem?		
a. three b. thirty	c. twenty	d. thirteen
a. parks c. stadiums	b. historical pla d. clubs	ices
3. What's Kareem's favourite hob	by?	
a. Reading b. Running	c. Swimming	d. Drawing
4. Kareem's friends are	c. kind	d. noisy
Complete the following dialog		
Mariam wants to visit Luxor Muse		or information.
Woman: Hello. How can I help y	-	
Mariam : I want to visit Luxor mu	ıseum. (1)	?
Woman: Certainly. You can ask	any questions.	
Mariam: When can I visit the mu	iseum ?	
Woman: (2)		
Mariam: (3)?		
Woman: Online or at the ticket of		useum.
Mariam: How much does a ticke	et cost ?	

DAYS 5.687

Woman:	(4)	******************************
Mariam:	(5)	****************************

Read the following, then answer the questions :

Once, three friends were travelling to a town. They were very rich. They carried gold coins and jewels with them. On their way, they passed a village. The people of the village looked very poor. They didn't have enough clothes or food and they were thin. The three friends felt sad. One of them came out of his car and gave some of his gold coins and jewels to the poor people. The second one thought the gold and jewels would not help the poor people so he gave them his food and drinks. The two friends waited for the third friend to go and help. He did not do that. He drove the car and continued the journey. On the way, the third friend thought how he could help those poor people better. Then he had an idea. When they reached the town, he bought farming tools and seeds. When they returned from their journey, the third friend stopped the car and gave the tools and seeds to the poor people. The other two friends were surprised and felt sorry. The poor people used the tools and seeds to farm their land. They grew crops and were happy to find real help.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. The main idea of the passage is
 - a. helping people b. driving cars
- c. selling jewels d. buying food
- 2. The underlined word "They" refers to the
 - a. poor people b. three friends c. jewels d. coins
- 3. The word "reached" means
 - a. parked b. arrived at c. damaged d. recycled

B. Answer the following questions:

- 4. How do we know that the people of the village were poor?
- 5. What did the second friend give the poor people?
- 6. Do you think the people of the village will be poor on the next days? Why ? Why not ?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. I can't phone dad when he is at work, but I can him.
 - d. listen b. meet c. text d. feed

2. We	are of	the ancient Egyp	tians. They were g	reat people.
a. C	areless	b. messy	c. proud	d. attractive
3. Our	teacher	her job ten ye	ars ago.	
a. st	tart	b. started	c. starts	d. starting
4. God	od people	well.		
a. d	amage	b. pump	c. win	d. behave
			people and old p	•
	_	-	c. Having	d. Getting
6. Haz	zem u	p at seven oʻclock	every morning.	
a.g		b. is getting	c. gets	d. getting
			others using sign	
a. D		b. Old	c. Healthy	d. Poor
_	_		ouse. It has five ro	
a. fo		b. little	c. young	d. large
			, I saw some beau	
	/alk	b. walked	c. was walking	
			e is asking people	
_	atron	b. stranger	· ·	d. volunteer
			rrect form of the v	vord(s) in brackets :
		(lazy).		
		(taller) as Maho		
			when you cross a	_
			when we were you	_
				your friend John
tellin	g him abou	t your daily rou	tines. Your name	is Omar and You
			m. Your friend's	email address is
john(@mail.com			
From				
To				
Subject				
**** *****				

Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero. Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy? Samy: (1)	20 Luxor Governorate	Luxor Educa	tional Directorate
2. Fareeda Rashwan is a/an			
2. Fareeda Rashwan is a/an	1. Fareeda Rashwan is years	old.	
a. engineer b. doctor c. teacher d. businesswoman 3. She donated two	a.32 b.33	c. 23	d. 22
3. She donated two	2. Fareeda Rashwan is a/an		
a. thousand b. hundred c. million d. billion 4. She wanted the charities to use the money to help who need it. a. people b. animals c. things d. subjects Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero. Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy? Samy: (1)			
4. She wanted the charities to use the money to help			
Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero. Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy? Samy: (1)	0.21100000110		
Complete the following dialogue: Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero. Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy? Samy: (1)			
Ahmed is asking Samy about his hero. Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy? Samy: (1)	a. people b. animals	c. things	d. subjects
Samy: (1)			
Ahmed: What was your great – grandfather's job? Samy: (2)	Ahmed: Who is your hero, Samy?		
Ahmed: What was your great – grandfather's job? Samy: (2)	Samy : (1)		
Samy: (2)	Ahmed : What was your great - g	randfather's job	?
Ahmed: Great: (3)			
Samy: He worked in a big hospital in Cairo. Ahmed: (4)		?	
Ahmed: (4)			
Samy: Yes, he was a great surgeon. Ahmed: Are you proud of him? Samy: (5)	,		
Ahmed: Are you proud of him? Samy: (5)		eon.	
Read the following, then answer the questions: I'm Ali. I live with my family in a small house. It's very beautiful. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister doesn't like to work in the garden. She likes to read stories. I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks delicious food in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables, but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. My sister washes up. At night, dad works on the computer. Mum likes to listen to music. I watch TV and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed. A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to	T		
I'm Ali. I live with my family in a small house. It's very beautiful. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister doesn't like to work in the garden. She likes to read stories. I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks delicious food in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables, but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. My sister washes up. At night, dad works on the computer. Mum likes to listen to music. I watch TV and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed. A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to			
I'm Ali. I live with my family in a small house. It's very beautiful. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister doesn't like to work in the garden. She likes to read stories. I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks delicious food in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables, but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. My sister washes up. At night, dad works on the computer. Mum likes to listen to music. I watch TV and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed. A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to		r the question	s:
1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to	I'm Ali. I live with my family in a has a garden. I like to work in the gwhich my father plants. My sister d She likes to read stories. I give all o delicious food in our small kitchen sister doesn't. My family always ha sister washes up. At night, dad wor	a small house. It parden and colle oesn't like to wo f the vegetables . I like eating ve s breakfast and ks on the comp	et's very beautiful. It ect the vegetables ork in the garden. It is to mum. She cooks egetables, but my dinner together. My outer. Mum likes to
1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to			
a. food b. breakfast c. house d. computer 2. Ali gives all of the vegetables to his			
	a.food b.breakfast	c. house	d. computer
g dgd b mum c sister d brother	2. Ali gives all of the vegetables	to his	
At Appendix At a secure a	a.dad b.mum	c. sister	d. brother

	us " means	ned word " <mark>delicio</mark>	3. The underlin
d. nice	c. horrible	b. bad	a. terrible
	ns:	ollowing question	B. Answer the fo
		Ali like to do in the	
		Ali's sister prefer to	
,	is happy ?	k that Ali's family	6. Do you thin
	,b,c ord:	ect answer from a	Choose the corr
		an't meet you too	_
d. helpful	_	b. empty	
		lly up at 6:4	_
d. gets		b. to get	a. get
		lexandria are big	
d. lakes		b. countries	
		any at scho	
-		b. subjects	*
	_	subject for learning	
omics	b. Home ecor		a. English
	d. Science		c. Religion
		be when yo	
d. quiet	c. quick	b. wonderful	
		ot hair.	
	c. friendly	b. tall	
		ture. He likes	
d. is watching		b. watches	_
	puter.	kind of small com	9. A is a
d. tap	c. drum	b. laptop	a. radio
		an apple now.	10. She is
d. ate	c. eaten	b. eats	a. eating
word(s) in bracke	correct form of th	entences with the	Complete the se
	nner last night?	(ate) for dir	1. What did you
	very slow.	at (run). I'm	2. I'm not good
) a big smile.	a (have got	3. My sister Noh
	correct form of the nner last night? very slow. c) a big smile.	b. eats entences with the e (ate) for dir at (run). I'm	a. eating Complete the se 1. What did you 2. I'm not good of 3. My sister Noho

DAYS 5 687

		(NETY (90) words family"	
		·····	
*************************		*******	***************************************
		,	
Aswan G	overnorate 🔻	Daraw Educat	ional Directorate
Listen and ch	oose the correct	answer from a, b	, c or d :
	الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب	جابة الصحيحة (نصوص	إلى معلمك واختر الإ
*	eedle is in		
	b. London	c. Paris	d. Cairo
	ngland in		1.4000
a. 1878	b. 1877	c. 1879	d. 1880
3. It has a beau	tiful		
a. view	b. shape	c. form	d. design
4. It for Th	nutmose III.		
a. is built	b. built	c. was built	d. builds
Complete the	following dialo	gue :	
	re talking about ti		
		going to do this w	veekend?
	1. 1)		
Ali : Why are	you going to tha	t charity?	
Hany : (2)			
		help poor people	?
Hany: (3)			
	7		
	re are many disab	oled people.	
	?		
8 \ J 1441000000			

Reading is very helpful. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in

your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment** just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we get.

A. Choose the co	Direct dilawer no	ma, Id	
1. The word "C	Others " refers to	ó104000000 B	
a. goals	b. people	c. points	d. glasses
	ned word " <mark>enjoyn</mark>		
 discussio 	n b. mysteries	c. sadness	d. pleasure
Reading giv	es us new ideas a	nd improves our .	
a. language	b. reports	c. research	d. letters
B. Answer the fo	ollowing question	ns :	
4. What is the	main idea of the p	oassage?	

	think you need to	, ,	lace?
	u remember what		***************************************
o. How can go	d remember what	. gou reau :	
Choose the co	rrect answer fror	n a, b, c or d :	
	ne for two people.		
a. Football	b. Handball		d. Volleyball
2. Shady is deaf,	, but he understan	ds us because we	use
a food stall			
o. 100a stan	b. colors	c. sign langua	ge d. sports
	b. colorsplayer won the gol		
3. The Egyptian		d medal, he's a re	al
3. The Egyptian a. teacher	player won the gol	d medal, he's a red c. hero	d. trainer
3. The Egyptian a. teacher	player won the gol b. junior became afto	d medal, he's a red c. hero	d. trainer
3. The Egyptiana. teacher4. This buildinga. statues	player won the gol b. junior became afto b. ruins	d medal, he's a red c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study d	d. trainer d. mosques and live all the time.
3. The Egyptiana. teacher4. This buildinga. statues	player won the gol b. junior became afte b. ruins ol is a school where	d medal, he's a red c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study d	d. trainer d. mosques
 3. The Egyptian a. teacher 4. This building I a. statues 5. A school a. boarding 6. Don't leave yo 	player won the gol b. junior became afte b. ruins ol is a school where b. board our here. You	d medal, he's a rec c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study o c. broad u should take it to	d. trainer d. mosques and live all the time. d. abroad
 3. The Egyptian a. teacher 4. This building I a. statues 5. A school a. boarding 6. Don't leave yo 	player won the gol b. junior became afto b. ruins ol is a school where b. board	d medal, he's a rec c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study c c. broad u should take it to	d. trainer d. mosques and live all the time. d. abroad
 3. The Egyptian a. teacher 4. This building I a. statues 5. A school a. boarding 6. Don't leave your a. rubbish 7. My favourite see 	b. junior became afte b. ruins ol is a school where b. board our here. You b. children	d medal, he's a rec c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study c c. broad u should take it to c. tools	d. trainer d. mosques and live all the time. d. abroad the nearest bin. d. experiments
 3. The Egyptian a. teacher 4. This building I a. statues 5. A school a. boarding 6. Don't leave your a. rubbish 7. My favourite see 	player won the gol b. junior became afto b. ruins ol is a school where b. board our here. You b. children	d medal, he's a rec c. hero er an earthquake c. castles e students study c c. broad u should take it to c. tools	d. trainer d. mosques and live all the time. d. abroad the nearest bin.

D 43.45	6	. /
DAYS		
DO: 3	-	

8. On S	aturdaus. I	always u	ib at 11 ociock.	
	etting	b.gets	c.get	d.got
	_	with their to	oys now.	
		b.playing	c. are playing	d. play
	-	tching TV, I	-	
	tened	b. was listenin		d. listening
Campl	ata tha con			word(s) in brackets:
1 The	ete the sen	know) for its he	eautiful buildings.	(0)
		(has) to g		
2. Nuu	arandmoth	er (use to) work in a hospita	in the past.
		ubject (w		
				jour friend Hassan
6 Write	him abou	t uour"Dailu l	Routines. Your na	me is Mariam. Your
email	address is	s mariam@am	ail.com. Your frie	nd's email address
	ssan@gm			
13.110	33411@9111			
From				
To				
То				
To Subject				
. •				
. •				
. •				
. •				
. •				
. •				
Subject				
Subject	tests fo	r Al-Azhæ	utudents	اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الد
Subject	tests fo	r Al-Atha	ين فريف (tudents	اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الد
Sample		Al-Atha		اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الد
Sample	\l-Azhar	Al-Sharif	Alexan	
Sample	Al-Azhar	Al-Sharif	Alexan	dria zone
Sample Sample Lister	Al-Azhar n and choo	Al-Sharif ose the correc لاستماع في نهاية الكتار	Alexan t answer : جابة الصحيحة [نصوص ا	dria zone استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ
Sample Sample Liste 1. The	Al-Azhar n and choo	Al-Sharif ose the correc لاستماع في نهاية الكتار	Alexan	dria zone استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإ

	2. These objectives were mo		4
_	a. plastic b. meta	al c. clay	d. copper
2	Supply the missing parts		logue :
	Ali : Where do you live	?	
	Tamer :(1)	11177277 0	
	Ali : (2)		
	Tamer : I live with my fam	_	
	Ali : (3)		
	Tamer : I go to school by	car.	
3	Choose the correct answ		
	1. We get clean water at ho	me from	
	a. tips b. taps	c. tapes	d. tops
	2. Boys football on he		
	a. plays usually	b. usually play	
	c. play usually	d. usually play	
	a. Who b. when		d. which
	4. Mrs Zynab is very		
	a. patient b. bad	c. careful	d. ill
	5. On holiday, we spend mu		
	a. watched b. watch		d. watching
	Read the following, then		
	English is an internation	•	
	it. Many people use English i		
	a place at the university. Mai		
	is very important for Egypt b		_
	here. Lots of tour guides need	_	
	Businessmen should speak E		
	people in different countries.		
	master computer skills to get	a good job.	
	A. Answer the following qu	estions:	
	1. Where do people speak		
	Titlere as people speak		
	2. Why do students need I	English ?	
	3. Who do tour guides spe	ak English to ?	

DAYS 5,6&7

B. Choose the cor			
	arn English to get o	c . good	d. bad
a. best	ed pronoun " <u>it</u> " ref	3	
a. people	b. English	c. Tourist	d. Computer
5 Reorder the foll	_	form correct sen	tences:
		– touch – mustn't	
			e – help – charities.
	Aswan – more – C		
	hings To is re		
6 Write a paragra	pn or 5 sentence Your dre"		
	Tour are	am joo	
***************************************	*15)		***************************************
***************************************	,,		······································
		***************************************	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
2 Al-Azhar	Al-Sharif	Menou	fia Zone
2 Al-Azhar	Al-Sharif =	Menou	fia Zone
1 Listen to the te	xt and choose tl	he correct answe	r:
1 Listen to the te	xt and choose tl	he correct answe)
1 Listen to the te بار. 1. My hero is my	xt and choose tl ن الاستماع في نهاية الكتار 	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص	r : استمع إلى معلمك واختر ا
1. My hero is my a. father	xt and choose tl ن الاستماع في نهاية الكتار b. mother	he correct answe	r:
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a	xt and choose tl ب الاستماع في نهاية الكتار b. mother	h e correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص c. aunt	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر ا d. grandmother
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school	يد and choose tl الاستماع في نهاية الكتار السيماع في نهاية الكتار b. mother السيسانية الكتار	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص c. aunt c. hospital	الات استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا d. grandmother d. charity
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis	ext and choose th الاستماع في نهاية الكتار الدين الدي ال الدي الدي الدي الدي الدي ال الدي ال الدي ال الدي ال الدي ال الدي ال الدي ال ال ال الدي ال ال الدي ال ال الدي ال ال ا	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص c. aunt c. hospital	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر ال d. grandmother d. charity
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis Eman : The pro	يد and choose th الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب b. mother المسلم المسلم b. bank sing parts in the	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص c. aunt د. hospital e following dialo	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا d. grandmother d. charity gue: ater.
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis Eman : The pro Dina : (1)	يد and choose th الاستماع في نهابة الكتار الدرات الدرات ا	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص c. aunt د. hospital e following dialo all use too much w Ve should do some	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر ال d. grandmother d. charity
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis Eman : The pro Dina : (1) Eman : Certain	يد and choose th الاستماع في نهاية الكتار b. mother المسلم المسلم b. bank ssing parts in the oblem is that we do	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص c. aunt د. hospital e following dialo all use too much w Ve should do some less water.	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا d. grandmother d. charity gue: ater.
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis Eman : The pro Dina : (1) Eman : Certain Dina : That's g	يد and choose the الاستماع في نهابة الكتاب الاستماع في نهابة الكتاب المستماع في نهابة الكتاب	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص c. aunt د. hospital e following dialo all use too much w Ve should do some less water.	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا d. grandmother d. charity gue: ater.
1. My hero is my a. father 2. She works in a a. school 2 Supply the mis Eman : The pro Dina : (1) Eman : Certain Dina : That's g Eman : Well, w	يد and choose th الاستماع في نهاية الكتار b. mother المسلم المسلم b. bank ssing parts in the oblem is that we do	he correct answe لإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص c. aunt د. hospital e following dialo all use too much w Ve should do some less water.	r: استمع إلى معلمك واختر اا d. grandmother d. charity gue: ater.

	Choose the corr	act anguar fra	mah cardi	
3			comes to sch	aal lata
	g. doesn't	b. isn't	c. didn't	d. never
	2. I'm very			u. Hevel
		b. grateful		d. frightened
	•		ow he thin.	_
	a. is	b. does	c. doesn't	d. isn't
			th interesting	
		b. bowls		d. pots
			orks for, looks after	•
	g. when	b. where	c who	d. which
	Road the follow			uestions :
4			en answer the q	
	_	·	ant habit in our life	_
C	hance to think an	d dream. It prov	rides us with a lot o	of information that
H	elps our life bette	r. When you rea	d, uou need to be in	n a quiet place. It is
	•			To remember what
			_	
_	_		pen in your hand	
C	ircle the importar	nt points. Try to d	liscuss what you re	ad with your friends.
P	eople read for dif	ferent reasons. S	ome people read f	or enjoyment , just
	•		e. Others read for	
	4	•		
				s and the weather
r	eports. We also re	ad the message	s and the emails th	at we receive.
F	A. Answer the fol	lowing questio	ns:	
	1. Why is readin	g important an	d useful ?	
	2. Why do stude	nts read ?	***************************************	
	3. How can you	remember wha	t you read ?	
	*4***************************	4141712120 4141714427474444444	***************************************	***************************************
B	. Choose the cor	rect answer :		
	4. The word "Oth	ers" refers to	****** *	
	a. goals	b. people	c. points	d. glasses
		, ,	nent" means	
	a discussion	b. fun	c. sadness	
				,
		_	correct sentenc	es:
	1. selfie – as – He l		_	
	howl - mived -	a = in = bia = M	um - ingredients -	. the

DAYS 5,687

	 many – is – by – museum – <u>The</u> – visited – tourists. should – Magdy Yacoub – <u>We</u> – be – of – proud.
6	Write a paragraph of five 5 sentences on : "A school trip with your friends"
3	Al-Azhar Al-Sharif Beheira zone
1	Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
	ستمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب). 1. Samira Moussa studiedat Cairo University.
	a. history b. science c. engineering d. history
	2. Samira Moussa is a/an
	g. scientist b. doctor c. engineer d. surgeon
2	Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:
ے	Dalia and her father are talking about her school project.
	Dalia: Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history.
	Can I ask you some questions?
	Dad : Of course, what do you want to know?
	Dalia: (1)?
	Dad : I used to live in a village in Luxor.
	Dalia: Oh, I see. Who did you live with?
	Dad : (2)
	Dad : Very early! On a school day, I got up about 4.30 a.m.!
	Dalia: Really? (3)?
	Dad : Because my school was very far from where my parents lived.
	It took me an hour to get there.
2	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
J	1. I am looking forward to home.
	a. go b. going c. went d. goes
	2. A/Anis a person who works for no money to help people.
	a. emergency b. charity c. volunteer d. proud

3. The ed-endir	ng in the verb "he	iped" sounds like	** ****** #
a./d/	b./id/	c. /f/	d. /t/
4. The city	for its beautiful	buildings.	
a. know	b. knows	c. is known	d. knew
5. The books	he used to h	elp me were his old	school books.
a. which	b. who	c. where	d. when
Read the follo	wing, then ans	wer the questions	:
Cities are ver	ry busy places. Lo	ts of people live and	d work in them

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic and noise. This makes people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience nature. In Cairo, many people like going to Al-Azhar Park. Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca. She likes doing this because she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons and geese. We all feel good when we go outside.

A. Answer the following questions:

4

- 1. Why do some people feel worried and unhappy in cities?2. What is the name of the park that is mentioned in the text?3. Where does Lamia live?
- B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
- Reorder the following words to form correct sentences:
 - 1. watches in TV <u>Mariam</u> bed often.
 - 2. hope $-\underline{\mathbf{I}}$ better he'll soon be.
 - 3. mustn't the objects touch **You** the museum in.
 - 4. did Where World Cup Final win the they?

Write a paragra "What yo		itences on : ily usually do on l	holidays"

	************		***************************************
Al-Azhar	Al-Sharif =	Fayo	oum zone
Listen and choo	se the correct	answer from a,	b, c or d:
			ع إلى معلمك واختر الإج
1. Dr. Magdy Yaco			
a. dentist			d. teacher
2. He became a d			
a. mother	b. uncle	c. brother	d. father
Omar : Hello, Ra Ramy : Hello, On Omar : When (2) Ramy : I get up of Omar : What's you Ramy : (3) Omar : I also like	early at 6:30 amour favourite spe	? ort?	
Choose the cor			
1. A lot of Muslim	_	•	
a. churches		c. mosques	d. markets
2. Eiffel Tower is			d telloct
	b. tall		d. tallest
3. You eat			d. should
a.can	b. must	c. mustn't	G. SHOUIG
4. A is the	b. beggar	c. farmer	d. princess
a. prince 5. While he was			о. ринесээ
o, while he was	b. ran		d. running

Read the following passage then answer the questions :

A. Answer the following questions:

Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. They were doing their homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. It was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom, they found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dining room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. They decided to phone their mother and father and tell them about the water.

	1. Where was So	alma playing with	her toys?	
	2. How did Ahm	ned and Soha dry t	he floor ?	
	3. How many po	ersons are there in	the family ?	
	B. Choose the cor	rrect answer from	a,b,c ord:	
	4. The underline	ed pronoun " It " refe	ers to the	
	a floor	b. vapour	c. dining room	d. water
	5. While Ahmed	and Soha were in	the dining room, the	ir parents were
	at			
	a. school	b. home	c. work	d. bedroom
5	Reorder the foli	lowing words to I	make correct sente	nces:
	1. your – Who – h	nero – is ?		
	2. taller – <u>Amr</u> – i	s – me – than.		
	3. hard – study –	to get – <u>You</u> – mar	ks – should – high.	
	4. used to - tenni	s My grandfathe	er – play.	
6	Write a paragra	ph not less than	FIVE sentences abo	out:
		"Your day at	t school"	
		,.,.,.,.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	,,,,,,	***** ******* ***** ***********
	*******************************	***************************************	***************************************	***
	<pre>fatt4*t4*t4*t6*t*t*</pre>			
	••••••			

An Exam for Inclusive Students

اختبار لطلاب الدمج

Cairo Governorate

West Cairo Directorate

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Interviewer: Now, you're looking for a job here, aren't you?

Sandy: Yes, I'm.

Interviewer: (1)

a. When did you leave school?b. Where did you go to school?c. When do you leave school?d. Where do you go to school?

Sandy : I left school last year.

Interviewer: How many languages can you speak?

Sandy : (2)

a. I can run. b. I can speak three languages.

c. I can do karate.
d. I can ride a bike.
Interviewer: All right. Do you have any work experience?

Sandy : Well. After I left school, (3)

a. I slept early.

b. I live in Helwan.

c. I worked in a restaurant. d. I like Arabic.

Interviewer: (3)

a. Where did you live?

b. Where do you go?

c. Where did you go?

d. Where do you live?

Sandy : I live in Helwan.

Interviewer: Well. I think you can get the job.

Sandy : Thank you.

Interviewer: Do you like hard work?

Sandy : (4)

a. Yes, I did.
b. Yes, I can.
c. Yes, I have.
d. Yes, I do.

Read the following, then answer the questions :

Our life is going <u>fast</u> now because of the latest technology. A lot of people do their businesses online. Others use smartphones. They communicate with each other using social media. Technology helps us get information easily. You can find out about the latest technology online. It's important to learn about the latest developments. I love

technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games.

	Choose the co	orrect answer from a	, b, c or d :	
	1. The text is n	nainly about		
	a. sports	b. healthy food	c. technology	d. fast food
	2. The underlin	ned pronoun " <u>them</u> "	refers to	
	u. video gai	mes b. businesses	c. phones	d. websites
	3. Technology	helps us get		
	 married 	b. food	c. lost	d. information
		pends all day playing		
	a. chess	b. video games	c. squash	d. tennis
	5. The writer's	favourite subject is		
	a. science		 b. computer stu 	dies
	c. P.E		d. art	
	6. The underlin	ned word " <u>fast</u> " here r	means	
	a. fat	b. quickly	c. slow	d. wide
3	Choose the co	orrect answer from a	b, c or d :	
	1. Look! The bi	rds in the sky.		
	a. flies	b. fly	c. is flying	d. are flying
	2. Noha plays	the piano		
	a. good	b. bad	c. well	d. sad
	3. While	, I fell down.		
	a. running	b. ran	c. runs	d. run
	4. Rice is	. by farmers.		
	 grow 	b. grown	c. grew	d. grows
	5. You to	ouch the statues in th	e museum.	
	a. must	b. could	c. should	d. mustn't
4	Choose the co	orrect answer from a,	b, c or d:	
	1. There's a bro	own on the floo	r in our living rooi	n.
	a. card	b. carpet	c. curtain	d. drawer
	2. Sama alway	s tidies the kito	chen after cooking	J.
	a. off	b. down	c. away	d. up
	3. A/An	is a model of a persoi	n.	
	a. figure	b. mask	c. necklace	d. arch

DAYS 5,687

4. Which sport	do you like to	?	
	b. make		d. be
5. If there is a	oroblem with your	computer system, yo	ou can call
a			
a. doctor		b. computer eng	ineer
c. shop work	cer	d. nurse	
6 cause	s bad fires in Austr	alia.	
a. Flood	b. Drought	c. Earthquake	d. Cold
7. The nurse is	a She saves	a lot of people.	
a, hero	b. beggar	c. manager	d. servant
8. The p	umps blood around	d the body.	
g. liver	b. lung	c. heart	d. brain

Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

- a. We arrived there in the morning. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues.
- b. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues. We arrived there in the morning. Yesterday, we went to the museum.
- c. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We went back home in the evening. We bought tickets and saw statues. We arrived there in the morning.
- d. Yesterday, we went to the museum. We arrived there in the morning. We bought tickets and saw statues. We went back home in the evening.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

⊙ Listening (Day 1):

- A. Omar was born in 1994. When he was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost his leg. Now, Omar is an important coach.
- B. Dr Magdy Yacoub was born in Egypt. He helps people with heart problems. He stopped his work as a surgeon a long time ago. He opened a new hospital in Aswan.

Accumulative Tests

⊙ Units 1, 2 & 3:

Last Friday, Samy visited Al-Azhar Park. He went by bus. He went there with his friends. They walked slowly around the garden. They had a nice day.

⊙ Units 4, 5 & 6:

Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt. It is known for its ships. Ships come and go from around the world. Many fish are caught in the sea near the Suez Canal.

End of Term Practice

Speaker: Aya is 13 and lives in a village in India. Her father is a street-food seller and her mother is a shop worker. They have to work every day, so Aya must stay at home to look after her younger brothers and sisters.

Aya goes to school in the evening. Aya always feels very tired when she gets home, but she is grateful for being able to learn.

Cairo Governorate

I'm Mona. I'm fourteen years old.
I always get up at 6:30 in the morning.
I go to school by bus with my friend,
Dalia. My parents work at the hospital.

In the evening, I do my homework. Giza Governorate

Zayed Educational Directorate

My hero is Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he lost a leg. Now he helps other people with similar problems and he is an important coach.

Alexandria Governorate

Burj Al Arab Educational Directorate

On Friday, Tamer went to Al-Azhar Park. On the way, he saw a street-food seller. The food was delicious. He went home at 5 o'clock.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

East Shoubra El-Kheima Educational Directorate

I am Mustafa. I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair. I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers. I have a basin in my room, where I can wash my hands before I eat.

5 Sharkia Governorate

Diarb Nigm Educational Directorate

Dr. Magdy Yacoub was born in Egypt. He helps people with heart problems. He stopped his work as a surgeon a long time ago. He opened a new hospital in Aswan.

6

Menofia Governorate

Menouf Educational Directorate

Samir works for a charity. The charity looks after animals. The animals that are old or sick cannot work anymore. People donate money to buy food for animals and look after them.

Gharbia Governorate

Samanoud Educational Directorate

Today, I'm going on a ride. The weather is very hot today. So, I have to wear a hat and my sunglasses. I can see many cars in the streets.

R Dakahlia Governorate

East Mansoura Educational Directorate

Aya was born in Minya. Minya is a nice city near the Nile. Minya is famous for black honey. Cotton and sugarcane are grown in Minya.

Beheira Governorate

Damanhour Educational Directorate

The Ancient Egyptian doctors helped people with burns. They understood that the heart pumps blood around the body. They used some plants to stop infections. These plants are still used today. They also knew how to mend broken bones and sew cuts.

11 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

Desouk Educational Directorate

The Egyptian handball team are heroes. They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in 2020. The final match was against Tunisia. Our team scored 27 goals.

11 Damietta Governorate

Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

I'm Malek. My father had a new job, so we moved to a new town. I went to a new school and had new friends. I'm going on the school trip to Cairo to visit amazing places.

Port Said Governorate

Port Said Educational Directorate

Ali thinks that the girl who came into his baker's shop was a servant because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. He usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave him most of her cakes! I was very surprised. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess.

Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Lots of cotton is grown in the area.

14 Fayoum Governorate

Al-Sideeq Educational Directorate

Mr Othman is our neighbour. He helped me pass my English exams. He was a teacher at a preparatory school. He used his old school books to help me.

15 Beni Suef Governorate

El Fashn Educational Directorate

My name is Noha. I like my bedroom. When I open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight in the room. In front of the bed, I have a big wardrobe. I don't have a basin in my room because the bathroom is next to the room.

16 Minya Governorate

Abu Kurkas Educational Directorate

On Friday, Nabil and his family went to Al Azhar Park. They saw a street - food seller. The food was delicious. They went home at 7 o'clock.

17 Assiut Governorate

Sahel Selim Educational Directorate

Salma is thirteen years old. Her favourite subject is English. She goes to a preparatory school. She likes tennis.

18 Sohag Governorate

Juhainah Educational Directorate

Ali is a teacher. He works in a big school. He goes to work by car. He has three children. He is kind and helpful.

19 Qena Governorate

Qeft Educational Directorate

Kareem is thirteen years old. He likes visiting historical places. His favourite hobby is reading. Kareem's friends are brave.

20 Luxor Governorate

Luxor Educational Directorate

Fareeda Rashwan is 32 years old. She is a businesswoman. She donated two million pounds to charities in her city to help people who need it. She is very kind and helpful.

21

Aswan Governorate

Daraw Educational Directorate

Cleopatra's Needle is in London. It arrived in England in 1878. It has a beautiful design. It was built for Thutmose III.

Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

1. Alexandria Zone:

The Ancient Egyptians used pots and bowls for making food. Pots were made of clay. Clay was taken from the River Nile. The Ancient Egyptians were very clever.

2. Menoufia Zone:

My mother is my hero. She is a nurse. She works in a big hospital. She looks after sick children. She is also a good cook. She makes delicious food. She always helps me do my homework.

3. Beheira Zone:

Samira Moussa was born in 1917 and studied science at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female nuclear scientist.

4. Fayoum Zone:

Dr. Magdy Yacoub was born in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy became an important heart surgeon.